MODEL 34–PNB PLUG-IN NOISE BLANKER

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

The 34—PNB Noise Blanker is a solid-state unit designed for use with the TR—4C and TR—4 Transceivers. Unlike noise clippers or limiters commonly found in communications equipment, this is an advanced noise blanker which mutes the receiver for the duration of the noise pulse. Between noise pulses full receiver gain is restored. Receiver AGC is affected only by the desired signal and not by noise. The 34—PNB is most effective on strong, periodic noise impulses such as automobile ignition noise.

INSTALLATION.

Disconnect the power connector from the TR—4C or TR—4. Remove the top half of the transceiver cabinet. Remove the 7 pin jumper plug located in front of the power amplifier cage. With the printed circuit side of the 34—PNB facing the outside of the transceiver chassis, carefully plug in the 34—PNB. After it is correctly seated in the socket, install a number 4 self-tapping screw in each corner of the 34—PNB bracket to secure it to the transceiver chassis. Replace the cabinet top. Some alignment may be necessary at the time of installation. See ALIGNMENT below.

OPERATION.

The BLANKER switch on the transceiver is used to turn the accessory 34—PNB Noise Blanker on and off. The Noise Blanker may be left on except when there is a strong signal within 5 kHz of the received signal. A strong signal which falls within the 10 kHz wide crystal filter in the Noise Blanker, and outside the 2.1 kHz wide crystal filter in the transceiver, will operate the Noise Blanker gate circuit causing distortion products. This limitation in the Noise Blanker is caused by the necessity of having a bandwidth in the blanker wide enough to minimize stretching of noise pulses before blanking. Under normal operating conditions, this limitation is no problem.

CIRCUIT DESCRIPTION.

This noise blanker system is composed of the three major networks described below. Refer to the block diagram and schematic diagram to follow this circuit description.

TRANSMITTING PATH.

The transmitting path consists of a single RC coupled 9 MHz amplifier which passes the transmitter signal through the blanker. The signal then passes through the crystal filter passband and into the transmitter mixer.

RECEIVER PATH.

The signal first passes through a crystal filter with a bandwidth wide enough to pass most of the noise frequency components but narrow enough to keep strong adjacent signals from overloading the noise blanker amplifier. The signal simultaneously enters the noise processor and the delay circuit, a reactive network which compensates for the inherent phase-shift of the noise processing section. The 9 MHz receive amplifier provides an overall system gain for the receive path. The balanced gate is an electronic series switch that opens for noise pulses but closes to allow the signal to pass.

NOISE PROCESSOR.

The signal passes through the tuned 9 MHz amplifier and into the balanced mixer. This mixer converts the 9 MHz noise pulses to 2150 kHz and prevents the high level 6.85 MHz oscillator signal from reaching the amplifier strip. The 2150 kHz noise pulses pass through the two amplifiers, the detector and into the gate driver. The driver reverse-biases the gate at the instant a 9 MHz noise pulse enters on its way to the receiver IF. The gate then is controlled by the same pulse it is blanking, enabling it to respond automatically to pulses of varying width.

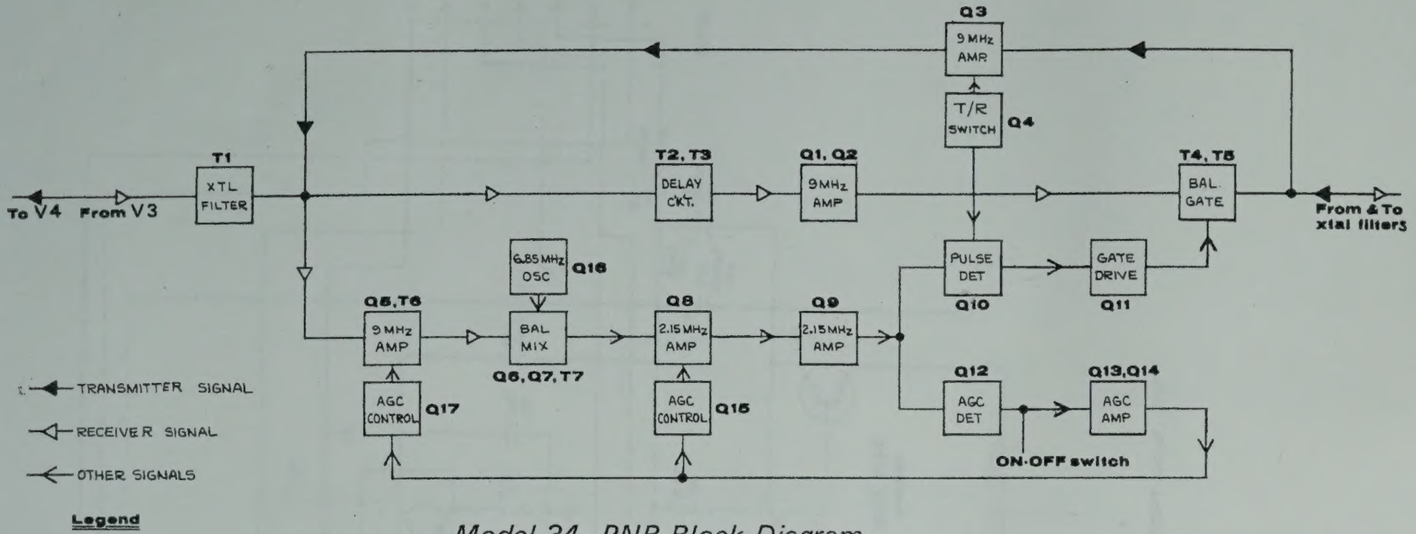
ALIGNMENT.

It is recommended that the TR—4 series transceiver be tuned to 40 meters on receive when the following procedure is performed. Refer to the Model 34—PNB Alignment Locations illustration to locate the alignment points.

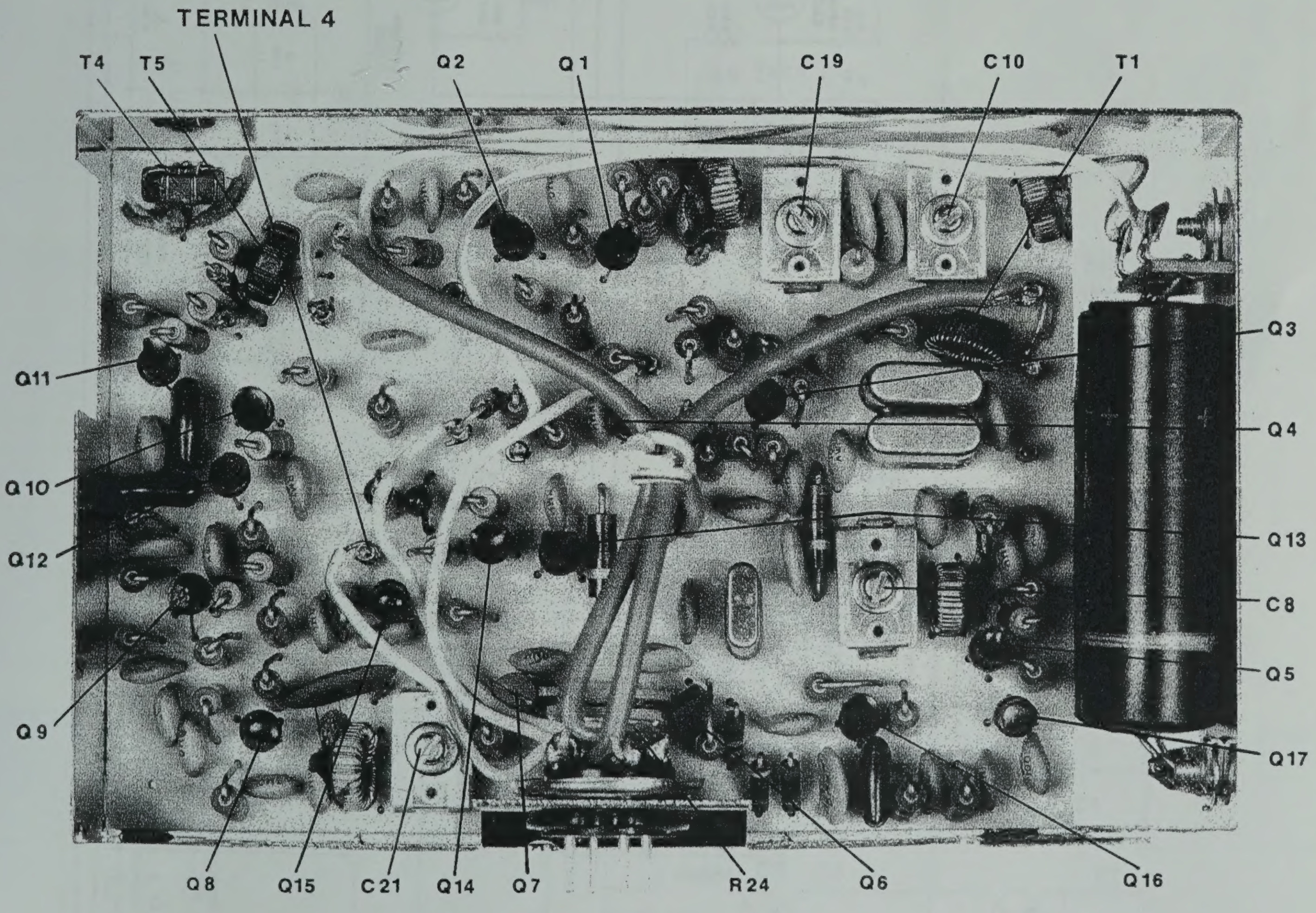
a. With the noise blanker turned on, adjust capacitor trimmers C10 and C19 for maximum S meter reading on calibrator signal.

b. With the calibrator turned off, connect a VTVM (set to measure DC voltage) between terminal 4 of the 34—PNB board and ground (terminal 4 being plus). Adjust R24 for maximum positive voltage.

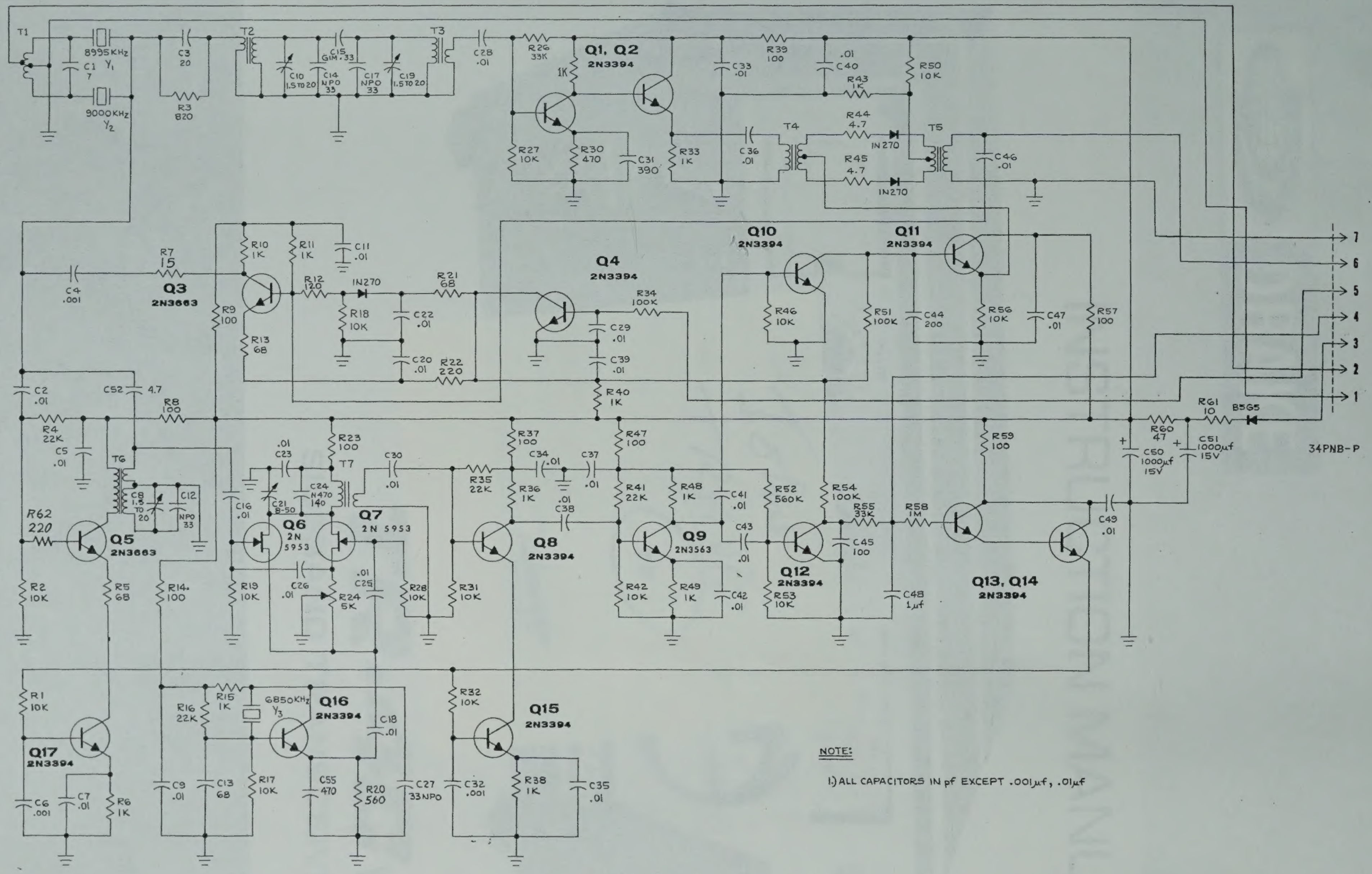
c. Turn the calibrator on and adjust the two remaining trimmers C21 and C8 for minimum positive voltage.


Q3
9 MHz AMP.
T/R SWITCH
Q4
T1
XTL FILTER
To V4
From V3
T2, T3
DELAY CKT.
Q1, Q2
9MHz AMP
T4, T5
BAL. GATE
From & To xtal filters
PULSE DET
Q10
GATE DRIVE
Q11
6.85 MHz OSC
Q16
Q5, T6
9 MHz AMP
BAL MIX
Q6, Q7, T7
Q8
2.15 MHz AMP
Q9
2.15 MHz AMP
Q12
AGC DET
Q13, Q14
AGC AMP
AGC CONTROL
Q17
AGC CONTROL
Q15
ON-OFF switch
TRANSMITTER SIGNAL
RECEIVER SIGNAL
OTHER SIGNALS
Legend

Model 34—PNB Block Diagram


TERMINAL 4
T4
T5
Q2
Q1
C 19
C 10
T1
Q11
Q 10
Q12
Q 9
Q3
Q 4
Q 13
C 8
Q 5
Q 17
Q 8
Q15
C 21
Q14
Q 7
R 24
Q 6
Q 16

Model 34—PNB Alignment Locations


T1
C1 7
8995KHz Y1
9000KHz Y2
C3 20
R3 820
T2
C10 1.5TO20
C15 GIM.33
C14 NPO 33
C17 NPO 33
C19 1.5TO20
T3
C28 .01
R26 33K
1K
Q1, Q2 2N3394
R27 10K
R30 470
C31 390
R33 1K
C33 .01
R39 100
.01 C40
R43 1K
R50 10K
C36 .01
T4
R44 4.7
R45 4.7
IN270
IN270
T5
C46 .01
R7 15
C4 .001
Q3 2N3663
R9 100
R10 1K
R11 1K
C11 .01
R12 120
IN270
R18 10K
C22 .01
R13 68
R21 68
C20 .01
R22 220
Q4 2N3394
R34 100K
C29 .01
C39 .01
R40 1K
Q10 2N3394
R46 10K
R51 100K
Q11 2N3394
C44 200
R56 10K
C47 .01
R57 100
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
R61 10
B5G5
34PNB-P
C2 .01
C52 4.7
R4 22K
C5 .01
R8 100
T6
C8 1.5 TO 20
C12 NPO 33
R62 220
Q5 2N3663
R2 10K
R5 68
.01 C23
C21 8-50
C24 N470 140
T7
R23 100
C16 .01
Q6 2N 5953
Q7 2N 5953
C26 .01
.01 C25
R24 5K
R19 10K
R14 100
R28 10K
C30 .01
R35 22K
R31 10K
Q8 2N3394
R37 100
C34 .01
R36 1K
C37 .01
.01 C38
R47 100
R41 22K
R48 1K
Q9 2N3563
R42 10K
R49 1K
C41 .01
C43 .01
C42 .01
R52 560K
R53 10K
R54 100K
Q12 2N3394
R55 33K
C45 100
C48 1µf
R58 1M
R59 100
Q13, Q14 2N3394
C49 .01
R60 47
C50 1000µf 15V
C51 1000µf 15V
R1 10K
Q17 2N3394
C6 .001
C7 .01
R6 1K
R16 22K
R15 1K
6850KHz Y3
Q16 2N3394
C18 .01
C9 .01
C13 68
R17 10K
C55 470
R20 560
C27 33NPO
R32 10K
Q15 2N3394
C32 .001
R38 1K
C35 .01

NOTE:

1.) ALL CAPACITORS IN pf EXCEPT .001µf, .01µf

Model 34–PNB Schematic Diagram

DRAKE

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

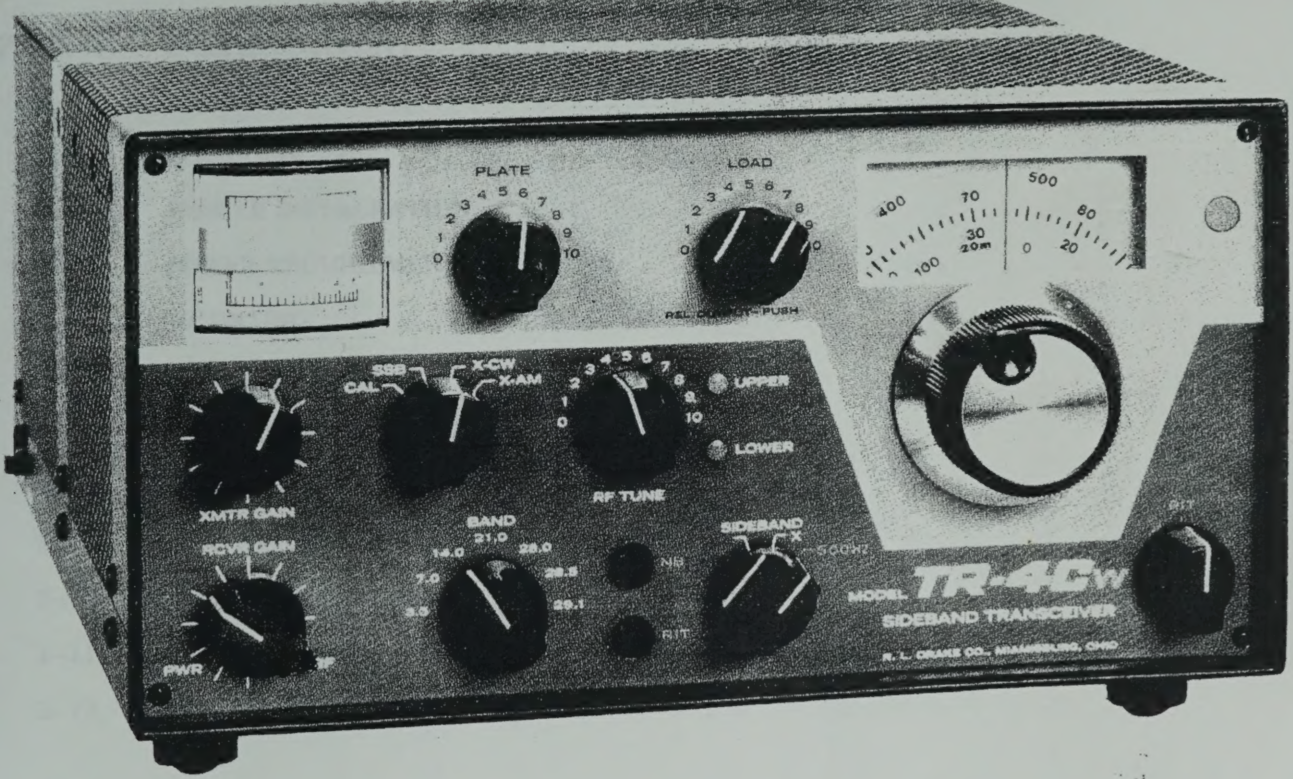


PLATE
LOAD
CAL
SSB
X-CW
X-AM
UPPER
LOWER
XMTR GAIN
RF TUNE
RCVR GAIN
PWR
BAND
NB
RIT
SIDEBAND
MODEL TR-4Cw
SIDEBAND TRANSCEIVER
R. L. DRAKE CO., MIAMISBURG, OHIO

TR-4Cw

SIDEBAND TRANSCEIVER

R. L. DRAKE COMPANY, MIAMISBURG, OHIO, U.S.A.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

CHAPTER I INTRODUCTION 1–1

1–1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION 1–1

1–2. MANUAL COVERAGE 1–1

SPECIFICATIONS 1–3

CHAPTER II INSTALLATION 2–1

2–1. UNPACKING 2–1

2–2. LOCATION 2–1

2–3. MOBILE INSTALLATION 2–1

2–4. POWER REQUIREMENTS 2–1

2–5. MOUNTING 2–1

2–6. ANTENNA 2–1

2–7. SPEAKER 2–1

2–8. MICROPHONE 2–1

2–9. STATIONARY INSTALLATION 2–2

2–10. POWER REQUIREMENTS 2–2

2–11. VIEWING ANGLE 2–2

2–12. ACCESSORIES 2–2

CHAPTER III OPERATION 3–1

3–1. GENERAL 3–1

3–2. MODE SWITCH 3–1

3–3. BLANKER SWITCH 3–1

3–4. VFO DIAL 3–1

3–5. TUNING PROCEDURE 3–1

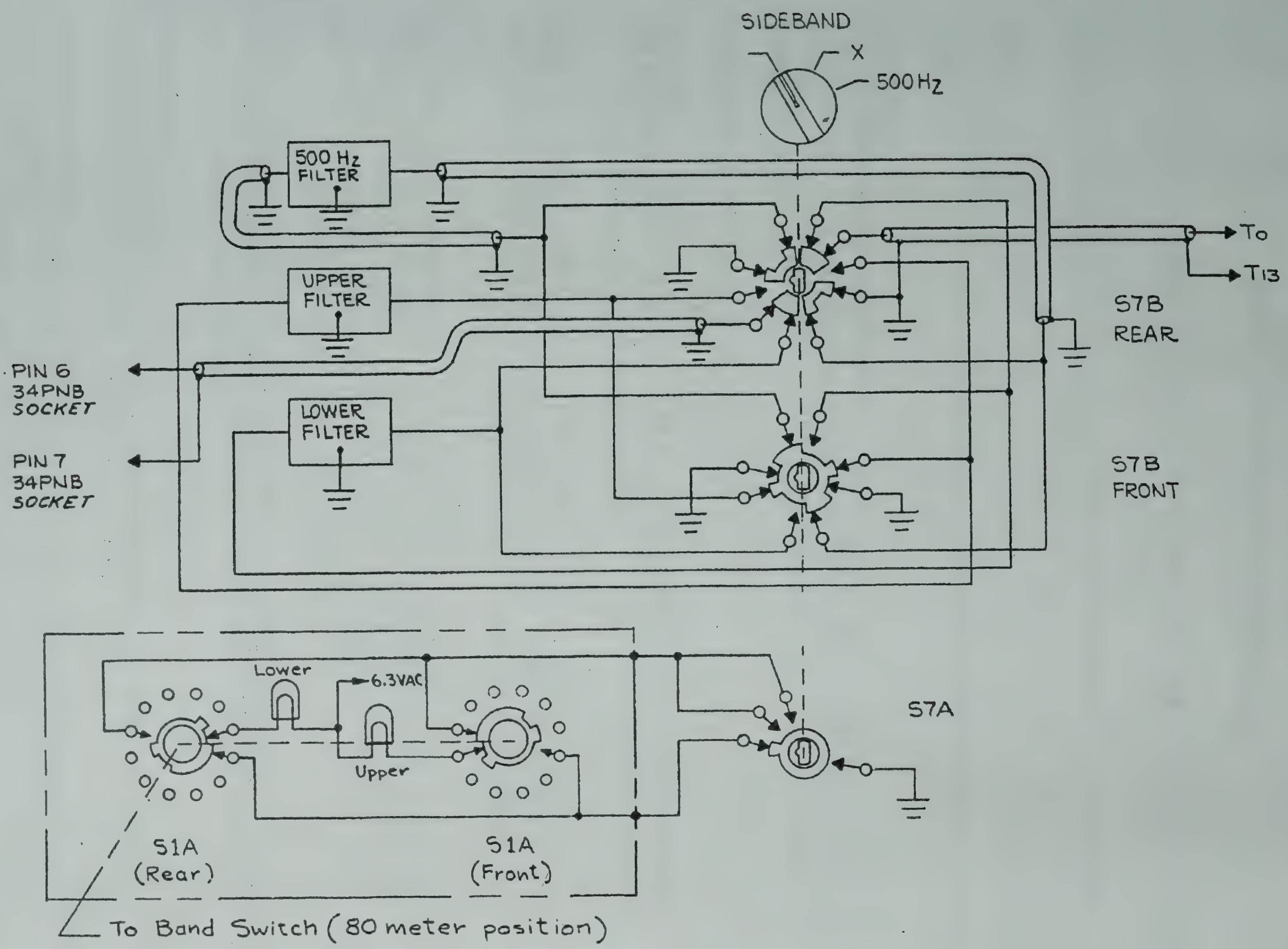
3–6. BIAS ADJUSTMENT 3–1

FRONT PANEL CONTROLS 3–3

OTHER CONTROLS 3–4

3–7. TUNE UP 3–5

3–8. SSB OPERATION 3–5


SIDEBAND
X
500 Hz
500 Hz FILTER
UPPER FILTER
LOWER FILTER
PIN 6 34PNB SOCKET
PIN 7 34PNB SOCKET
To
T13
S7B REAR
S7B FRONT
S7A
Lower
6.3VAC
Upper
S1A (Rear)
S1A (Front)
To Band Switch (80 meter position)

TR-4Cw Schematic Diagram

DRAKE

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

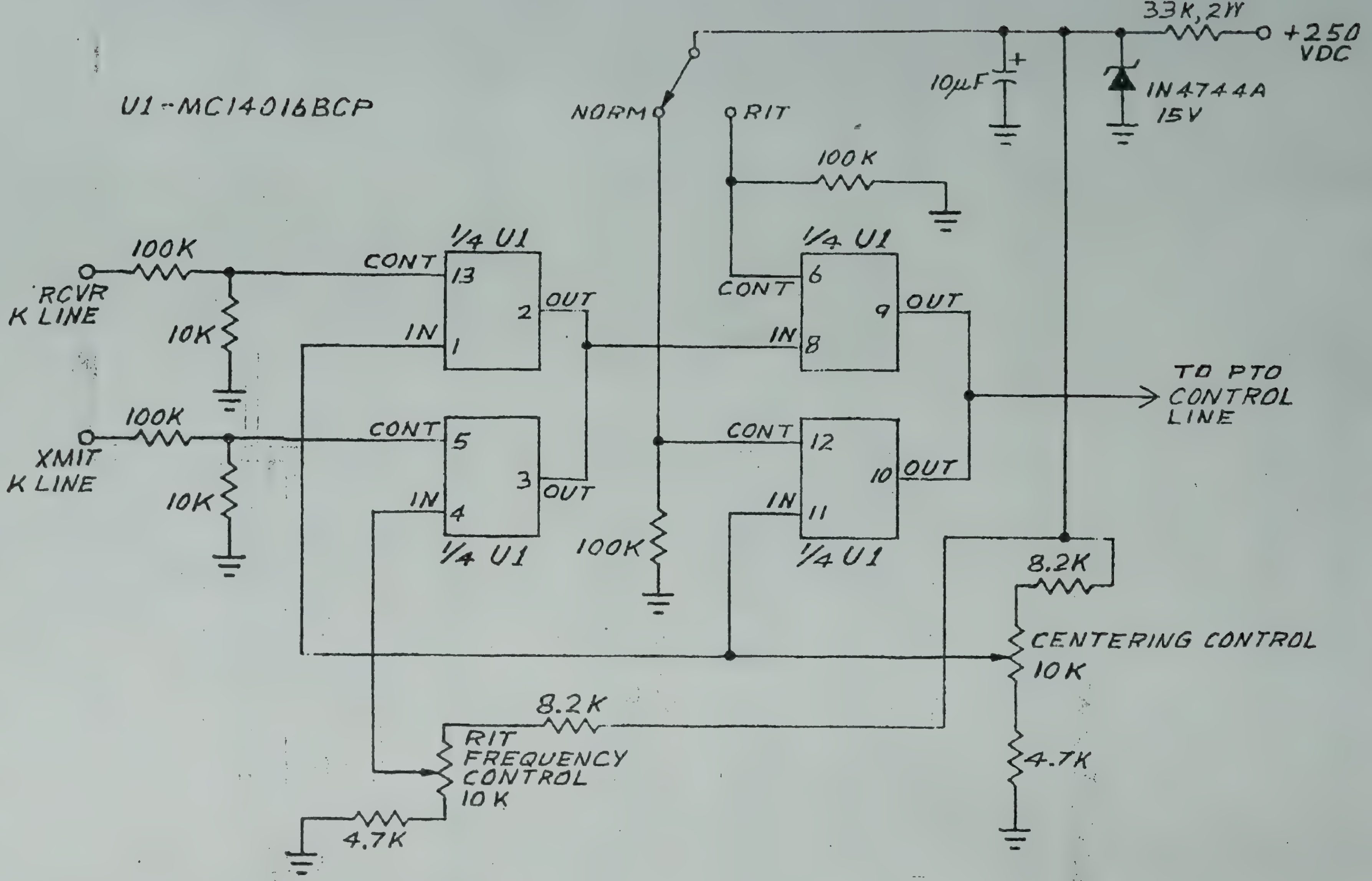
The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.


U1-MC14016BCP
33K, 2W
+250 VDC
IN4744A
15V
10µF
+
NORM
RIT
100K
RCVR K LINE
XMIT K LINE
100K
10K
100K
10K
1/4 U1
CONT
13
IN
1
2
OUT
CONT
5
IN
4
3
OUT
1/4 U1
100K
1/4 U1
CONT
6
IN
8
9
OUT
CONT
12
IN
11
10
OUT
1/4 U1
TO PTO CONTROL LINE
8.2K
CENTERING CONTROL 10K
4.7K
8.2K
RIT FREQUENCY CONTROL 10K
4.7K

RIT Schematic Diagram

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS

COVERING MODELS WITH RIT

The addition of Receiver Incremental Tuning to the TR-4Cw allows the receive frequency to be varied approximately ±3 kHz (2 kHz min., 4 kHz max.) relative to the indicated dial frequency.

OPERATION

The RIT function is activated by depressing the RIT push button switch. When disabled, the RIT frequency control has no effect, and the received frequency is as indicated on the dial. The TR-4Cw transmit frequency is always as indicated on the dial.

If equipped with the accessory 34-PNB Noise Blanker, the Noise Blanker is activated by depressing the NB push button switch. For further information regarding the operation of the Noise Blanker, refer to section 3-3.

Use of RIT can be very useful for both CW and SSB operation. When working a station who is drifting in frequency, the drift can be compensated for without "walking" across the band.

ZERO ADJUSTMENT

The RIT printed circuit board is located on the partition enclosing the PA compartment on the bottom of the transceiver.

The trim pot located on this board is used to "center" the front panel RIT frequency control. With the front panel frequency control set at 12 o'clock, tune in the calibrator signal at any convenient 100 kHz point until a beat note is heard. The trim pot should be adjusted until there is little or no change in the beat note frequency when turning the RIT control on and off via the RIT push button. This adjustment is factory set, and centering should be within 200-300 Hz.

CHAPTER I
INTRODUCTION

1-1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

The TR--4C is a 300 Watt HF single sideband transceiver which covers the 80 through 10 meter amateur bands. AM and CW modes are also included. The TR--4C requires either an R. L. Drake AC--4, 120 V AC power supply, or an R. L. Drake DC--4, 12 V DC power supply. The TR--4C features a high-stability linear permeability tuned VFO and two 8 pole crystal lattice filters for sideband selection. Available accessories include an RV--4C Remote VFO, a matching MS--4 Speaker, an FF-1 Fixed Frequency Adapter, a 34--PNB Noise Blanker, an MC--4 Mobile Console, and a TR--4C VHF Modification Kit.

1-2. MANUAL COVERAGE.

This manual provides sufficient information for operation of the TR--4C Transceiver by a licensed operator and for repair and maintenance by an experienced electronics technician. Chapter II provides installation instructions and illustrates interconnection with accessories. Chapter III describes operation procedures. Chapter IV presents theory of operation supported by a block diagram. Chapter V provides maintenance instructions and parts ordering information.

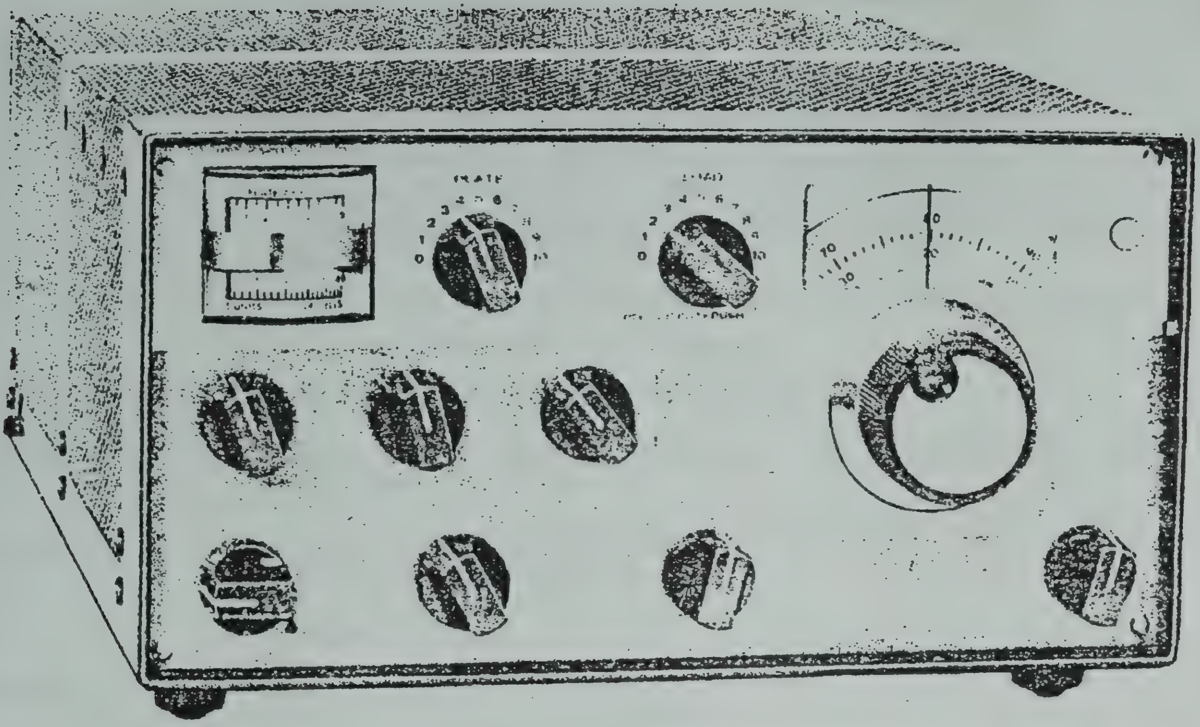


Figure 1–1. TR–4C Sideband Transceiver

SPECIFICATIONS

GENERAL:

Frequency Coverage:	3.5 to 4.1 MHz, 7.0 to 7.6 MHz, 13.9 to 14.5 MHz, 21.0 to 21.6 MHz and 28.5 to 29.1 MHz; accessory crystals are available for the 28.0 to 28.6 MHz and 29.1 to 29.7 MHz segments of the 10 meter band.
Mode of Operation:	Lower Sideband, Upper Sideband, AM and CW.
Frequency Stability:	Total drift is less than 100 Hz after warm up. Total frequency change is less than 100 Hz for a ± 10% line voltage change.
Power Supply Requirements:	+ 650 Volts DC at 300 mA average and 500 mA maximum with 10% regulation from 100 to 500 mA and a maximum ripple 1%. + 250 Volts DC at 200 mA with 10% regulation from 170 mA to 200 mA. This includes the effect of the 650 Volt supply change if both voltages are obtained from the same transformer. Maximum ripple must be less than 1/4%. –45 to –65 Volts DC adjustable filtered bias into 33 K Ohm load. 12.6 Volts AC or DC at 5.5 Amperes.
Antenna Impedance:	Nominal 52 Ohms (VSWR less than 2:1).
Dial Calibration:	Better than ± 1 kHz when calibrated at the nearest 100 kHz calibration point.
Dimensions:	5.5 in. High x 10.75 in. Wide x 14.375 in. Deep. 13.97 cm. High x 27.31 cm. Wide x 36.51 cm. Deep.
Weight:	16 lbs. (7.26 kg.)

RECEIVER:

Sensitivity:	Less than 0.5 uV for 10 dB $\frac{S+N}{N}$
AGC:	Less than 3 dB variation for 60 dB change in input signal.
Selectivity:	2.1 kHz at –6 dB and 3.4 kHz at –60 dB.
IF Frequency:	9 MHz.
Audio Output:	3 Watts with less than 10% distortion.
Output Impedance:	4 Ohms.

TRANSMITTER:

Power Input:	300 Watts PEP SSB, 260 Watts CW and 260 Watts PEP AM.
Output Impedance:	Nominal 52 Ohms.
Average Distortion Products:	The odd order products are down 30 dB below PEP.
Microphone Input:	High Impedance.

CHAPTER II
INSTALLATION

2-1. UNPACKING.

Carefully remove the unit from the shipping carton and examine it for evidence of damage. If any damage is discovered, immediately notify the transportation company that delivered the unit. Be sure to keep the shipping carton and packing material as the transportation company will want to examine them if there is a damage claim. Keep the carton and packing material even if no shipping damage occurs. Having the original carton available makes packing the unit much easier if it should ever be necessary to store it or return it to the factory for service.

> NOTE
> Fill out the enclosed registration card and return it to the factory immediately to insure registration and validation of the warranty.

2-2. LOCATION.

The location of the TR–4C is not critical. However, care should be taken to insure that adequate clearance is provided to insure free circulation of air around the unit and to allow access to the side controls and connectors. Do not cover the top of the cabinet with books, papers or other equipment as overheating may result.

2-3. MOBILE INSTALLATION.

2-4. POWER REQUIREMENTS. Refer to figure 2-2 for rear chassis connector identification. The TR–4C may be installed in any vehicle with a 12 volt dc negative ground system. An R. L. Drake Model DC–4 Power Supply is required for a mobile installation. The recommended location for the DC–4 is on the passenger side of the firewall. Refer to figure 2-3 for the electrical connections required.

2-5. MOUNTING. Mount the TR–4C in a convenient location below the dash with an R. L. Drake Model MMK–3 Mobile Mounting Kit. Refer to figure 2-4 for various mounting options. Be sure to allow adequate clearance for air circulation and cable connections. Turn the TR–4C off. Connect the power cable between the TR–4C and the DC–4. Coil up any excess cable and tape it in place out of sight. Connect the black wire from the power supply to a convenient ground. Route the red wire from the power supply through the firewall and connect it to the positive battery terminal or the starter solenoid. The fuse holder should be installed as close to the solenoid as possible. Shorten both of these wires as much as possible.

2-6. ANTENNA. Install a mobile antenna as recommended by the antenna manufacturer. Connect a coaxial cable from the antenna to the SO–239 connector at the rear of the TR–4C.

2-7. SPEAKER. *DO NOT* connect the TR–4C to the speaker of the car radio. Install a separate speaker for use with the TR–4C. The R. L. Drake Model MC–4 Mobile Console is recommended for this type of installation. It includes a speaker and a wattmeter and is designed to mount over or under the TR–4C.

2-8. MICROPHONE. Use a microphone with a flat frequency response. The microphone should have a cardioid pattern to reduce pickup from the back and sides. Connect the microphone as illustrated in figure 2-1 to insure proper performance.

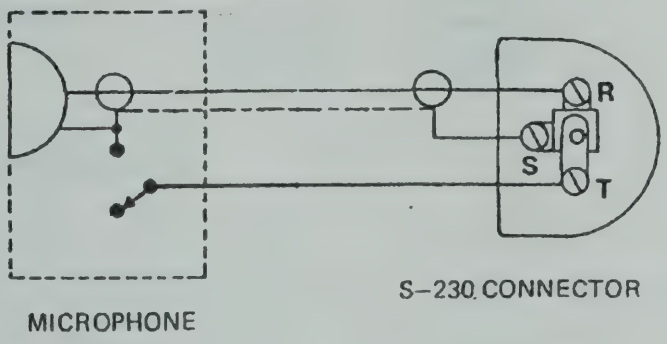


Figure 2–1. Microphone Connections

2-9. STATIONARY INSTALLATION.

2-10. POWER REQUIREMENTS. An R. L. Drake Model AC–4 Power Supply rated at 120 volts ac, 50/60 Hz, is required for stationary installations. The AC–4 is designed to fit inside the MS–4 speaker cabinet.

2-11. VIEWING ANGLE. Refer to figure 2-5 for illustrations of viewing angle options. See Chapter V for bottom cover removal.

2-12. ACCESSORIES. Refer to figures 2-6 through 2-9 for the electrical connections required to operate the TR–4C with the various recommended accessories.

NOTE

If the old RV–3 is to be used it must be modified as follows: Install a 22 K, 2 Watt resistor from pin 1 of the tube (0A2) to the terminal of the FUNCTION switch to which the orange wire is attached.

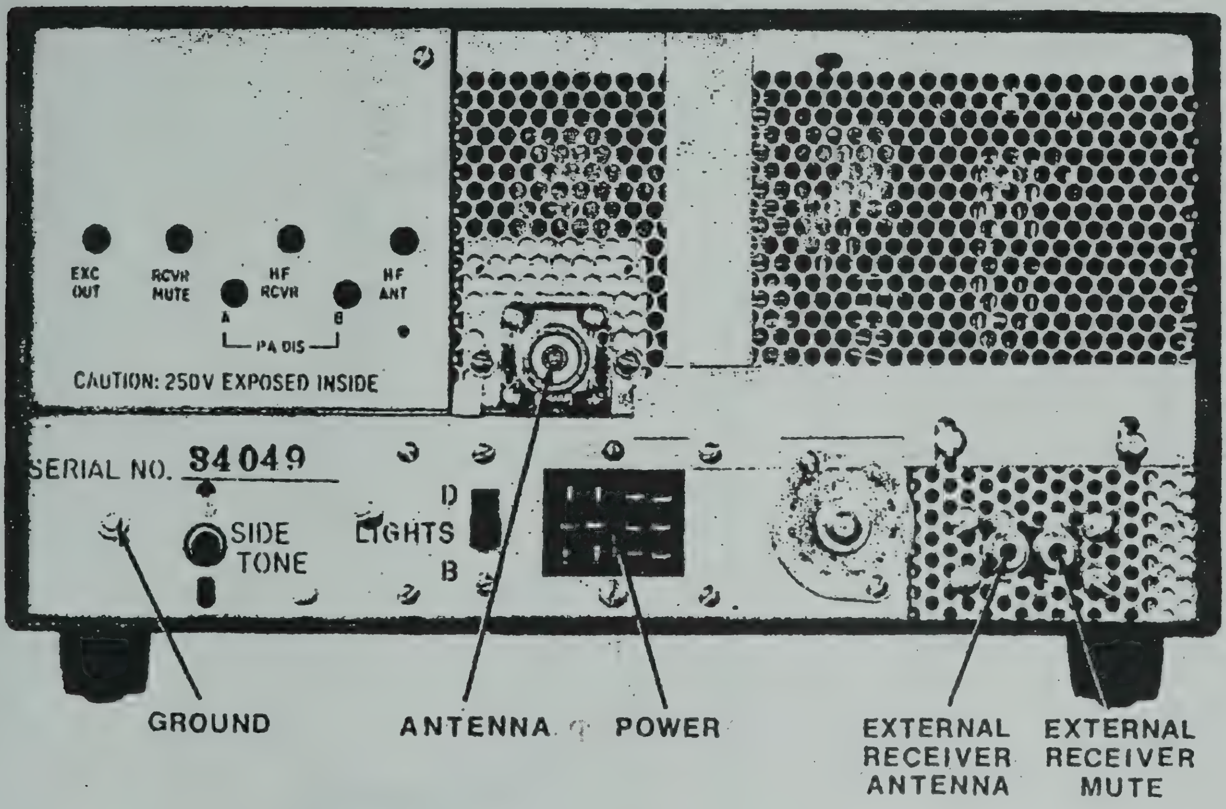

EXC OUT
RCVR MUTE
HF RCVR
HF ANT
A
B
PA DIS
CAUTION: 250V EXPOSED INSIDE
SERIAL NO. 34049
SIDE TONE
D
LIGHTS
B
GROUND
ANTENNA
POWER
EXTERNAL RECEIVER ANTENNA
EXTERNAL RECEIVER MUTE

Figure 2–2. Rear Chassis Connectors

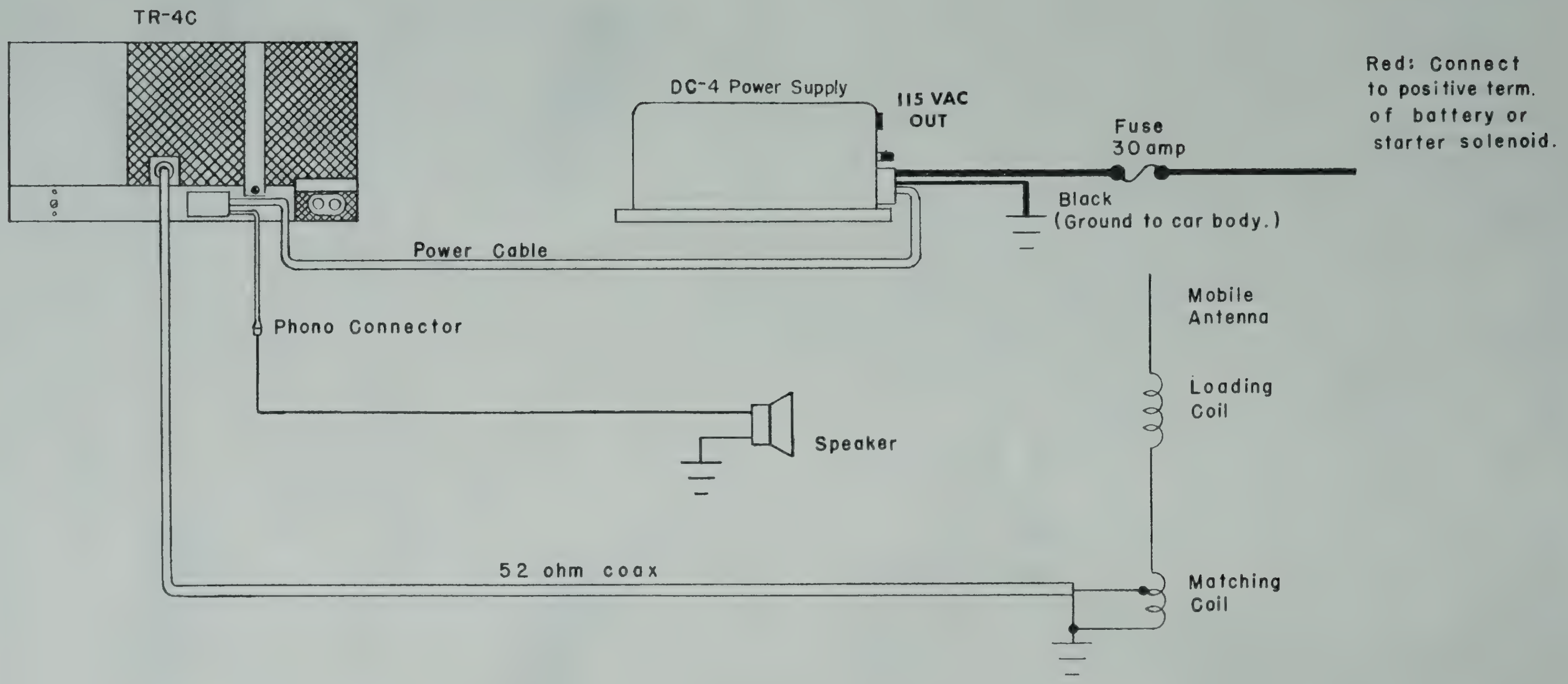
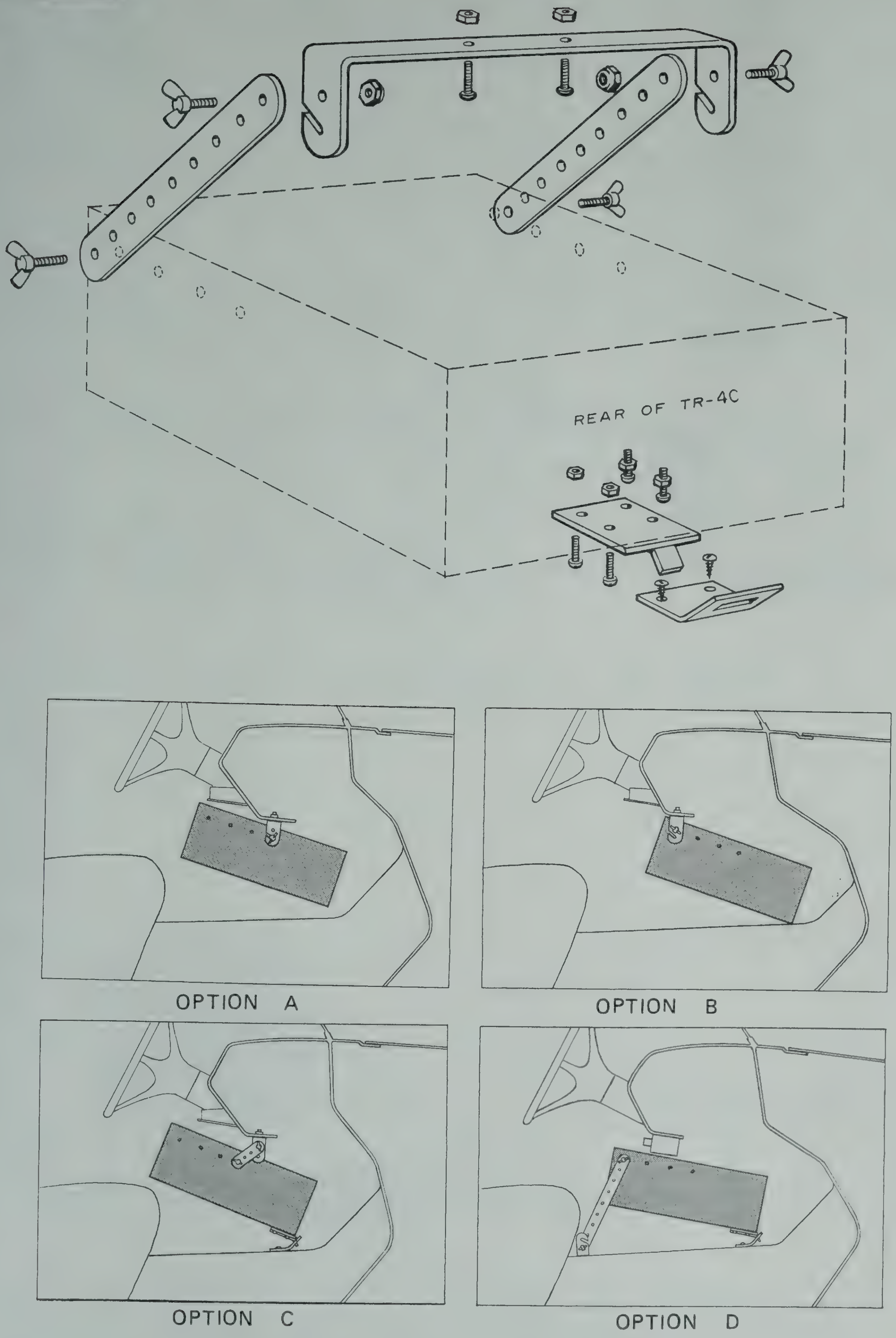

TR-4C
DC-4 Power Supply
115 VAC
OUT
Fuse
30 amp
Red: Connect
to positive term.
of battery or
starter solenoid.
Black
(Ground to car body.)
Power Cable
Phono Connector
Speaker
Mobile
Antenna
Loading
Coil
52 ohm coax
Matching
Coil

Figure 2–3. Electrical Connections Required for Mobile Installation


REAR OF TR-4C

OPTION A

OPTION B

OPTION C

OPTION D

Figure 2–4. Mobile Installation Mounting Options

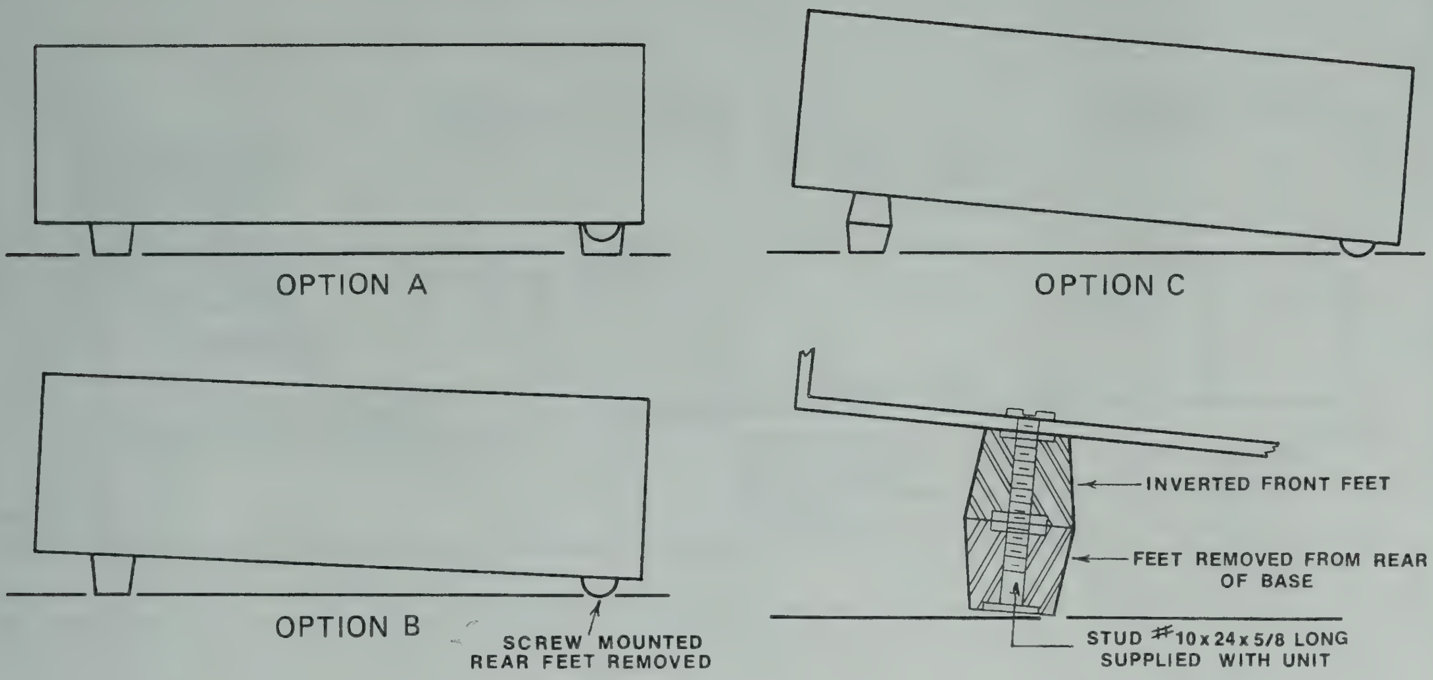

OPTION A
OPTION C
OPTION B
SCREW MOUNTED REAR FEET REMOVED
INVERTED FRONT FEET
FEET REMOVED FROM REAR OF BASE
STUD #10 x 24 x 5/8 LONG SUPPLIED WITH UNIT

Figure 2–5. Viewing Angle Options in a Stationary Installation

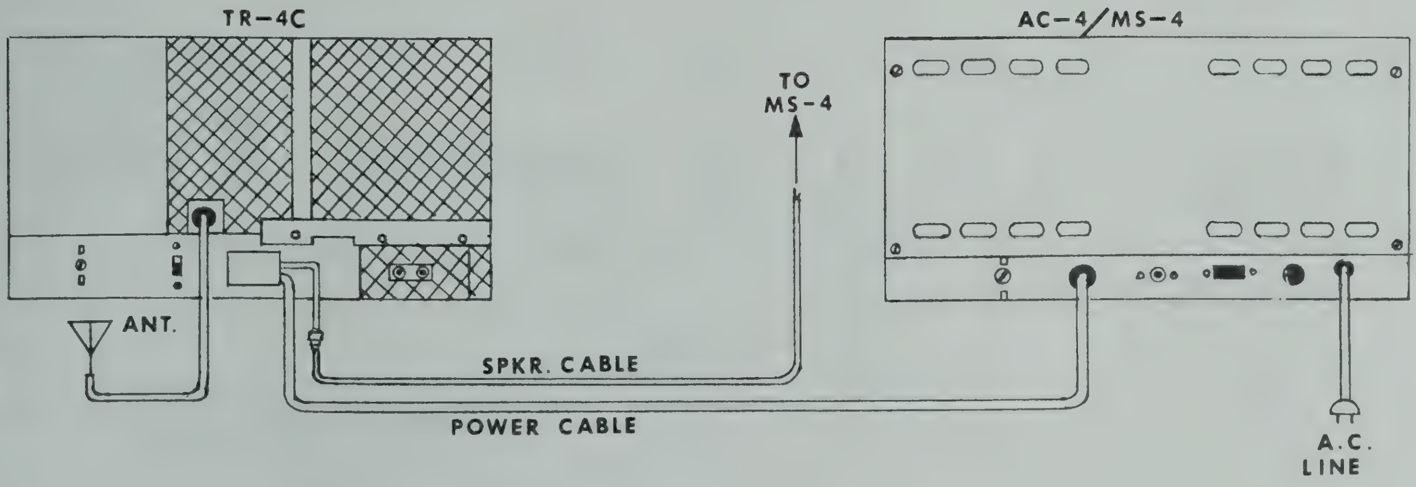

TR–4C
AC–4/MS–4
TO MS–4
ANT.
SPKR. CABLE
POWER CABLE
A.C. LINE

Figure 2–6. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply and MS–4 Speaker

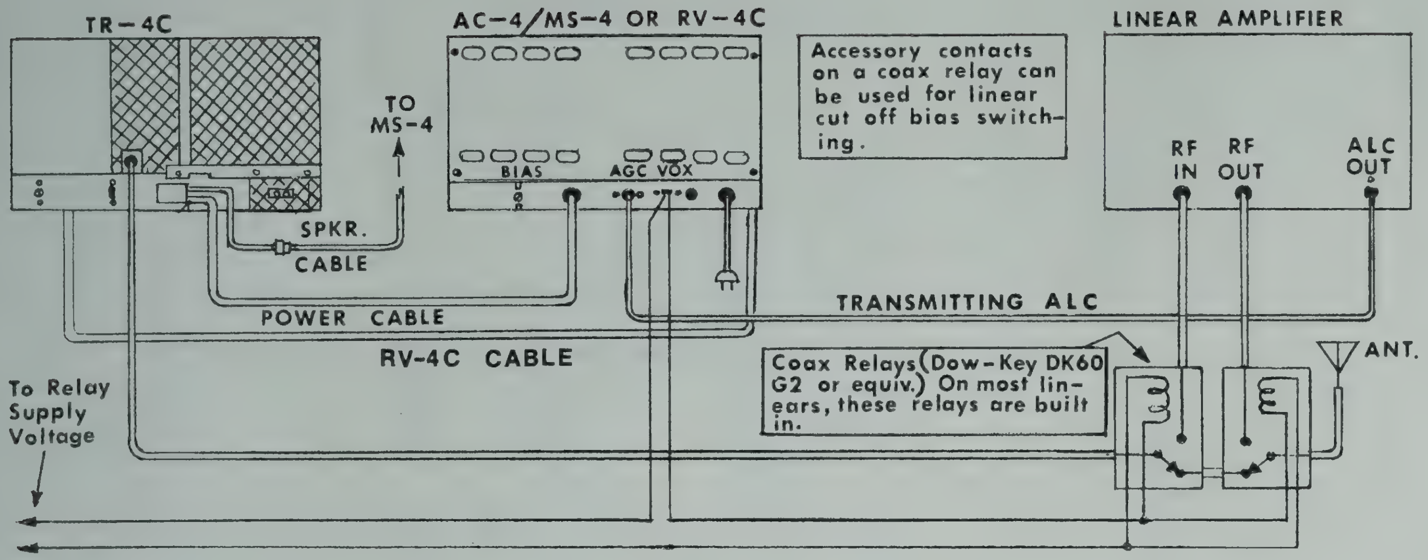

TR-4C
AC-4/MS-4 OR RV-4C
Accessory contacts on a coax relay can be used for linear cut off bias switching.
LINEAR AMPLIFIER
TO MS-4
BIAS
AGC VOX
RF IN
RF OUT
ALC OUT
SPKR. CABLE
POWER CABLE
TRANSMITTING ALC
RV-4C CABLE
Coax Relays (Dow-Key DK60 G2 or equiv.) On most linears, these relays are built in.
ANT.
To Relay Supply Voltage

Figure 2–7. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply, RV–4C Remote VFO and a Linear Amplifier

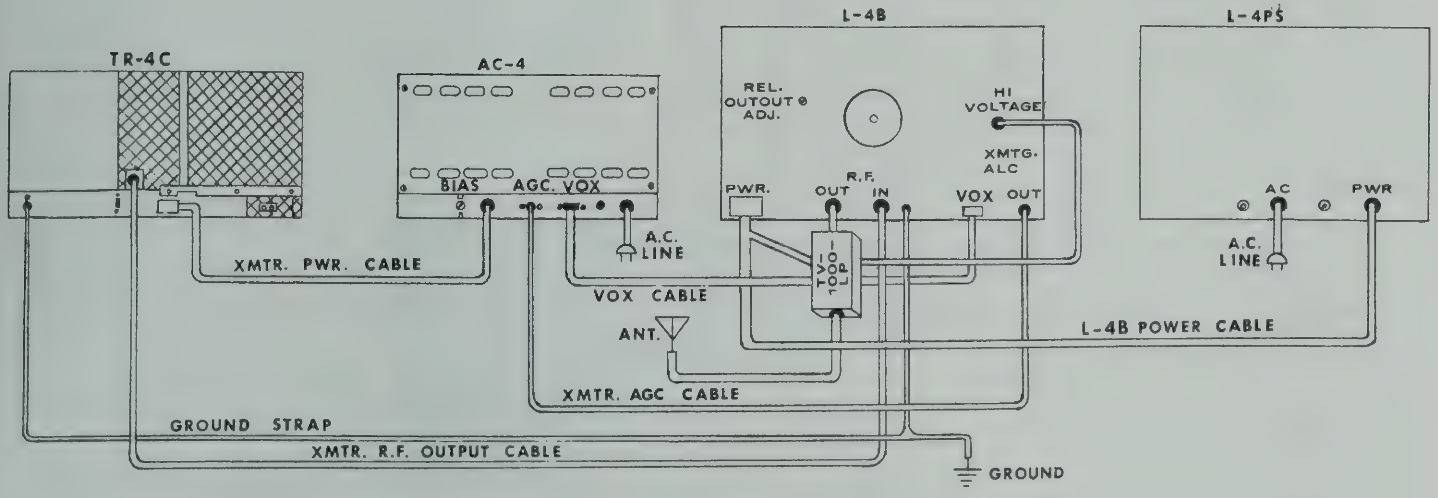

TR-4C
AC-4
L-4B
L-4PS
REL. OUTOUT ADJ.
HI VOLTAGE
XMTG. ALC
BIAS
AGC. VOX
PWR.
R.F.
OUT
IN
VOX
OUT
AC
PWR
A.C. LINE
XMTR. PWR. CABLE
VOX CABLE
ANT.
L-4B POWER CABLE
XMTR. AGC CABLE
GROUND STRAP
XMTR. R.F. OUTPUT CABLE
GROUND

Figure 2–8. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply and the L–4B Linear Amplifier

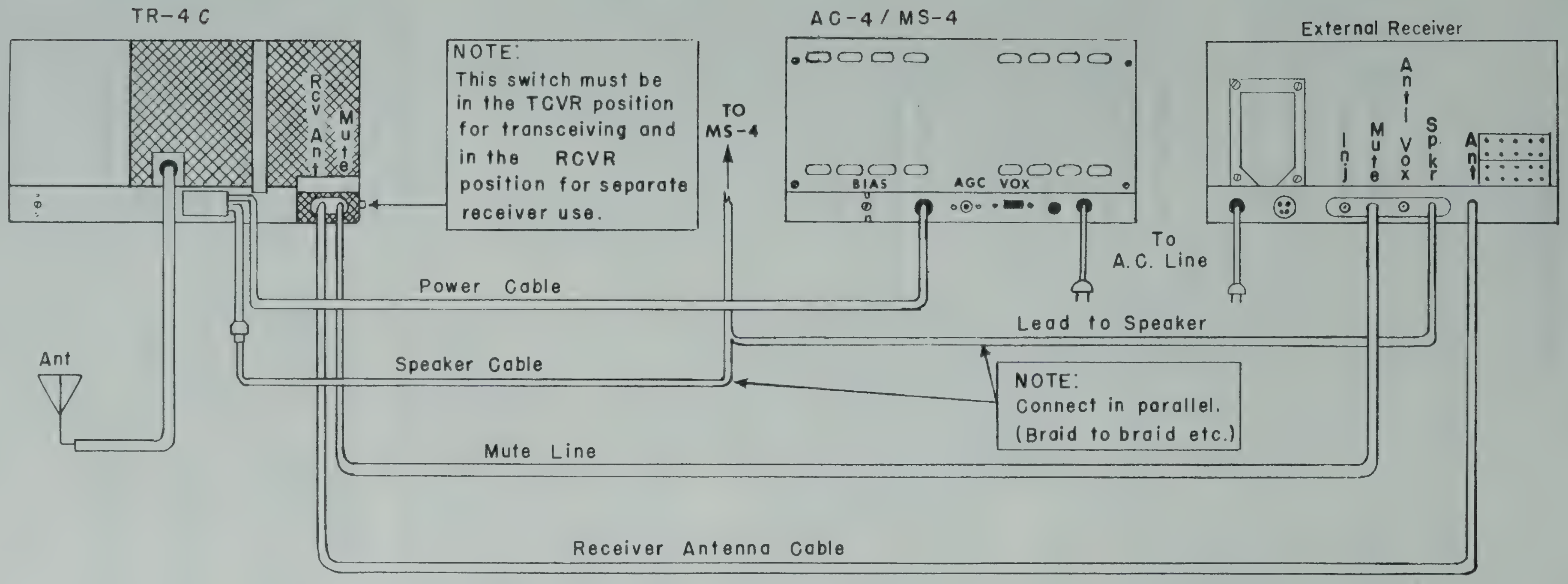

TR-4 C
Rcv Ant
Mute
Ant
NOTE:
This switch must be in the TCVR position for transceiving and in the RCVR position for separate receiver use.
TO MS-4
AC-4 / MS-4
BIAS
AGC
VOX
To A.C. Line
External Receiver
Inj
Mute
Anti Vox
Spkr
Ant
Power Cable
Lead to Speaker
Speaker Cable
NOTE:
Connect in parallel.
(Braid to braid etc.)
Mute Line
Receiver Antenna Cable

Figure 2–9. Connecting an External Receiver

CHAPTER III
OPERATION

3-1. GENERAL.

Figure 3-1 illustrates and describes all front panel controls and indicators on the TR–4C Transceiver. Controls and connectors located on the rear and sides of the unit are described under "other controls" below. Rear chassis connectors are identified in figure 2-2.

3-2. MODE SWITCH. In the SSB position, the receiver portion functions until the transmitter is energized either by talking into the microphone or actuating the microphone push-to-talk switch. The transmitter then emits an upper or lower sideband signal depending on the setting of the SIDEBAND switch. In the X-CW position, the receiver portion functions until the key is closed. The TR–4C then goes into the transmit mode, a CW sidetone is energized and the carrier is shifted approximately 1 kHz from the received frequency. The unit will remain in transmit during CW keying and will return to receive when keying is stopped briefly. NOTE: The SIDEBAND switch must be in the X position when the Mode switch is on X-CW or X-AM. It should also be noted that if the relays fail to close occasionally when the key is used, advance the VOX gain (screwdriver adjust on the right side of the chassis) until positive relay action is obtained. In the X-AM position, a controlled carrier screen modulator is incorporated for AM transmission and a diode detector is used for AM reception. Transmit and receive switching is accomplished by VOX or push-to-talk as on SSB.

3-3. BLANKER SWITCH. The noise blanker may be left on except when there is a strong signal within 5 kHz of the received signal. A strong signal which falls within the 10 kHz wide crystal filter in the noise blanker, and outside the 2.1 kHz crystal filter in the TR–4C, will operate the noise blanker gate circuit causing distortion products. This limitation in the noise blanker is caused by the necessity of having a bandwidth in the blanker wide enough to minimize stretching of noise pulses before blanking. Usually this limitation is no problem under normal operating conditions.

3-4. VFO DIAL. This dial consists of 2 transparent discs which display concentric scales and which rotate at different speeds. There are 2 scales on each disc. The upper scale on each disc is used for all bands except 20 meters where the lower scale is used. Zero to 100 kHz is indicated on one disc and hundreds of kHz is indicated on the other. The frequency of the operating signal is the sum of the frequencies indicated by the BAND switch and the VFO dial, for example:

BAND switch frequency	7.000 MHz
100 kHz dial	.200
1 kHz dial	.072
Operating frequency	7.272 MHz

This dial may be calibrated over a short range by the following procedure:

a. Set the Mode switch to CAL.
b. Tune the TR–4C to zero beat with the nearest 100 kHz calibrator signal.
c. Hold the tuning knob stationary and rotate the knob skirt until the dial displays the correct frequency.

3-5. TUNING PROCEDURE.

CAUTION

Under no circumstances should operation of the TR–4C be attempted until it is connected to a proper antenna or a dummy load. Always allow a two minute warm up period after the TR -4C is turned on before transmitting.

3-6. BIAS ADJUSTMENT. Before any type of operation is attempted, it will be necessary to set the PA bias to the correct value. Proceed as follows:

a. Turn on the TR–4C with the RCVR GAIN control.
b. Rotate the XMTR GAIN control fully counterclockwise.

(continued on page 3–5)

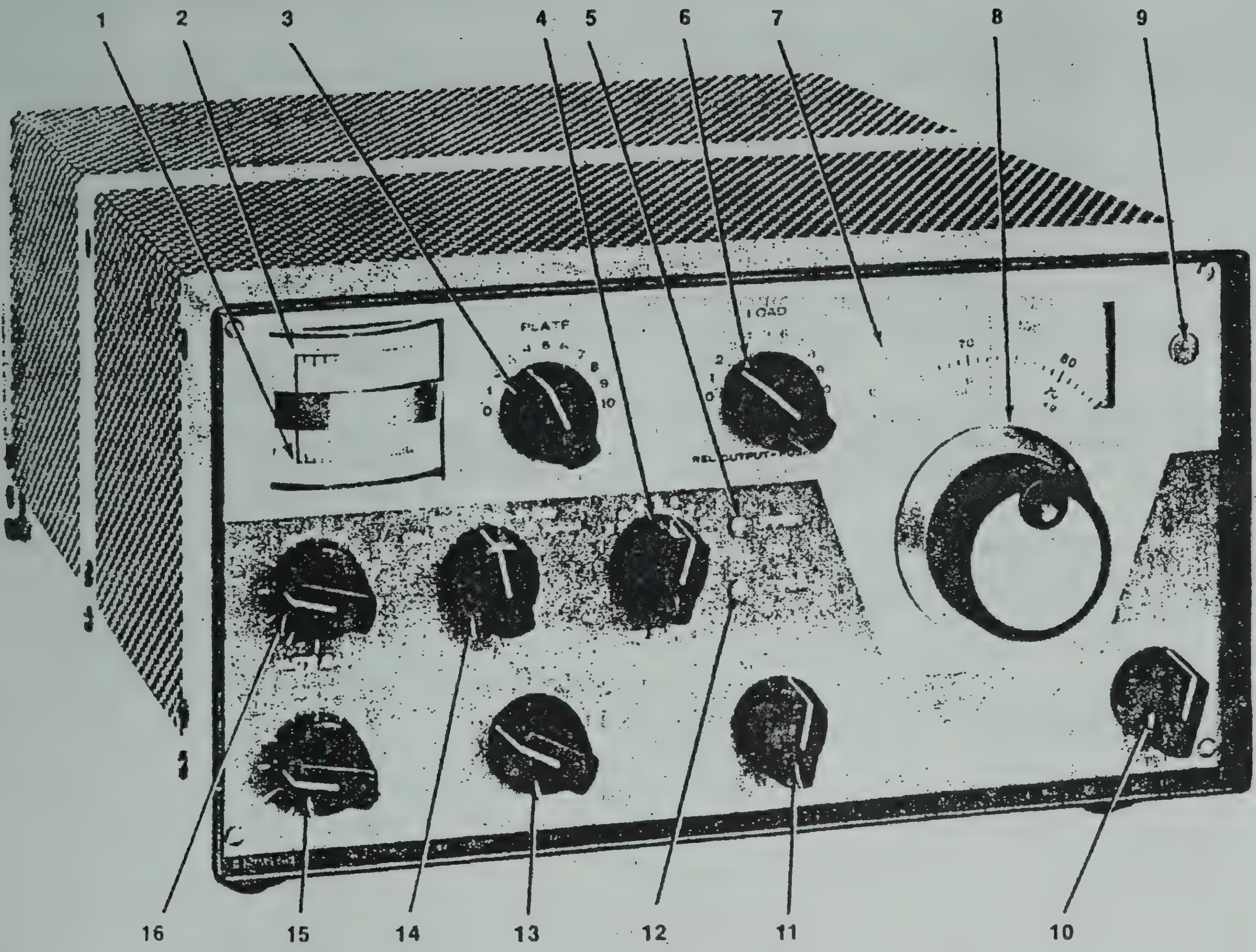

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
PLATE
LOAD
16
15
14
13
12
11
10

Figure 3–1. Front Panel Controls

FRONT PANEL CONTROLS

1. S meter: Indicates relative level of received signals. Indicates transmitter AGC when transmitting.
2. Plate meter: Indicates plate current in the final amplifier. Indicates relative RF power when LOAD control (6) is pushed in.
3. PLATE control: Tunes power amplifier pi-network circuit for resonance.
4. RF TUNE control: Peak tunes the receiver RF amplifier, the transmitter driver grid and plate tuned circuits.
5. UPPER sideband indicator lamp: Glows when upper sideband is selected.
6. LOAD control: Matches the TR–4C to the impedance of the antenna. Push in to display relative RF power on plate meter (2).
7. VFO dial: Displays portion of operating frequency from zero to 600 kHz. Reading must be added to BAND switch frequency setting for complete operating frequency.
8. VFO control: Adjusts frequency setting of dial (7).
9. VFO indicator lamp: Glows only when TR–4C VFO is operating.
10. BLANKER switch: Provides on/off control for R. L. Drake's Model 34–PNB Noise Blanker (an accessory).
11. SIDEBAND switch: Selects upper or lower sideband and lights appropriate indicator lamp (5 or 12).
12. LOWER sideband indicator lamp: Glows when lower sideband is selected.
13. BAND switch: Selects the desired amateur band.
14. Mode switch: Selects the desired mode of operation. In CAL position, it switches on the 100 kHz crystal calibrator (operable in transmit or receiver mode).
15. RCVR GAIN control: Dual control. Knob controls the receiver audio level, and provides a power on/off control at the extreme counterclockwise position. Lever controls the maximum RF gain of the receiver.
16. XMTR GAIN control: Adjusts the microphone gain on AM and SSB. In CW mode it adjusts the RF drive.

OTHER CONTROLS

Right Side (not illustrated).

PHONE jack: Provides a connection for headphones or external speaker.

MIC jack: Provides a connection for microphone. Mates with connector S-230 furnished with the TR–4C.

VOX control: Adjusts the gain of the VOX amplifier and the antenna relay release time on CW.

ANTIVOX control: Adjusts the gain of the ANTIVOX amplifier.

ZERO control: Adjusts the no-signal display of the S meter to S1.

KEY jack: Provides a connection for CW key. With key connected, transmitter is disabled for all modes of operation and receiver is disabled for AM unless the key is closed.

Left Side (not illustrated).

RCVR/TCVR switch: Selects either the TR–4C Receiver or external receiver.

Rear Chassis (Refer to figure 2-2).

Ground terminal: Provides a connection for earth ground.

SIDE TONE control: Adjusts the level of the CW sidetone with respect to the received signal. For no sidetone, rotate fully counterclockwise.

LIGHTS switch: Changes intensity of dial lamps to dim (D) or bright (B).

Antenna connector: Provides a connection for the station antenna (SO-239).

Power connector: Provides a connection for either AC–4 or DC–4 Power Supply.

External Receiver Antenna jack: Provides a connection for an external receiver.

External Receiver Mute jack: Provides a connection for muting an external receiver. It may be used with any receiver which requires a DC path to ground for receiving and an open circuit for muting. All R. L. Drake receivers have this feature.

NOTE

Rear chassis markings *above* the CAUTION notice identify external cable connectors when TR--4C VHF Modification Kit is used.

c. Turn the SIDEBAND switch to its counterclockwise position.
d. Turn the Mode switch to X-CW.
e. Adjust the Power Supply (AC–4 or DC–4) bias control for a reading of 0.1 Amperes on the plate current meter.

3-7. TUNE UP. Do not allow plate current to exceed 0.1 Amperes for more than 6 seconds with the PLATE control not tuned for minimum plate current or maximum RF output.

CAUTION
Failure to observe the warning above will result in rapid final amplifier tube deterioration due to excessive plate dissipation.

The final amplifier pi-network will match a nominal 50 ohm load. The VSWR may be as high as 2:1 on all bands except 80 meters where a lower VSWR may be required. On 80 meters an external antenna matching network may be required.

Preset the controls as follows:

a. Select the desired band with the BAND switch.
b. Select the desired operating frequency with the VFO tuning knob.
c. Rotate the XMTR GAIN control full counterclockwise.
d. Rotate the LOAD control full counterclockwise.
e. Place the SIDEBAND control in the X position.
f. Place the Mode switch in the SSB position.
g. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum noise or signal as indicated by the S meter.

Rotate the Mode switch to the X-CW position and advance the XMTR GAIN control until the plate current meter moves up scale slightly. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum plate current and quickly tune the PLATE control for a dip in plate current. After the dip is found, rotate the XMTR GAIN control clockwise until plate current no longer increases.

Depress the LOAD control and alternately adjust the PLATE and LOAD controls in small increments for maximum RF output. Release the LOAD control and adjust the PLATE control for minimum plate current. At this point the plate meter should indicate a plate current between 0.380 and 0.500 Amperes. The reading will depend on the line voltage, antenna match, tube condition, etc. Increasing the setting of the LOAD control beyond the point at which maximum RF output occurs will result in excessive plate dissipation. It should not be necessary to advance the LOAD control beyond 4.5 to obtain maximum RF output. Further advancement indicates that the VSWR of the antenna system is too high and leaving the control set beyond this point is likely to result in excessive harmonic radiation. The above procedure should be completed as quickly as possible and the Mode switch should be returned to the SSB position.

When the Mode switch is in the X-CW position, the screen voltage on the final amplifier tubes is reduced to prevent overheating. When the switch is in the SSB position, this voltage is increased so that an input power of 300 watts can be obtained.

3-8. SSB OPERATION.

In the following discussion, it is assumed that the TR–4C has already been tuned up on the desired band as described in paragraph 3-7. Preset the controls as follows:

SIDEBAND	–On desired sideband as shown by indicator lights.
Mode	–On SSB.
XMTR GAIN	–Fully counterclockwise.
RF gain (lever)	–Fully clockwise.
RCVR GAIN (knob)	–Fully counterclockwise (do not turn off power).
VOX gain	–Fully clockwise.
ANTIVOX	–Fully counterclockwise.

While talking into the microphone in a normal voice, increase the XMTR GAIN control until the S meter starts kicking up scale above its resting value. With no modulation, the S meter will rest up scale on transmit. This indicates that the transmitter AGC is starting to operate and the transmitter has maximum output. Continue talking and reduce the VOX gain until a point is reached where further reduction results in a too frequent relay drop out. Increase the AF GAIN until received signals are of the desired level. This may cause the transceiver to cycle back and forth between transmit and receive. Adjust the ANTIVOX control until the cycling stops. If the push-to-talk switch on the microphone is properly connected as described under Installa-

tion, it may be depressed at any time, thus overriding the VOX system. If VOX operation is not desired, turn the VOX gain control fully counterclockwise.

On SSB, the TR–4C transmits on exactly the same frequency on which it receives. Therefore, be sure that you have the signals tuned in so that the voices sound normal before you answer another station's CQ, or break another QSO. Otherwise, you will not be transmitting exactly on frequency. If a key is used, it must either be closed or unplugged from the KEY jack for SSB and AM operation.

3-9. CW OPERATION.

To operate CW, connect a key to the KEY jack. If an electronic keyer is used, connect it for grid block keying. Leave the key in the open condition. The TR–4C uses shifted carrier CW. With this system, it is possible to transmit approximately on the received station's frequency without being zero beat while receiving. The transmitter BFO is shifted from the received signal frequency by approximately 1 kHz. The VFO dial reads the correct frequency of a received signal when the signal is tuned for zero beat.

To receive CW signals, place the Mode switch in the X-CW position and the SIDEBAND switch in the X position. Tune in a CW signal for an audio pitch of about 1 kHz and adjust the audio gain control knob for a normal listening level.

To transmit, depress the key, and adjust the XMTR GAIN control until it is just below the point at which plate current no longer increases. Do not advance it beyond this point. Advance the SIDETONE control on the rear of the chassis until the sidetone reaches the desired volume. Adjusting the RCVR GAIN knob controls both the received signal and sidetone level.

The TR–4C uses automatic transmit/receive switching. This means that it will automatically transmit when the key is depressed and will remain in the transmit condition during keying. It will return to the receive condition when the key is released for a brief period. If this period is too long, decrease the VOX gain. Manual transmit/receive switching can be accomplished by connecting an external switch to the push-to-talk circuit of the MIC jack.

3-10. AM OPERATION.

For AM operation, the Mode switch should be in the X-AM position and the SIDEBAND switch should be in the X position. If a key is used, it should be left closed or unplugged. Tune in AM signals for most pleasing audio. This will not necessarily coincide with maximum S meter reading. The same procedure should be followed in setting the various gain controls on AM as on SSB, except that the XMTR GAIN control should be adjusted for plate current peaks of 0.2 to 0.25 Amperes when talking into the microphone in a normal voice. Care should be taken to stay within these limits since the transmitter AGC does not operate on AM.

3-11. OPERATION NEAR BAND EDGES.

When operating near the edge of a band, be sure to check the dial calibration as described under tuning procedure. When working SSB be sure to use the sideband that will be inside the band. On AM and CW, the transmitted carrier will be 1 kHz higher or lower than the indicated dial frequency.

3-12. OPERATION WITH A LINEAR AMPLIFIER.

Since the TR–4C Transceiver is conservatively rated at 300 watts PEP input, it is doubtful if it would be worthwhile to use a linear amplifier with a power rating of less than 1000 to 2000 watts PEP input. A triode type grounded grid linear amplifier with a 1000 to 2000 watt PEP rating will present a satisfactory load to the TR–4C.

If the linear amplifier is of the grounded cathode type with high impedance input, it will be necessary to install a resistive pad between the TR–4C and the linear amplifier that will present the proper impedance to the TR–4C. Such a pad must be made of non-inductive resistors and must have adequate power handling capacity. Antenna switching should be accomplished as shown in figure 2-7. Most linear amplifiers have these relays built-in.

To properly operate the TR–4C with a linear amplifier proceed as follows:

a. With the TR–4C connected to the linear amplifier tune the RF TUNE control as described in paragraph 3-7 g.
b. Set the LOAD control to the setting indicated on the chart below, for the band desired, when using a linear amplifier with a 50 ohm input.

BAND	50 Ohm LOAD Setting
3.5 MHz	2
7.0 MHz	3
14.0 MHz	2
21.0 MHz	3
28.5 MHz	2

c. Tune the PLATE control for minimum plate current.
d. Switch the Mode switch to the desired mode of operation.
e. Advance the XMTR GAIN control until the desired amount of input to the linear amplifier is obtained.

Note that when the TR–4C is loaded much below maximum RF output the AGC does not function properly and flat topping in the TR–4C may result. Care should be taken to keep the XMTR GAIN below the point where this occurs. This can be accomplished by making sure that the average peak plate current does not exceed one half of the plate current obtained on tune up.

If your linear amplifier has AGC output, connect it to the TR–4C as shown in figure 2-7. If the TR–4C is properly tuned, this should prevent flat topping on SSB regardless of the XMTR GAIN control setting. However, it will not prevent overdrive on AM since the AGC does not function in this mode.

3-13. NOVICE OPERATION.

If used on the novice bands, maximum legal input power is 250 Watts which occurs when the Plate Meter reads .385 Ampere. To realize the most useful output under these conditions, readjustment of the Bias control on the Power Supply is suggested. Follow the Bias Adjustment procedure in paragraph 3-6, except set bias control on AC–4 for .025 Ampere plate current (one fourth of the normal setting). If the transceiver is used on both novice band and by another operator on SSB or AM, the bias must be readjusted to .1 Ampere before voice operation is attempted.

To load the transmitter for novice operation, preset controls as described in paragraph 3-6. Turn the MODE switch to X–CW and advance XMTR GAIN for a very slight increase in plate current. Tune RF TUNE for a peak in plate current, being careful not to exceed .385 Ampere, and quickly tune PLATE control for a dip in plate current. Turn XMTR GAIN control fully clockwise. Adjust LOAD control clockwise and then redip the PLATE control. This procedure should be done repeatedly in small increments. Stop advancing LOAD control when plate current reaches .385 Ampere with the PLATE dipped, or when output power no longer increases, whichever occurs first. Reduce XMTR GAIN until plate current just starts to drop. The transmitter is now ready for operation.

CHAPTER IV
THEORY OF OPERATION

4-1. GENERAL.

The TR–4C is a 300 Watt HF single sideband transceiver which covers the 80 through 10 meter amateur bands. AM and CW modes are also included. The TR–4C requires either an R. L. Drake AC–4, 120 V AC power supply, or an R. L. Drake DC–4, 12 V DC power supply. The TR–4C features a high-stability linear permeability tuned VFO and two 8 pole crystal lattice filters for sideband selection. Some of the circuits are common to both the transmit and receive functions. Refer to the block diagram figure 4-1 and the schematic diagram figure 5-5 as required to supplement the following discussion.

4-2. RECEIVER CIRCUITRY.

A signal entering the antenna terminal passes through the antenna switching contacts of the relay and is applied to the grid of the RF amplifier V7 through the selectivity of the L/C network formed by T9, T10 and a section of the RF TUNE capacitor C37. After being amplified, it is passed through an additional L/C network consisting of T7, T8 and the remaining section of C37, to the grid of the mixer V3B. At this point it is combined with a signal from the premixer system of the required frequency to yield a 9.0 MHz IF. The premixer system consists of a 4.9-5.5 MHz solid state permeability tuned VFO, a buffer Q2, a switchable overtone crystal oscillator V1A, the premixer pentode V1B and a cathode follower V3A.

The VFO signal output is applied to the grid of the premixer pentode through the buffer Q2 and its associated circuitry. For 80 and 20 meter operation, the VFO signal bypasses the premixer and is connected through the cathode follower to the mixer. On 40, 15 and 10 meters a signal from the crystal oscillator heterodynes with the VFO in the premixer, V1B, to produce the desired injection frequency. On 40 meters, for example, a 21.5 MHz overtone crystal and the appropriate coil L1 are switched into the crystal oscillator circuit. The output from the oscillator is coupled into the premixer pentode where it heterodynes with the 4.9-5.5 MHz VFO to produce an output frequency of 16.0-16.6 MHz. This output is coupled through the 16.0-16.6 MHz bandpass coupler, T3, and to the cathode follower, V3A. On 15 meters, a 35.5 MHz crystal is used with a 30.0-30.6 MHz coupler, T2, and on the three 10 meter ranges, 42.5, 43.0 and 43.6 MHz crystals are used with a 37.0-38.7 MHz coupler, T1.

The 9.0 MHz output of the mixer, V3B, passes through the impedance matching transformer T6 into the upper or lower sideband crystal filter. The setting of the SIDEBAND knob determines which crystal filter is used. From the crystal filter the signal passes through the impedance matching transformer, T13, and is amplified by the 9 MHz receiver IF amplifier system, V11 and V12 and the IF transformers T11 and T12. The output of T12 is applied to the AGC amplifier, V13A, to the product detector, V16, and to the diode detector, V2.

The AGC amplifier V13A is biased beyond cutoff to provide an AGC delay. When sufficient RF voltage from T12 is applied to its grid, plate current flows during part of the cycle. This causes amplified negative voltage to appear across its plate load resistor R63, thus charging C115. This negative control voltage is applied to the grids of V7, V11 and V12. C115 discharges through R63 with a time constant of approximately one second. Rotating the RF Gain control counterclockwise applies increasingly more negative bias to the AGC controlled grids, thus limiting their maximum gain.

The product detector tube, V16, consists of a 9 MHz crystal oscillator formed by the cathode, grid 1 and grid 2. A product detector is formed by the cathode, grid 3, and the plate. The IF signal is applied to grid 3 where it heterodynes with the BFO voltage in the tube. The resulting audio signal is of sufficient amplitude to drive the audio preamplifier transistor, Q5, which drives the audio output tube, V17.

The IF signal from T12 is also applied to V2 which functions as a diode detector and an audio amplifier in the AM receive mode. The output of this stage is also fed to the Mode switch and is connected to V17 through the Audio Gain control when the Mode switch is in the X-AM position. The output of V17 is applied through the audio output transformer to the phone jack, J5, and to pin 12 of the power connector. Also, output from the plate of V17 is applied to the anti vox rectifier, D6, through the ANTIVOX control.

A 100 kHz crystal calibrator, V5, is switched on when the Mode switch is in the CAL position. Its output is coupled to the grid of the RF amplifier V7.

The S meter in the TR–4C operates in a bridge circuit with the plates of a receiver IF amplifier, V11, and the transmitter IF amplifier, V15 in one leg of the bridge and plate of the audio output tube V17 in the other leg. Receiver AGC voltage applied to V11 on receive and transmit causes these tubes to draw less current, thus unbalancing the bridge, which causes the S meter to read up scale. The bridge is balanced on receive by the ZERO control. On transmit, the meter may rest up scale with no modulation.

4-3. TRANSMITTER CIRCUITRY.

Audio input from the microphone is applied to one section of the microphone amplifier V18 where it is amplified and applied to the remaining section of this tube through one section of the XMTR GAIN control. Output from the cathode of the second triode of V18 is applied to the balanced modulator through the Mode switch for SSB operation. Output from the plate is applied to the grid of the AM screen modulator, V14, and to the grid of the first VOX amplifier triode, V19A, through the VOX control. The output from V19A is rectified by the VOX rectifier, D5, and the resulting positive DC voltage is applied to the grid of the relay control triode, V19B, causing it to conduct and to close the transmit/receive relay.

Audio voltage from V17 is rectified by the anti vox rectifier, D6, which supplies negative voltage to the grid of V19B, and preventing it from conducting and closing the relay when the microphone picks up audio from the speaker.

Cut off bias for the relay tube is obtained from a voltage divider. When the microphone push-to-talk switch is activated the cut off bias is grounded, causing V19B to conduct and close the relay.

RF from the 9.0 MHz crystal oscillator portion of the product detector tube V16 is applied to the balanced diode modulator through the carrier balance control. On SSB the audio from V18 is also applied to the balanced modulator and the result is a double sideband suppressed carrier signal which is applied to the transmitter IF amplifier. The amplified output is coupled through T13 to the upper or lower crystal filter where the undesired sideband is filtered out. The resulting SSB signal is coupled through T6 to the transmitter mixer, V4, where it is combined with a premixer signal of the proper frequency to give output on the desired amateur band.

Output from V4 passes through the L/C circuit, T7, T8 and C37, and is applied to the grid of the driver tube, V6. Here it is amplified and applied to the grids of V8, V9, and V10 through the L/C network, T9, T10 and the other half of C37.

Three parellel power amplifier tubes boost the signal to a power level suitable for transmission. The output impedance of the power amplifier tubes is matched to a 52 ohm load by means of the pi network circuit composed of L8, L9, C94 and C95.

At the first trace of flat topping in the final amplifier tubes, a small amount of grid current will be drawn. This produces a voltage drop across R47. The small negative going voltage thus obtained is applied through R46 to the cathode of V13B where it is amplified. The amplified negative voltage is applied to the grid of V15, thus reducing the level of the driving signal.

When the Mode switch is placed in the X-CW position, V2 becomes an audio phase shift oscillator which is grid-block keyed along with the transmitter mixer, V4, and the driver, V6. The audio output from V2 is applied to the grid of the

product detector tube V16, through the SIDETONE control, to provide audio output from the speaker for CW monitoring. Audio output from V2 is also applied to the grid of the VOX amplifier tube, V19A, which causes relays K1 and K2 to close. The relays turn on the transmitter, cause the 9.0 MHz oscillator to be shifted to 9.001 MHz and apply a variable source of DC, controlled by half of the XMTR GAIN control, to the balanced modulator. The DC voltage which unbalances the modulator increases the carrier to a suitable level. The resulting 9.001 MHz signal from the balanced modulator is amplified by V15 and coupled into the crystal filter. The SIDEBAND control must be in the "X" position to allow the signal to pass. A screen resistor is switched into the final amplifier screen circuit to prevent excessive screen current in the X-CW position of the Mode switch.

When the Mode switch is placed in the X-AM position the AM screen modulator V14 is inserted in series with the final amplifier screen supply and a constant voltage is applied to the balanced modulator. Relay K2 shifts the 9 MHz oscillator to 9.001 on transmit just as it does on X-CW. Vox and PTT functions are the same on AM as on SSB.

When relay K1 is closed, either by the VOX circuit or the push-to-talk switch, the cathode of V3B, V7, V11 and V12 are isolated from ground which disables the receiver. The cathodes of V4, V6, V8, V9, V10 and V15 are connected to ground which actuates the transmitter. Also, the antenna is switched from the receiver input to the final amplifier tank circuit. If the TCVR/RCVR switch is in the RCVR position, the RCVR MUTE jack is grounded through RFC 11 and RFC 7 and the antenna is connected to the RCVR ANT jack instead of T9 in the receive condition of the relays.

Pushing in the LOAD control disconnects the plate current meter from the final amplifier cathode circuit and connects it to the diode D9 and its associated circuitry. This network samples the RF output voltage at the antenna connection, rectifies it, and applies it across the meter.

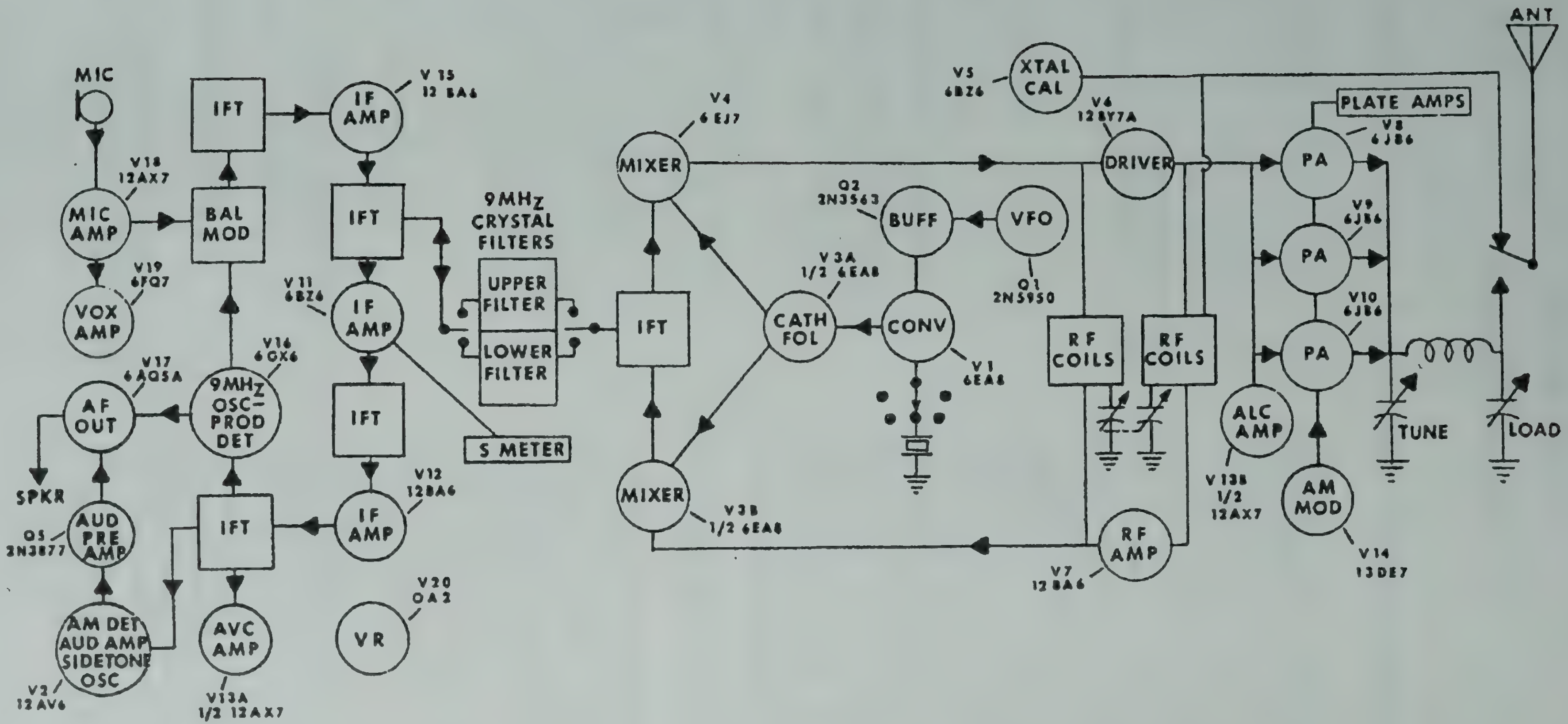

MIC
IFT
IF AMP
V 15
12 BA6
V18
12AX7
MIC AMP
BAL MOD
IFT
9MHz CRYSTAL FILTERS
UPPER FILTER
LOWER FILTER
V19
6FQ7
VOX AMP
V11
6BZ6
IF AMP
V17
6AQ5A
AF OUT
V16
6GX6
9MHz OSC-PROD DET
IFT
S METER
SPKR
Q5
2N3877
AUD PRE AMP
IFT
IF AMP
V12
12BA6
AM DET AUD AMP SIDETONE OSC
V2
12AV6
AVC AMP
V13A
1/2 12AX7
V20
OA2
VR
V4
6EJ7
MIXER
IFT
MIXER
V3B
1/2 6EA8
Q2
2N3563
BUFF
VFO
Q1
2N5950
V3A
1/2 6EA8
CATH FOL
CONV
V1
6EA8
V5
6BZ6
XTAL CAL
V6
12BY7A
DRIVER
RF COILS
RF COILS
RF AMP
V7
12BA6
PLATE AMPS
V8
6JB6
PA
V9
6JB6
PA
V10
6JB6
PA
ALC AMP
V13B
1/2
12AX7
AM MOD
V14
13DE7
TUNE
LOAD
ANT

Figure 4—1. Block Diagram

CHAPTER V
MAINTENANCE

5-1. SERVICE DATA.

We will check and align your transceiver at the factory for a nominal fee if it has not been tampered with. Transportation charges are extra. Any necessary repairs will be made on a time and material basis. Please write or call the factory for authorization before returning your unit for alignment or service. Address your request for authorization to:

R. L. Drake Company
540 Richard Street
Miamisburg, Ohio 45342
ATTN: Customer Service Department
Telephone: (Area Code 513) 866-3211
(Code-A-Phone Service after
1630 Hours E.S.T.)

WARNING

Extreme caution should be exercised when the top and bottom covers are removed. High voltage which is present at several points can cause a lethal electrical shock. Repairs and adjustments should be made only by a qualified electronics technician. Disconnect the Power Supply from the TR--4C before removing covers.

5-2. TOP COVER REMOVAL.

Remove the three top screws on each side of the TR--4C and remove the cover by first pulling up on the rear and then the front of the cabinet.

5-3. BOTTOM COVER REMOVAL.

Remove the three bottom screws on each side of the TR–4C and lift the chassis out of the bottom cover.

5-4. TUBE REPLACEMENT.

In general, most trouble in electronic equipment of good design is due to tube failure. The best method of finding defective tubes is by direct substitution. It is best not to rely too heavily on tube checkers. The TR--4C has been designed so that, with the exception of V8, V9 and V10, tubes can be replaced without need for realignment. These tubes are to be replaced with a matched set of the same brand as originally supplied. If a different brand is used, alignment of T7, T8, T9 and final amplifier neutralization is recommended. Matched sets of Sylvania 6JB6's are available directly from the factory. To replace the 6JB6 tubes, it is necessary to remove only the top of the final amplifier cage. To do this, remove the sheet metal screws holding the PA cover to the cage. A disc-handle is provided on the cover to facilitate removal. To replace the PA cover, simply reverse the process. Be sure the parasitic suppressors do not short to the cage.

5-5. TROUBLE SHOOTING.

Careful consideration has been given in the design of the TR–4C to keep maintenance problems to a minimum. However, it is quite possible that some problem will arise which cannot be cured by tube substitution. If this occurs, it is suggested that the TR–4C be returned to the dealer or you may write to the Customer Service Department at the address given in paragraph 5-1. Be sure to describe the problem in detail. Include full information concerning external connections, control settings, tubes substituted, serial number, etc. Always include the serial number when requesting service information. Before returning equipment to the factory, it is necessary to get prior authorization. In case of malfunction, first check the power supply fuse, the filament fuse in the TR--4C and the number 12 fuse lamp near the relay assembly for continuity. The voltage and resistance charts in this chapter should be valuable in isolating minor problems.

However, no attempt should be made to service the TR–4C unless you are thoroughly familiar with electronic circuitry and servicing technique. Care should be taken not to disturb the lead dress in the TR–4C since several circuits are quite critical in this regard.

5-6. TEST EQUIPMENT.

Alignment of TR–4C will require the following equipment:

a. A general coverage receiver capable of receiving WWV.
b. An 11 Megohm VTVM.
c. An alignment load consisting of a 1000 Ohm non-inductive resistor in series with a .005 uF disc ceramic capacitor.
d. A 52 Ohm dummy load.

> WARNING
> Before receiver alignment is attempted, the plate and screen power leads of the amplifier tubes should be disconnected where they pass through the partition under the chassis. Be sure the power is disconnected before this is attempted, or serious electrical shock may result.

5-7. ALIGNMENT PROCEDURES.

5-8. CRYSTAL CALIBRATOR. To align the crystal calibrator perform the following steps:

a. Let the TR–4C warm up for 30 minutes.
b. Preset the XMTR GAIN control fully counterclockwise.
c. Set the Mode switch to CAL.
d. Tune in WWV on the general coverage receiver with the BFO off.
e. Connect a wire from the receiver antenna terminal to V5 of the TR–4C. Wrap the wire around the tube a turn or two.
f. Adjust C45, located on top of the TR–4C chassis, until the calibrator signal is zero beat with the unmodulated WWV carrier.

5-9. 9.0 MHz OSCILLATOR.

a. Let the TR–4C warm up for 30 minutes.
b. Set the Mode switch in the SSB position.
c. Turn up the Audio Gain control until noise is audible in the speaker.
d. While switching the SIDEBAND knob back and forth, adjust C130, located on top of the chassis near the rear edge, until the pitch of the noise is the same on both positions.

5-10. INJECTION CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR.

a. Set the VTVM to its lowest DC negative volt scale and set the pointer to about center scale with VTVM zero adjust control.
b. Connect the common lead of the VTVM to the TR–4C chassis and the DC lead to the test point which is connected to pin 9 of V1.
c. Set BAND switch to 7.0 MHz and adjust L1 for maximum negative DC voltage.
d. Switch to 21.0 MHz and adjust L5 for maximum as in Step c.
e. Switch to 29.1 MHz and adjust L2 for maximum as in Step c.
f. The 28.0, the 28.5 and the 29.1 MHz positions should have about the same negative voltage.

5-11. VFO ADJUSTMENT.

The permeability tuned VFO was carefully adjusted at the factory and should require no further alignment. If it does not appear to track from one end of its range to the other, it should be returned to the factory for realignment. Maximum calibration error is 1 kHz when calibrated to the nearest 100 kHz point.

5-12. INJECTION COUPLER.

a. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 7.3 MHz.
b. Connect the alignment load between pin 6 of V1B and ground and adjust T3 (top) for maximum S meter reading.
c. Connect the load from pin 9 of V3A and ground and adjust T3 (bottom) for maximum S meter reading.
d. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 21.300 MHz and repeat the procedure for T2.
e. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 29.000 MHz and repeat the above procedure for T1. *Note:* On T1, adjust the bottom slug when the load is on pin 6 of V1B and the top slug when the load is on pin 9 on V3A.

Table 5–1. Resistance Chart

REF DES	Tube Type	MEASURED AT PIN 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
V1	6EA8	9.5 K	2.5 Meg	20 K	0	Fil	9.6 K	220	220	150 K
V2	12AV6	3.3 Meg	Inf.	Fil	0	150 K	150 K	350 K	—	—
V3	6EA8	8.0 K	150 K	250 K	Fil	0	11 K	2.2 K	1 K	34 K
V4	6EJ7	25 K	660 K	23 K	Fil	0	0	11 K	9.5 K	0
V5	6BZ6	1 Meg	1 K	Fil	0	350 K	125 K	1 K		
V6	12BY7A	25 K	67 K	0	0	0	Fil	8.5 K	25 K	0
V7	12BA6	2.8 Meg	0	Fil	0	11 K	10K	100	—	—
V8	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V9	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V10	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V11	6BZ6	2.5 Meg	150	0	Fil	10 K	13 K	0		
V12	12BA6	2.5 Meg	0	Fil	0	10 K	13 K	68		
V13	12AX7	1 Meg	22 K	45 K	0	0	2.2 Meg	55 K	48 K	Fil
V14	13DE7	8 K	2.5 Meg	2.5 Meg	Fil	0	2.2 Meg	22 Meg	0	Inf.
V15	12BA6	2 Meg	0	0	Fil	10 K	13 K	25 K	—	—
V16	6GX6	2.2 Meg	1 K	0	Fil	250 K	9.2 K	22 K		
V17	6AQ5	500 K	270	0	Fil	8.7 K	8 K	500 K		
V18	12AX7	350 K	6.8 Meg	0	0	Fil	350 K	500 K	3.3 K	N. C.
V19	6FQ7	12 K	4.5 Meg	0	Fil	0	100 K	620 K	820	1.6 Meg
V20	OA2	7.8 K	0	Inf.	0	7.8 K	Inf.	0		

REF DES	Transistor Type	MEASURED AT: Emitter	Base	Collector
Q1	2N5950	Located in PTO		
Q2	2N3563	Located in PTO		
Q3	AT5059	0	5.6 K	43 K
Q4	2N3394	0	750	1.1 K
Q5	2N3877	1 K	56 K	6.8 K

NOTE:
All measurements were made with respect to ground with the power supply disconnected from the TR 4C. The BAND switch was on 7.0 MHz. the Mode switch was on CAL and the RCVR GAIN and XMTR GAIN controls were fully clockwise. The VOX. ANTI VOX and SIDETONE controls were fully clockwise and the ZERO control was set at the balance point. The accessory 34 PNB jumper plug was in the noise blanker jack.

Table 5–2. Voltage Chart

REF DES	Tube Type	MEASURED AT PIN								
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
V1	6EA8	122	−2	125	0	6.3*	250 245	2.6	2.6	−1.3
V2	12AV6	0 −1.6	13.0 0	12.6*	0	0 0.9	0 0.9	255 122		
V3	6EA8	155 150	0	98 150	6.3*	0	260 250	3.5 150	17 15.5	17 15.2
V4	6EJ7	155 2.8	0	NC	6.3*	0	0	270 230	175 145	
V5	6BZ6	−42 0	0.9 23	12.6*	6.3*	70 140	58 144	0.9 23		
V6	12BY7A	155 3.3	0	NC	0	0	6.3*	265 240	262 165	0
V7	12BA6	−.14	0	12.6*	0	235 230	98 110	1.25 150		
V8	6JB6	262 250	−60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	−60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V9	6JB6	262 250	−60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	−60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V10	6JB6	262 250	−60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	−60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V11	6BZ6	−.16	1.6 150	0	6.3*	235	125 150	0		
V12	12BA6	−.16	0	12.6*	0	240	105 150	1.1 150		
V13	12AX7	−.1 0	−61 −61	−59 −59	0	0	−.16	−61 −61	−59 −58	6.3*
V14	13DE7	260 250	11.4 11.2	11.4 11.2	12.6*	0	11.4 11.2	−1.0 −1.0	0	64 53
V15	12BA6	0	0	0	12.6*	248 140	155 144	155 1.3		
V16	6GX6	−6.0 −5.6	4.0	0	6.3*	140 140	140	0		
V17	6AQ5	0	7.2 6.8	0	6.3*	240 230	155 150	NC		
V18	12AX7	88 87	−.75	0	0	12.6*	130 125	0	1.23 1.1	NC
V19	6FQ7	240 165	−9.5 0	0	6.3*	0	67 87	0	1.5 1.27	TP
V20	OA2	146	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	0		

Table 5–2. Voltage Chart (continued)

REF DES	Transistor Type	MEASURED AT:		
		Emitter	Base	Collector
Q1	2N5950	Located in PTO		
Q2	2N3563	Located in PTO		
Q3	AT5059	0	0	61
Q4	2N3394	0	11.2	0
Q5	2N3877	2.3	2.8	48

NOTE:
All measurements were made with an 11 Megohm VTVM and were taken from ground. RF TUNE, PLATE and LOAD controls were set as described in paragraph 3-7. BAND switch was on 7.0 MHz, VFO dial was at 7.250 MHz and SIDEBAND was on X. Receive measurements were made with the Mode switch in the CAL position and the transmit measurements were made with the Mode switch in the X-CW position, with the following exception:

On V14, both receive and transmit measurements were made with the Mode switch in the X-AM position and with PTT line grounded.

The AC–4 Power Supply was used. Where two voltages are shown, the top is for receive and the bottom is for transmit. An "*" indicates AC voltage. The accessory 34–PNB jumper plug was in the noise blanker jack.

5-13. RECEIVER IF.

a. Peak the RF TUNE control on noise at 3.8 MHz.
b. Adjust T11 top and bottom and T12 top and bottom for maximum noise from the speaker.

5-14. BALANCED MODULATOR AND CARRIER BALANCE.

a. Disconnect the power supply and reconnect the screen and plate supply leads to the final amplifier tubes.
b. Reconnect power supply.
c. Connect dummy load to the antenna jack.
d. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum receiver gain.
e. Adjust bias per paragraph 3-6. With XMIT GAIN fully counterclockwise, place the Mode switch in X–CW position and SIDEBAND switch in X position.
f. If the plate current exceeds 0.15 Ampere, adjust the RF TUNE for 0.15 Ampere maximum.
g. If plate current is less than 0.15 Amperes, adjust Carrier Balance pot until plate current reaches 0.15 Amperes.
h. Peak T14 for maximum plate current. Detune the RF TUNE control to prevent plate current from exceeding 0.15 Amperes.
i. Alternately adjust the Carrier Balance control and C127 for minimum plate current. There should be no difference in plate current between the two positions of the SIDEBAND switch.

5-15. FILTER MATCHING TRANSFORMER.

a. Adjust the S meter ZERO pot for zero S meter deflection (S-1).
b. With the SIDEBAND switch in USB, tune in the calibrator signal at 3.8 MHz for maximum S meter reading.
c. Adjust the RF TUNE control until the S meter reads S-9.
d. Turn the VFO control clockwise to increase the audio frequency until the S meter drops to S-5.
e. Adjust T6 and T13 for maximum S meter reading.
f. Repeat Steps b. through e.
g. Center the 9.0 MHz oscillator as described in paragraph 5-9.

5-16. MIXER AND RF ALIGNMENT.

a. Tune up the TR–4C at 3.8 MHz for maximum power output into a dummy load. Set the RF TUNE control on 5. Adjust the XMTR GAIN control for 0.2 Amperes plate current as indicated by the plate meter. Adjust T7 bottom and T9 bottom for maximum plate current.
b. Tune up the TR–4C at 7.3 MHz and repeat a. above, with the RF TUNE control on 6, by adjusting T8 top and T10 top.
c. Set RF TUNE control on 5. Tune up the TR–4C at 14.3 MHz and repeat a. above by adjusting T7 top and T9 top.
d. Tune up the TR–4C at 29.7 MHz (crystal not supplied). With the RF TUNE control at 9¾ repeat a. above by adjusting T8 bottom and T10 bottom.
e. Set RF TUNE control on 5. Tune up the TR–4C at 21.3 MHz and repeat a. above by adjusting L6 and L7.

5-17. PA NEUTRALIZATION.

a. Attach an RF output indicator between the TR–4C and the dummy load. If no external output indicator is available, the TR–4C's own RF output indicator may be used.
b. Tune up the TR–4C on 29.0 MHz for maximum power output into a dummy load.
c. Reduce plate current to 0.2 Amperes with the XMTR GAIN control.
d. While tuning the PLATE control back and forth through resonance, adjust C76, using an insulated screwdriver, until the plate current dip and maximum RF output occur simultaneously. An insulated screwdriver is required because the rotor of C76 is connected to + 250 Volts DC.

5-18. TRANSMITTER IF NEUTRALIZATION.

a. With microphone plugged into TR–4C, turn the VOX gain fully counterclockwise and turn XMTR GAIN fully clockwise. Place the Mode switch in the SSB position.
b. While talking into the microphone, increase the RCVR GAIN control setting until speech can be heard from the speaker.
c. Adjust C168 for minimum output from speaker.
d. If over one turn of adjustment is required, it will be necessary to realign T14, C127 and the Carrier Balance control.

5-19. S METER ADJUSTMENT.

With the RF GAIN control fully counterclockwise adjust R187 for an S meter reading of 60 dB over S-9.

Table 5–3. Tube and Semiconductor Complement

REF DES	Component Type	FUNCTION	
		Transmitter	Receiver
V1	6EA8	Pre-Mixer/Xtal Oscillator	Pre-Mixer/Xtal Oscillator
V2	12AV6	Sidetone Oscillator	Diode Det/1st AF Amplifier
V3	6EA8	Cathode Fol.	Mixer/Cathode Fol.
V4	6EJ7	Mixer	—
V5	6BZ6	—	Crystal Calibrator
V6	12BY7	Driver	—
V7	12BA6	—	RF Amplifier

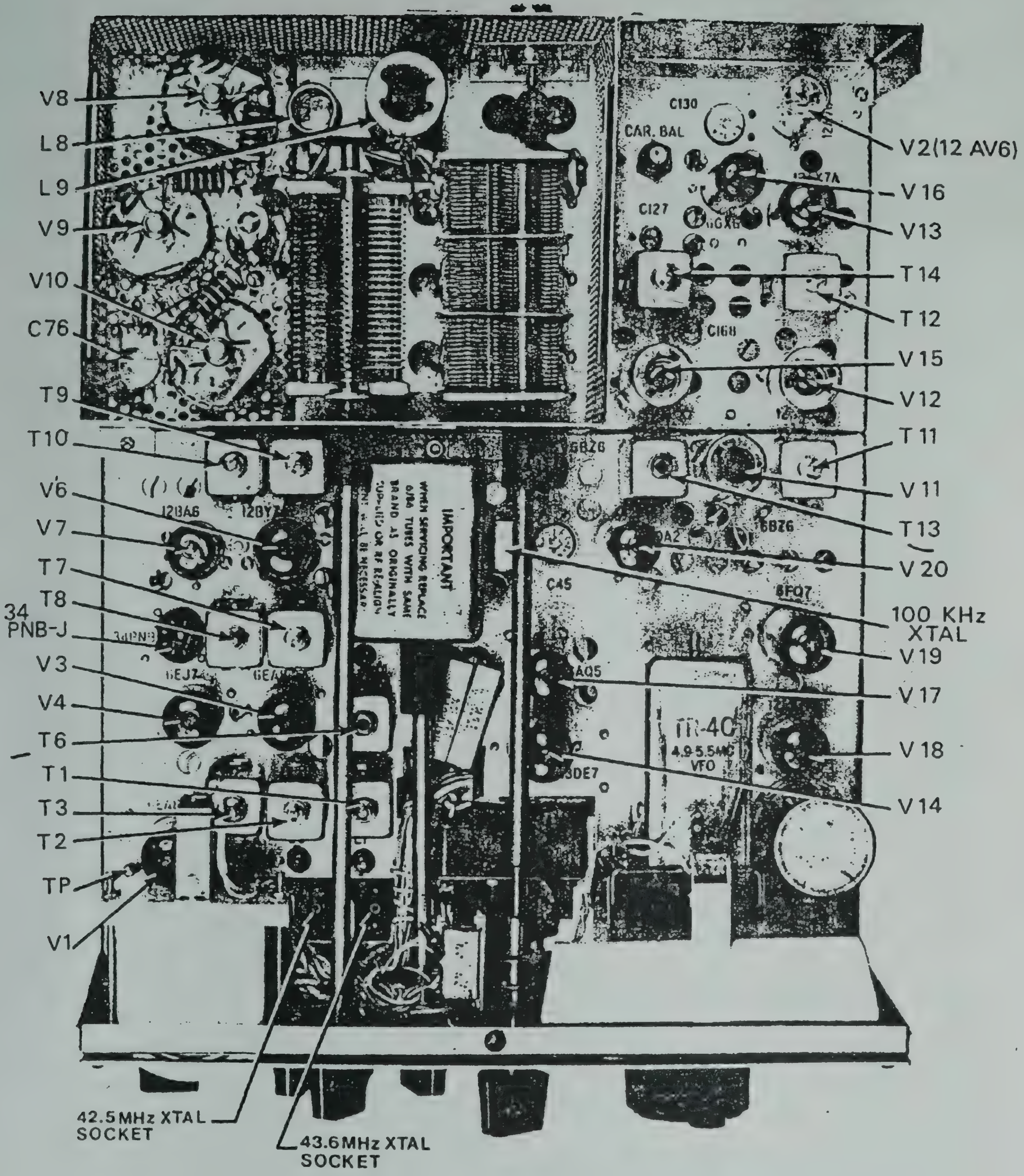

V8
L8
L9
V9
V10
C76
T9
T10
V6
V7
T7
T8
34 PNB-J
V3
V4
T6
T1
T3
T2
TP
V1
42.5MHz XTAL SOCKET
43.6MHz XTAL SOCKET
C130
CAR. BAL
C127
C168
C45
V2(12 AV6)
V16
V13
T14
T12
V15
V12
T11
V11
T13
V20
100 KHz XTAL
V19
V17
V18
V14
IMPORTANT
TR-4C
4.9-5.5MC VFO

Figure 5—1. Alignment Locations, Top View

Table 5–3. (Continued)

REF DES	Component Type	FUNCTION	
		Transmitter	Receiver
V8, V9, V10	(3) 6JB6 Matched	Power Amps.	—
V11	6BZ6	—	IF Amplifier
V12	12BA6	—	IF Amplifier
V13	12AX7	AGC	AGC
V14	13DE7	AM Screen Modulator	—
V15	12BA6	IF Amplifier	—
V16	6GX6	9 MHz Xtal Oscillator	BFO/Product Detector
V17	6AQ5A	Anti Vox	Audio Output
V18	12AX7	Mike Amplifier	—
V19	6FQ7	VoxAmp/Relay	—
V20	OA2	Voltage Regulator	Voltage Regulator
Q1	2N5950	VFO	VFO
Q2	2N3563	VFO Buffer	VFO Buffer
Q3	AT5059	Neon Driver	Neon Driver
Q4	2N3394	VFO Shut Off	VFO Shut Off
Q5	2N3877	—	Audio Pre-Amp
D1	1N541	Balanced Modulator	
D2	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D3	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D4	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D5	1N4148	Vox Detector	—
D6	1N4148	Anti Vox Detector	—
D7	1N4148	Vox Relay Speed Up	—
D8	1N714	Voltage Regulator	Voltage Regulator
D9	1N4148	Output Power Detector	—
D10	1N4148	Anti Vox Detector	—
D11	1N4148	Output Power Detector	—
D12	1N4148	Meter Control	—
D13	1N4148	Transient Suppressor	Transient Suppressor
D14	1N4148	AGC Isolation	—

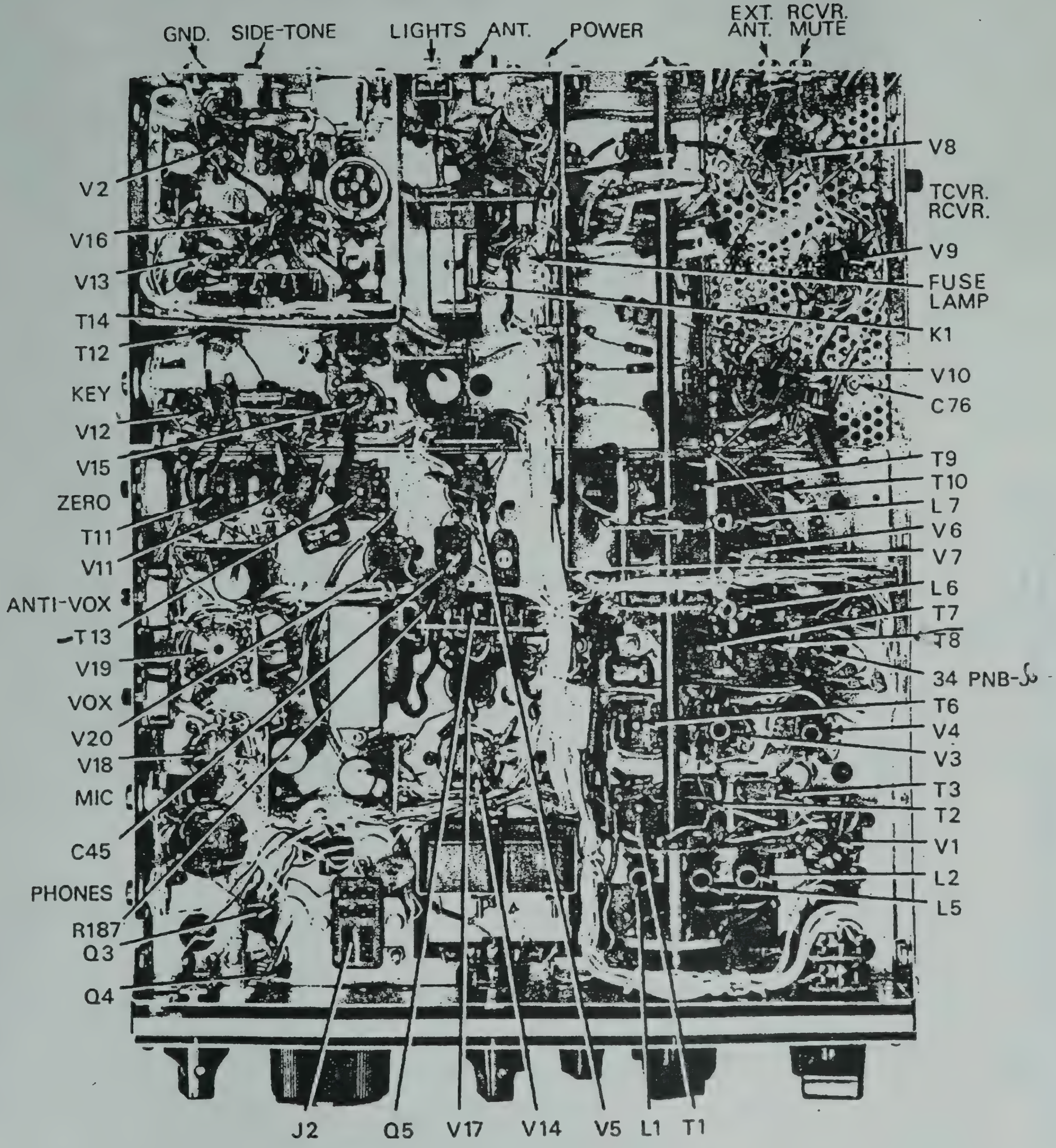

GND.
SIDE-TONE
LIGHTS
ANT.
POWER
EXT. ANT.
RCVR. MUTE
V2
V16
V13
T14
T12
KEY
V12
V15
ZERO
T11
V11
ANTI-VOX
T13
V19
VOX
V20
V18
MIC
C45
PHONES
R187
Q3
Q4
V8
TCVR. RCVR.
V9
FUSE LAMP
K1
V10
C76
T9
T10
L 7
V 6
V 7
L 6
T7
T8
34 PNB-J6
T6
V4
V3
T3
T2
V1
L2
L5
J2
Q5
V17
V14
V5
L1
T1

Figure 5–2. Alignment Locations, Bottom View

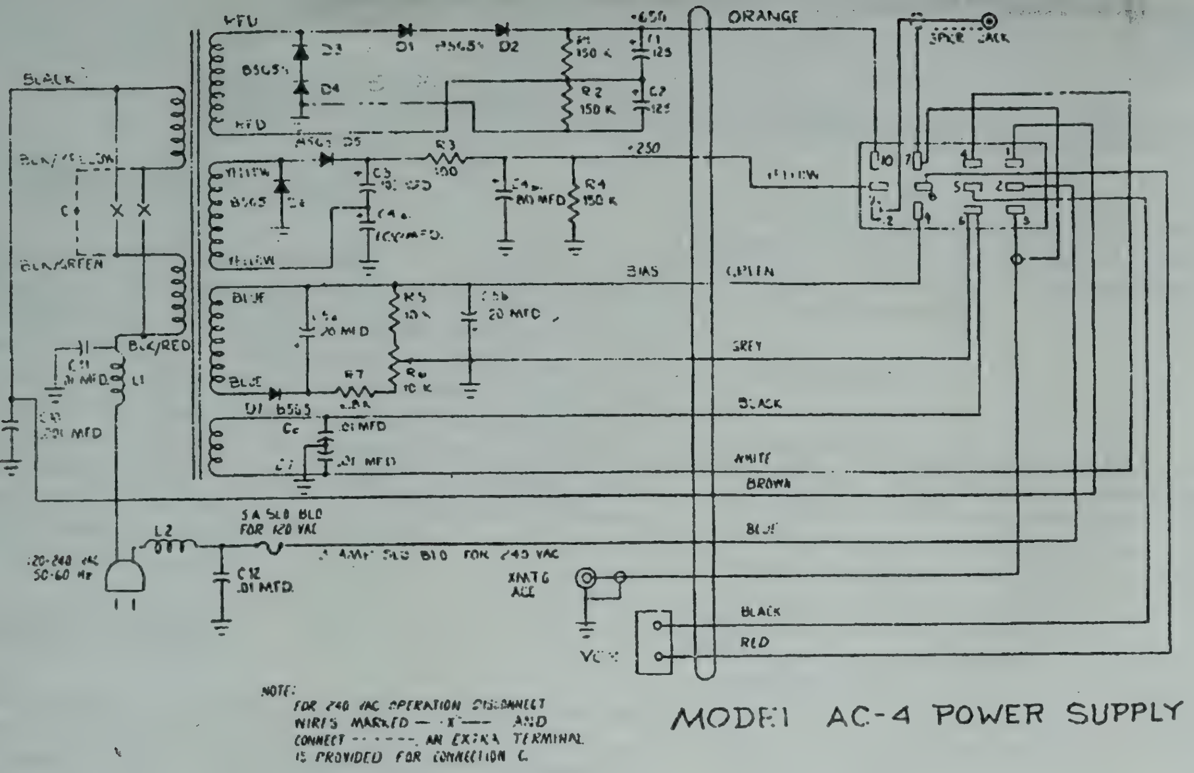

+650
ORANGE
SPKR JACK
RED
BLACK
BLK/YELLOW
BLK/GREEN
BLK/RED
D1
D2
D3
D4
D5
R1 150 K
R2 150 K
C1 125
C2 125
R3 100
+250
R4 150 K
YELLOW
BIAS
GREEN
BLUE
GREY
BLACK
WHITE
BROWN
BLUE
5 A SLO BLO FOR 120 VAC
L2
C12 .01 MFD.
120-240 VAC 50-60 Hz
XMTG ACC
BLACK
RED
VOM
NOTE:
FOR 240 VAC OPERATION DISCONNECT
WIRES MARKED — X — AND
CONNECT - - - - -. AN EXTRA TERMINAL
IS PROVIDED FOR CONNECTION C.
MODEL AC-4 POWER SUPPLY

Figure 5–3. AC–4 Power Supply Schematic

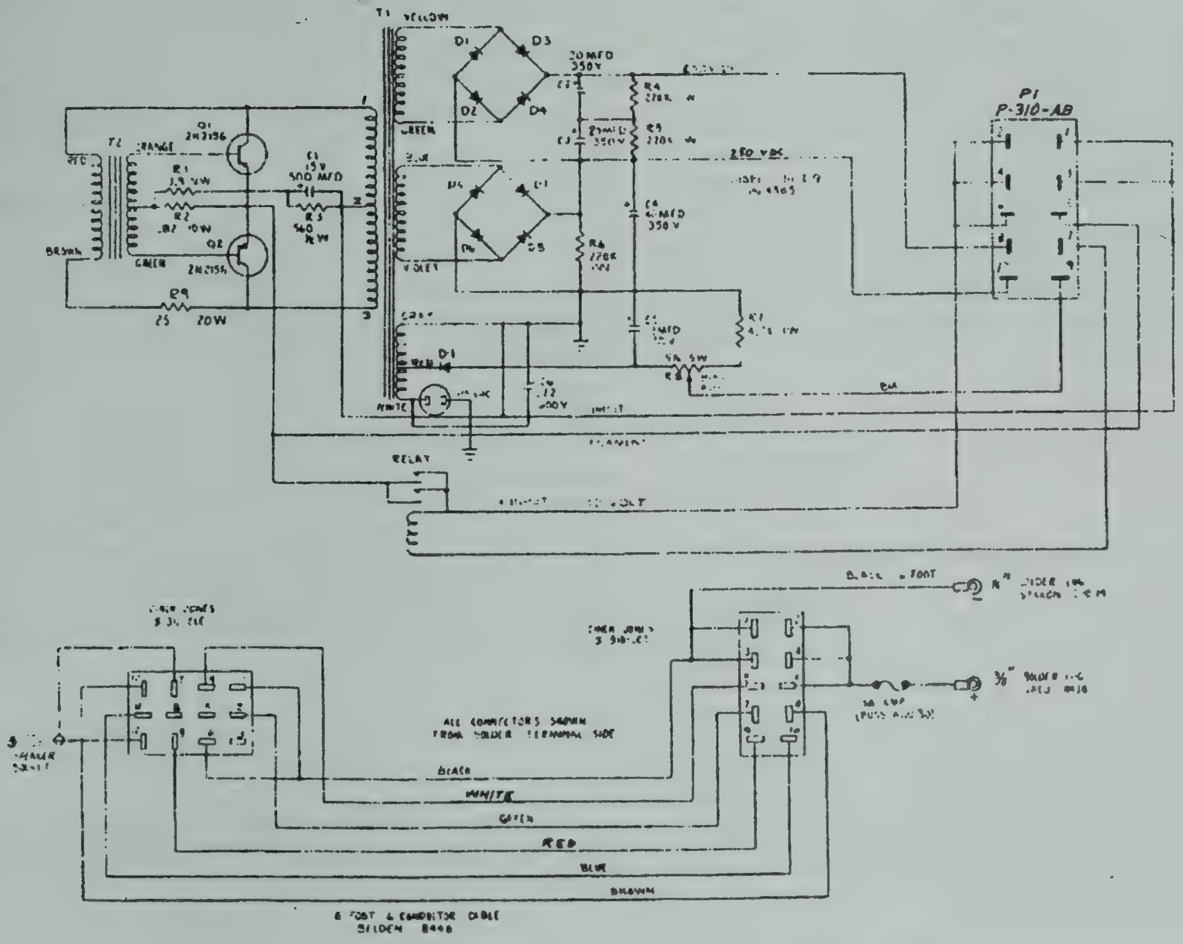

T1
YELLOW
D1
D2
D3
D4
D5
D6
20 MFD 350 V
R4 270 K
R5 270 K
GREEN
BLUE
VIOLET
280 VDC
R6 270 K
C4 40 MFD 350 V
Q1 2N3156
Q2 2N3156
T2
ORANGE
RED
BROWN
GREEN
R1
R2
R3 560
R9 25 20W
C1 15 V 500 MFD
P1
P-310-AB
RELAY
BLACK
WHITE
GREEN
RED
BLUE
BROWN
ALL CONNECTORS SHOWN FROM SOLDER TERMINAL SIDE
6 FOOT 6 CONDUCTOR CABLE BELDEN 8446
3/8" SOLDER LUG

Figure 5–4. DC–4 Power Supply Schematic

MODEL 34–PNB PLUG-IN NOISE BLANKER

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

The 34–PNB Noise Blanker is a solid-state unit designed for use with the TR–4C and TR–4 Transceivers. Unlike noise clippers or limiters commonly found in communications equipment, this is an advanced noise blanker which mutes the receiver for the duration of the noise pulse. Between noise pulses full receiver gain is restored. Receiver AGC is affected only by the desired signal and not by noise. The 34–PNB is most effective on strong, periodic noise impulses such as automobile ignition noise.

INSTALLATION.

Disconnect the power connector from the TR–4C or TR–4. Remove the top half of the transceiver cabinet. Remove the 7 pin jumper plug located in front of the power amplifier cage. With the printed circuit side of the 34–PNB facing the outside of the transceiver chassis, carefully plug in the 34–PNB. After it is correctly seated in the socket, install a number 4 self-tapping screw in each corner of the 34–PNB bracket to secure it to the transceiver chassis. Replace the cabinet top. Some alignment may be necessary at the time of installation. See ALIGNMENT below.

OPERATION.

The BLANKER switch on the transceiver is used to turn the accessory 34–PNB Noise Blanker on and off. The Noise Blanker may be left on except when there is a strong signal within 5 kHz of the received signal. A strong signal which falls within the 10 kHz wide crystal filter in the Noise Blanker, and outside the 2.1 kHz wide crystal filter in the transceiver, will operate the Noise Blanker gate circuit causing distortion products. This limitation in the Noise Blanker is caused by the necessity of having a bandwidth in the blanker wide enough to minimize stretching of noise pulses before blanking. Under normal operating conditions, this limitation is no problem.

CIRCUIT DESCRIPTION.

This noise blanker system is composed of the three major networks described below. Refer to the block diagram and schematic diagram to follow this circuit description.

TRANSMITTING PATH.

The transmitting path consists of a single RC coupled 9 MHz amplifier which passes the transmitter signal through the blanker. The signal then passes through the crystal filter passband and into the transmitter mixer.

RECEIVER PATH.

The signal first passes through a crystal filter with a bandwidth wide enough to pass most of the noise frequency components but narrow enough to keep strong adjacent signals from overloading the noise blanker amplifier. The signal simultaneously enters the noise processor and the delay circuit, a reactive network which compensates for the inherent phase-shift of the noise processing section. The 9 MHz receive amplifier provides an overall system gain for the receive path. The balanced gate is an electronic series switch that opens for noise pulses but closes to allow the signal to pass.

NOISE PROCESSOR.

The signal passes through the tuned 9 MHz amplifier and into the balanced mixer. This mixer converts the 9 MHz noise pulses to 2150 kHz and prevents the high level 6.85 MHz oscillator signal from reaching the amplifier strip. The 2150 kHz noise pulses pass through the two amplifiers, the detector and into the gate driver. The driver reverse-biases the gate at the instant a 9 MHz noise pulse enters on its way to the receiver IF. The gate then is controlled by the same pulse it is blanking, enabling it to respond automatically to pulses of varying width.

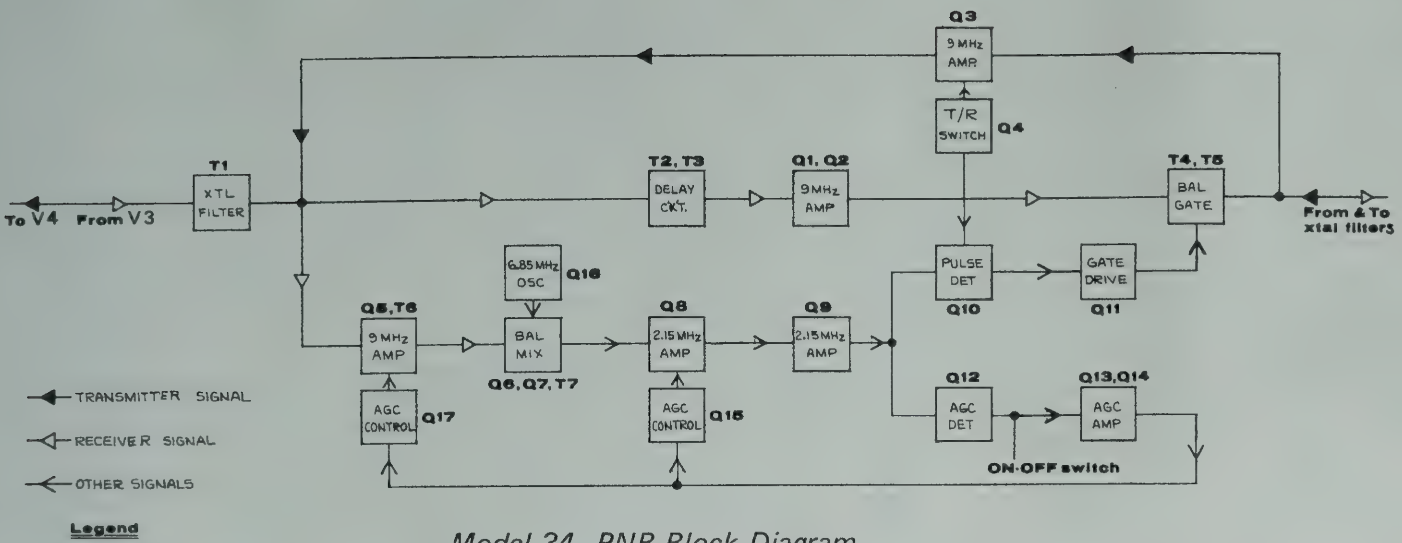
ALIGNMENT.

It is recommended that the TR–4 series transceiver be tuned to 40 meters on receive when the following procedure is performed. Refer to the Model 34–PNB Alignment Locations illustration to locate the alignment points.

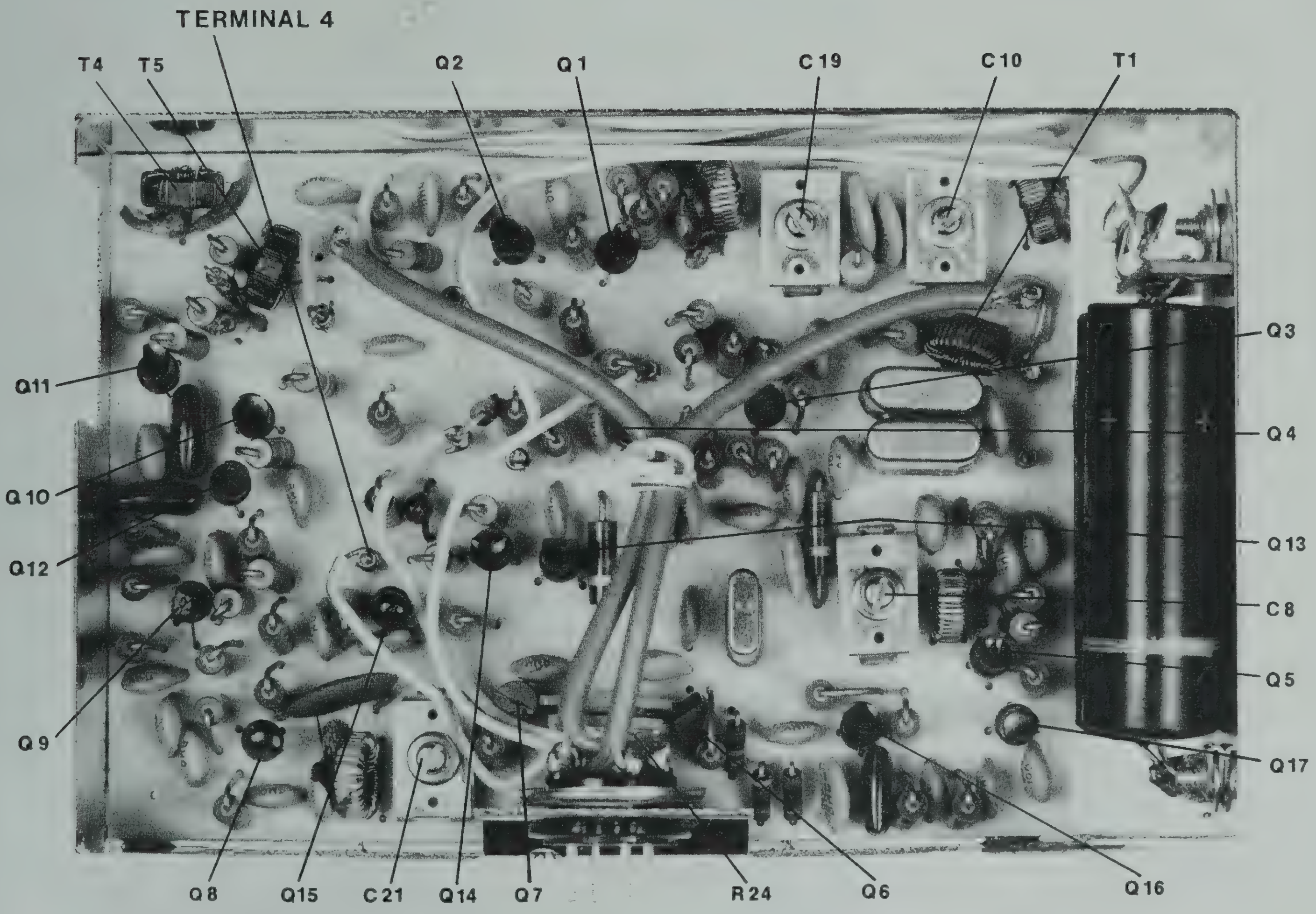
a. With the noise blanker turned on, adjust capacitor trimmers C10 and C19 for maximum S meter reading on calibrator signal.

b. With the calibrator turned off, connect a VTVM (set to measure DC voltage) between terminal 4 of the 34–PNB board and ground (terminal 4 being plus). Adjust R24 for maximum positive voltage.

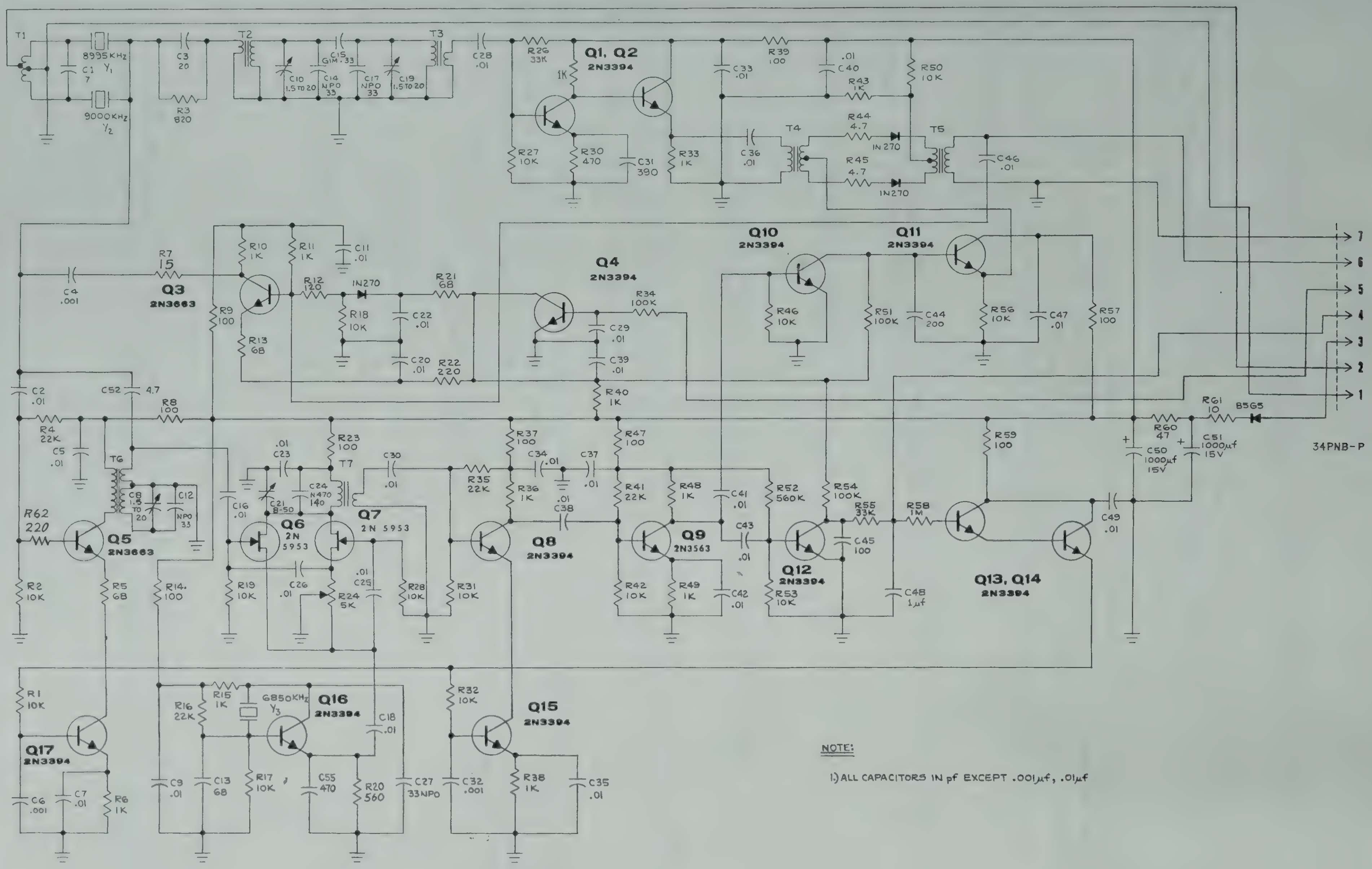
c. Turn the calibrator on and adjust the two remaining trimmers C21 and C8 for minimum positive voltage.


Q3
9 MHz AMP
T/R SWITCH
Q4
T1
XTL FILTER
To V4
From V3
T2, T3
DELAY CKT.
Q1, Q2
9 MHz AMP
T4, T5
BAL GATE
From & To xtal filters
6.85 MHz OSC
Q16
PULSE DET
Q10
GATE DRIVE
Q11
Q5, T6
9 MHz AMP
BAL MIX
Q6, Q7, T7
Q8
2.15 MHz AMP
Q9
2.15 MHz AMP
AGC CONTROL
Q17
AGC CONTROL
Q15
Q12
AGC DET
Q13, Q14
AGC AMP
ON-OFF switch
TRANSMITTER SIGNAL
RECEIVER SIGNAL
OTHER SIGNALS
Legend

Model 34–PNB Block Diagram


TERMINAL 4
T4
T5
Q2
Q1
C19
C10
T1
Q3
Q4
Q13
C8
Q5
Q17
Q11
Q10
Q12
Q9
Q8
Q15
C21
Q14
Q7
R24
Q6
Q16

Model 34–PNB Alignment Locations


T1
C1 7
8995KHz Y1
9000KHz Y2
C3 20
R3 820
T2
C10 1.5 TO 20
C14 NPO 33
C15 GIM.33
C17 NPO 33
C19 1.5 TO 20
T3
C28 .01
R26 33K
Q1, Q2 2N3394
1K
R27 10K
R30 470
C31 390
R33 1K
C33 .01
R39 100
C40 .01
R43 1K
R50 10K
C36 .01
T4
R44 4.7
R45 4.7
IN270
IN270
T5
C46 .01
C4 .001
R7 15
Q3 2N3663
R9 100
R10 1K
R11 1K
C11 .01
R12 120
R13 68
IN270
R18 10K
C22 .01
C20 .01
R21 68
R22 220
Q4 2N3394
R34 100K
C29 .01
C39 .01
R40 1K
Q10 2N3394
R46 10K
Q11 2N3394
R51 100K
C44 200
R56 10K
C47 .01
R57 100
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
34PNB-P
C2 .01
C52 4.7
R8 100
R4 22K
C5 .01
T6
C8 1.5 TO 20
C12 NPO 33
R62 220
Q5 2N3663
R2 10K
R5 68
C16 .01
C23 .01
C21 8-50
C24 N470 140
R23 100
T7
Q6 2N 5953
Q7 2N 5953
C26 .01
C25 .01
R24 5K
R19 10K
R14 100
R28 10K
C30 .01
R31 10K
R35 22K
R37 100
R36 1K
C34 .01
C38 .01
C37 .01
Q8 2N3394
R47 100
R41 22K
R48 1K
Q9 2N3563
R42 10K
R49 1K
C42 .01
C41 .01
C43 .01
R52 560K
R53 10K
Q12 2N3394
R54 100K
R55 33K
C45 100
R58 1M
C48 1µf
Q13, Q14 2N3394
R59 100
C49 .01
C50 1000µf 15V
R60 47
C51 1000µf 15V
R61 10
B5G5
R1 10K
Q17 2N3394
C6 .001
C7 .01
R6 1K
R16 22K
R15 1K
6850KHz Y3
Q16 2N3394
C9 .01
C13 68
R17 10K
C55 470
R20 560
C18 .01
C27 33NPO
R32 10K
Q15 2N3394
C32 .001
R38 1K
C35 .01

NOTE:

1.) ALL CAPACITORS IN pf EXCEPT .001µf, .01µf

Model 34—PNB Schematic Diagram

TR-3/TR-4/TR-4C/TR-4Cw TUNING ALTERATIONS

The tune up procedure for the TR series transceivers must be altered from the instruction manual in order to meet section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concerns the purity of emissions.

Tune up on 80, 40, and 15 meters must be altered by limiting the plate current to 350 milliamperes with the LOAD control. Instead of adjusting the LOAD control for maximum RF output, the LOAD control should be advanced from CCW to the point at which the resonant plate current does not exceed 350 milliamperes. On 80 meters the LOAD control should remain fully CCW.

The tune up procedure in the instruction manual may be followed for operation on 20 and 10 meters.

(CCW -- counterclockwise)

T-4/T-4X/T-4XB/T-4XC TUNING ALTERATIONS

The tune up procedure for the T-4 series transmitters must be altered from the instruction manual in order to meet section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concern the purity of emissions.

Tune up on 160, 80, 40 and 20 meters must be altered by limiting the plate current to 340 milliamperes with the LOAD control. Instead of adjusting the LOAD control for maximum RF output, the LOAD control should be advanced from CCW to the point at which the resonant plate current does not exceed 340 milliamperes.

The tune up procedure in the instruction manual may be followed for operation on 15 and 10 meters.

(CCW -- counterclockwise)

L-4B

The L-4B when tuned in accordance with the instruction manual meets the requirements of section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concern the purity of emissions.

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTION SHEET

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

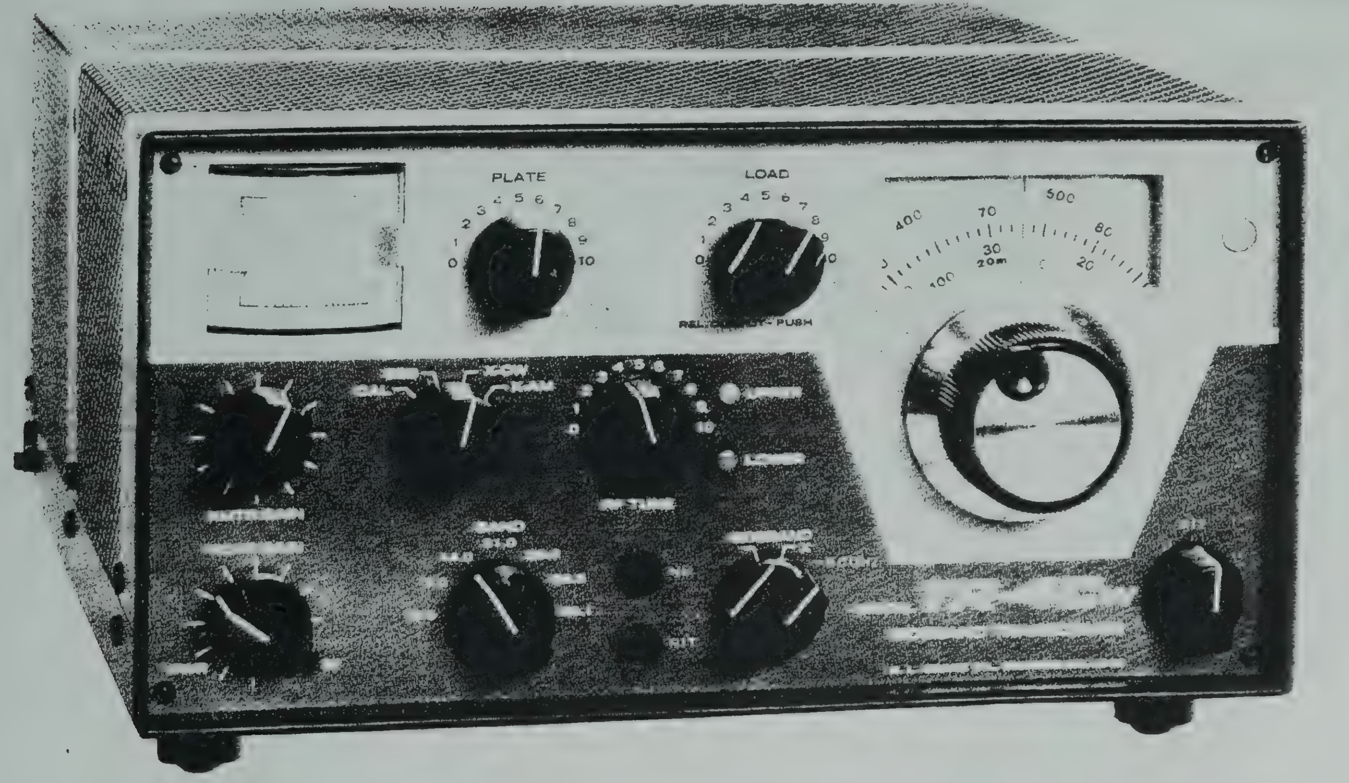
MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.

DRAKE

INSTRUCTION MANUAL



TR-4Cw

SIDEBAND TRANSCEIVER

R. L. DRAKE COMPANY, MIAMISBURG, OHIO, U.S.A.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

CHAPTER I INTRODUCTION 1–1

1–1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION 1–1

1–2. MANUAL COVERAGE 1–1

SPECIFICATIONS 1–3

CHAPTER II INSTALLATION 2–1

2–1. UNPACKING 2–1

2–2. LOCATION 2–1

2–3. MOBILE INSTALLATION 2–1

2–4. POWER REQUIREMENTS 2–1

2–5. MOUNTING 2–1

2–6. ANTENNA 2–1

2–7. SPEAKER 2–1

2–8. MICROPHONE 2–1

2–9. STATIONARY INSTALLATION 2–2

2–10. POWER REQUIREMENTS 2–2

2–11. VIEWING ANGLE 2–2

2–12. ACCESSORIES 2–2

CHAPTER III OPERATION 3–1

3–1. GENERAL 3–1

3–2. MODE SWITCH 3–1

3–3. BLANKER SWITCH 3–1

3–4. VFO DIAL 3–1

3–5. TUNING PROCEDURE 3–1

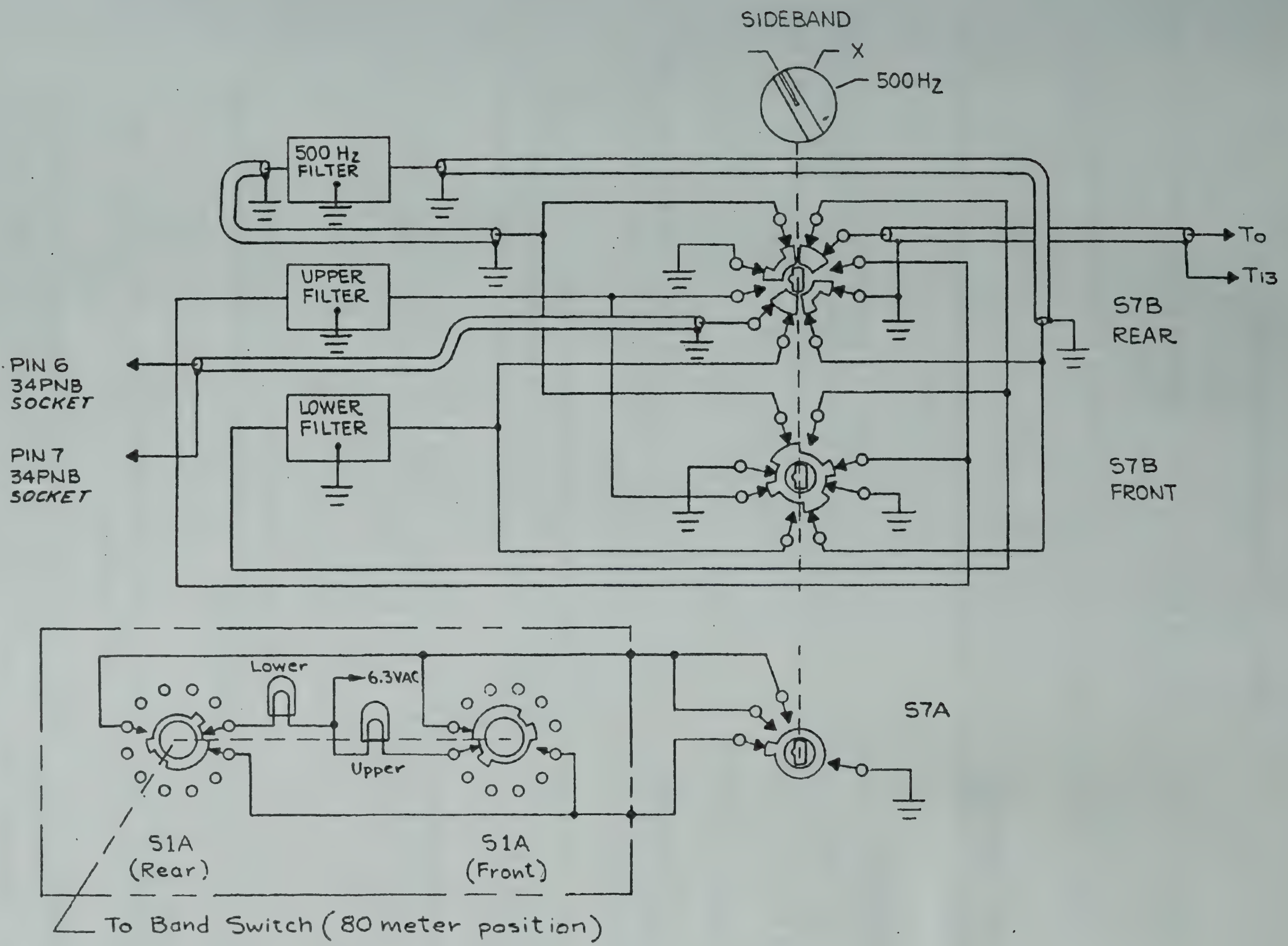
3–6. BIAS ADJUSTMENT 3–1

FRONT PANEL CONTROLS 3–3

OTHER CONTROLS 3–4

3–7. TUNE UP 3–5

3–8. SSB OPERATION 3–5


SIDEBAND
X
500 Hz
500 Hz FILTER
UPPER FILTER
LOWER FILTER
To
T13
S7B REAR
S7B FRONT
PIN 6 34PNB SOCKET
PIN 7 34PNB SOCKET
Lower
Upper
6.3VAC
S7A
S1A (Rear)
S1A (Front)
To Band Switch (80 meter position)

TR-4Cw Schematic Diagram

DRAKE

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

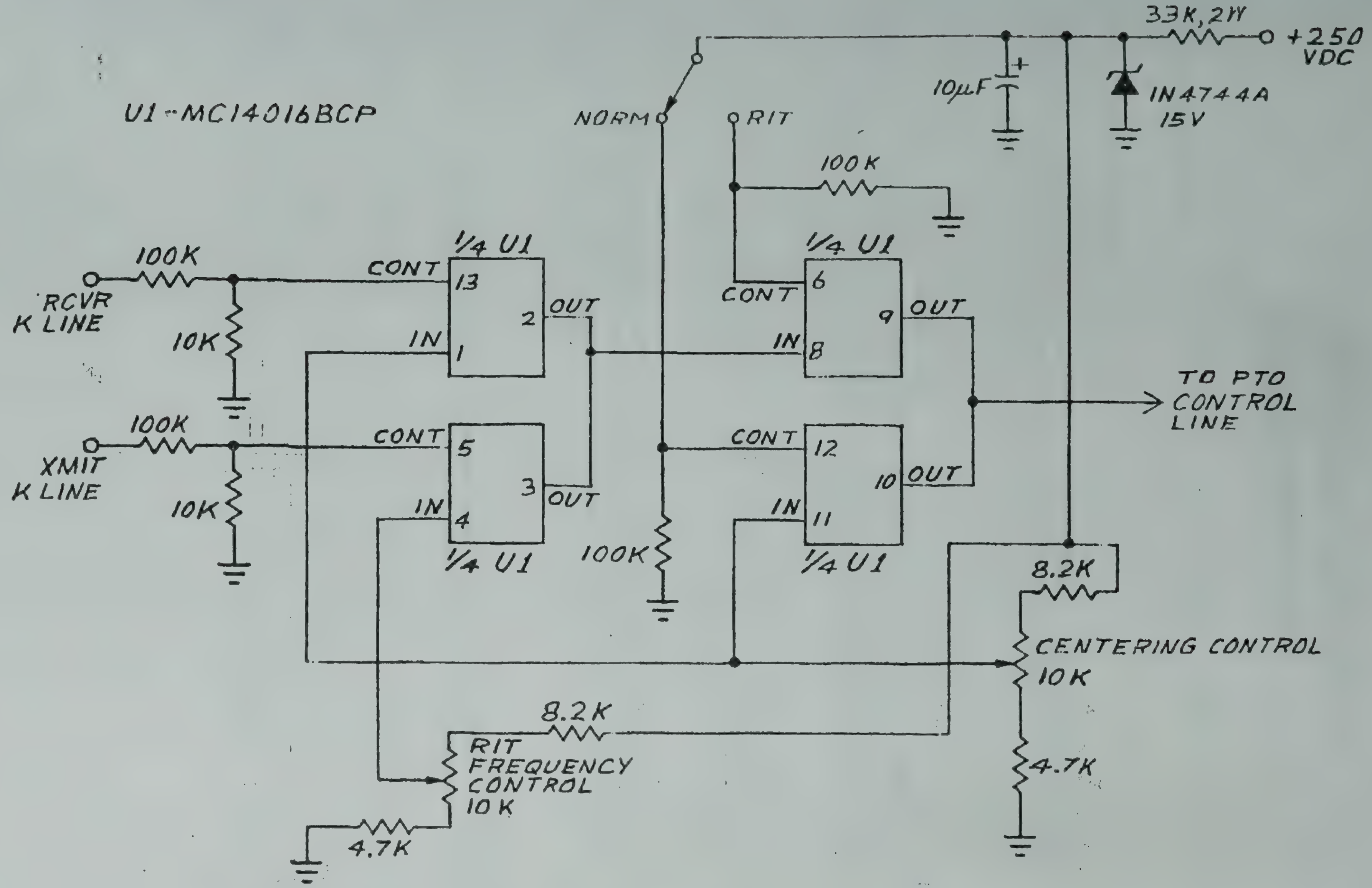
The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.


U1-MC14016BCP
RCVR K LINE
100K
10K
XMIT K LINE
100K
10K
1/4 U1
CONT
13
IN
1
2
OUT
1/4 U1
CONT
5
IN
4
3
OUT
NORM
RIT
100K
100K
1/4 U1
CONT
6
IN
8
9
OUT
1/4 U1
CONT
12
IN
11
10
OUT
10μF
+
1N4744A
15V
33K, 2W
+250 VDC
TO PTO CONTROL LINE
8.2K
CENTERING CONTROL
10K
4.7K
8.2K
RIT FREQUENCY CONTROL
10K
4.7K

RIT Schematic Diagram

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS

COVERING MODELS WITH RIT

The addition of Receiver Incremental Tuning to the TR-4Cw allows the receive frequency to be varied approximately ±3 kHz (2 kHz min., 4 kHz max.) relative to the indicated dial frequency.

OPERATION

The RIT function is activated by depressing the RIT push button switch. When disabled, the RIT frequency control has no effect, and the received frequency is as indicated on the dial. The TR-4Cw transmit frequency is always as indicated on the dial.

If equipped with the accessory 34-PNB Noise Blanker, the Noise Blanker is activated by depressing the NB push button switch. For further information regarding the operation of the Noise Blanker, refer to section 3-3.

Use of RIT can be very useful for both CW and SSB operation. When working a station who is drifting in frequency, the drift can be compensated for without "walking" across the band.

ZERO ADJUSTMENT

The RIT printed circuit board is located on the partition enclosing the PA compartment on the bottom of the transceiver.

The trim pot located on this board is used to "center" the front panel RIT frequency control. With the front panel frequency control set at 12 o'clock, tune in the calibrator signal at any convenient 100 kHz point until a beat note is heard. The trim pot should be adjusted until there is little or no change in the beat note frequency when turning the RIT control on and off via the RIT push button. This adjustment is factory set, and centering should be within 200-300 Hz.

CHAPTER I
INTRODUCTION

1-1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

The TR-4C is a 300 Watt HF single sideband transceiver which covers the 80 through 10 meter amateur bands. AM and CW modes are also included. The TR-4C requires either an R. L. Drake AC-4, 120 V AC power supply, or an R. L. Drake DC-4, 12 V DC power supply. The TR-4C features a high-stability linear permeability tuned VFO and two 8 pole crystal lattice filters for sideband selection. Available accessories include an RV-4C Remote VFO, a matching MS-4 Speaker, an FF-1 Fixed Frequency Adapter, a 34-PNB Noise Blanker, an MC-4 Mobile Console, and a TR-4C VHF Modification Kit.

1-2. MANUAL COVERAGE.

This manual provides sufficient information for operation of the TR-4C Transceiver by a licensed operator and for repair and maintenance by an experienced electronics technician. Chapter II provides installation instructions and illustrates interconnection with accessories. Chapter III describes operation procedures. Chapter IV presents theory of operation supported by a block diagram. Chapter V provides maintenance instructions and parts ordering information.

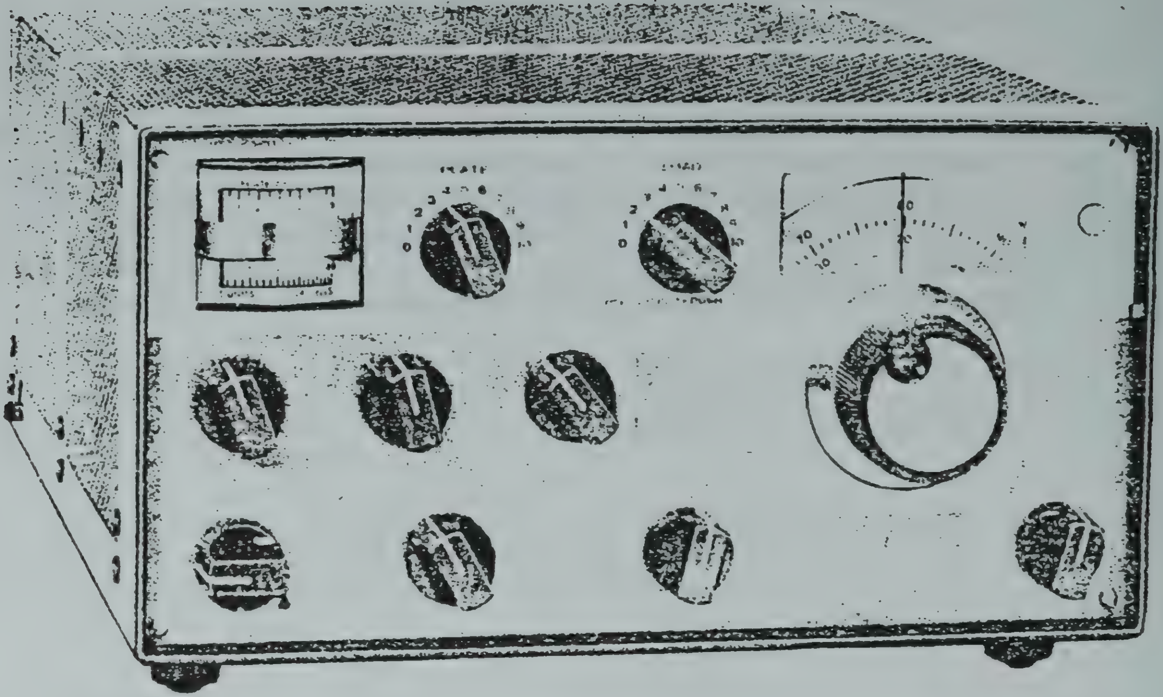


Figure 1–1. TR–4C Sideband Transceiver

SPECIFICATIONS

GENERAL:

Frequency Coverage:	3.5 to 4.1 MHz, 7.0 to 7.6 MHz, 13.9 to 14.5 MHz, 21.0 to 21.6 MHz and 28.5 to 29.1 MHz; accessory crystals are available for the 28.0 to 28.6 MHz and 29.1 to 29.7 MHz segments of the 10 meter band.
Mode of Operation:	Lower Sideband, Upper Sideband, AM and CW.
Frequency Stability:	Total drift is less than 100 Hz after warm up. Total frequency change is less than 100 Hz for a ± 10% line voltage change.
Power Supply Requirements:	+ 650 Volts DC at 300 mA average and 500 mA maximum with 10% regulation from 100 to 500 mA and a maximum ripple 1%. + 250 Volts DC at 200 mA with 10% regulation from 170 mA to 200 mA. This includes the effect of the 650 Volt supply change if both voltages are obtained from the same transformer. Maximum ripple must be less than 1/4%. –45 to –65 Volts DC adjustable filtered bias into 33 K Ohm load. 12.6 Volts AC or DC at 5.5 Amperes.
Antenna Impedance:	Nominal 52 Ohms (VSWR less than 2:1).
Dial Calibration:	Better than ± 1 kHz when calibrated at the nearest 100 kHz calibration point.
Dimensions:	5.5 in. High x 10.75 in. Wide x 14.375 in. Deep. 13.97 cm. High x 27.31 cm. Wide x 36.51 cm. Deep.
Weight:	16 lbs. (7.26 kg.)

RECEIVER:

Sensitivity:	Less than 0.5 uV for 10 dB $\frac{S+N}{N}$
AGC:	Less than 3 dB variation for 60 dB change in input signal.
Selectivity:	2.1 kHz at –6 dB and 3.4 kHz at –60 dB.
IF Frequency:	9 MHz.
Audio Output:	3 Watts with less than 10% distortion.
Output Impedance:	4 Ohms.

TRANSMITTER:

Power Input:	300 Watts PEP SSB, 260 Watts CW and 260 Watts PEP AM.
Output Impedance:	Nominal 52 Ohms.
Average Distortion Products:	The odd order products are down 30 dB below PEP.
Microphone Input:	High Impedance.

CHAPTER II

INSTALLATION

2-1. UNPACKING.

Carefully remove the unit from the shipping carton and examine it for evidence of damage. If any damage is discovered, immediately notify the transportation company that delivered the unit. Be sure to keep the shipping carton and packing material as the transportation company will want to examine them if there is a damage claim. Keep the carton and packing material even if no shipping damage occurs. Having the original carton available makes packing the unit much easier if it should ever be necessary to store it or return it to the factory for service.

NOTE

> Fill out the enclosed registration card and return it to the factory immediately to insure registration and validation of the warranty.

2-2. LOCATION.

The location of the TR–4C is not critical. However, care should be taken to insure that adequate clearance is provided to insure free circulation of air around the unit and to allow access to the side controls and connectors. Do not cover the top of the cabinet with books, papers or other equipment as overheating may result.

2-3. MOBILE INSTALLATION.

2-4. POWER REQUIREMENTS. Refer to figure 2-2 for rear chassis connector identification. The TR–4C may be installed in any vehicle with a 12 volt dc negative ground system. An R. L. Drake Model DC–4 Power Supply is required for a mobile installation. The recommended location for the DC–4 is on the passenger side of the firewall. Refer to figure 2-3 for the electrical connections required.

2-5. MOUNTING. Mount the TR–4C in a convenient location below the dash with an R. L. Drake Model MMK–3 Mobile Mounting Kit. Refer to figure 2-4 for various mounting options. Be sure to allow adequate clearance for air circulation and cable connections. Turn the TR–4C off. Connect the power cable between the TR–4C and the DC–4. Coil up any excess cable and tape it in place out of sight. Connect the black wire from the power supply to a convenient ground. Route the red wire from the power supply through the firewall and connect it to the positive battery terminal or the starter solenoid. The fuse holder should be installed as close to the solenoid as possible. Shorten both of these wires as much as possible.

2-6. ANTENNA. Install a mobile antenna as recommended by the antenna manufacturer. Connect a coaxial cable from the antenna to the SO–239 connector at the rear of the TR–4C.

2-7. SPEAKER. *DO NOT* connect the TR–4C to the speaker of the car radio. Install a separate speaker for use with the TR–4C. The R. L. Drake Model MC–4 Mobile Console is recommended for this type of installation. It includes a speaker and a wattmeter and is designed to mount over or under the TR–4C.

2-8. MICROPHONE. Use a microphone with a flat frequency response. The microphone should have a cardioid pattern to reduce pickup from the back and sides. Connect the microphone as illustrated in figure 2-1 to insure proper performance.

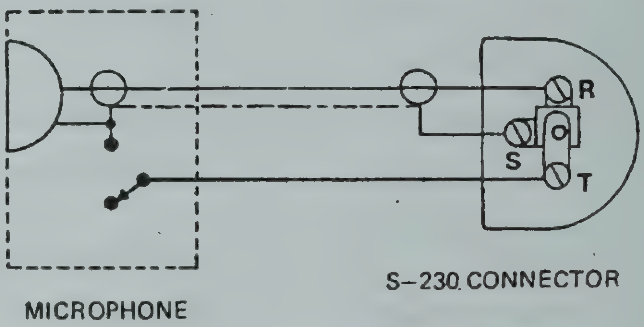


Figure 2—1. Microphone Connections

2-9. STATIONARY INSTALLATION.

2-10. POWER REQUIREMENTS. An R. L. Drake Model AC–4 Power Supply rated at 120 volts ac, 50/60 Hz, is required for stationary installations. The AC–4 is designed to fit inside the MS–4 speaker cabinet.

2-11. VIEWING ANGLE. Refer to figure 2-5 for illustrations of viewing angle options. See Chapter V for bottom cover removal.

2-12. ACCESSORIES. Refer to figures 2-6 through 2-9 for the electrical connections required to operate the TR–4C with the various recommended accessories.

NOTE

If the old RV–3 is to be used it must be modified as follows: Install a 22 K, 2 Watt resistor from pin 1 of the tube (0A2) to the terminal of the FUNCTION switch to which the orange wire is attached.

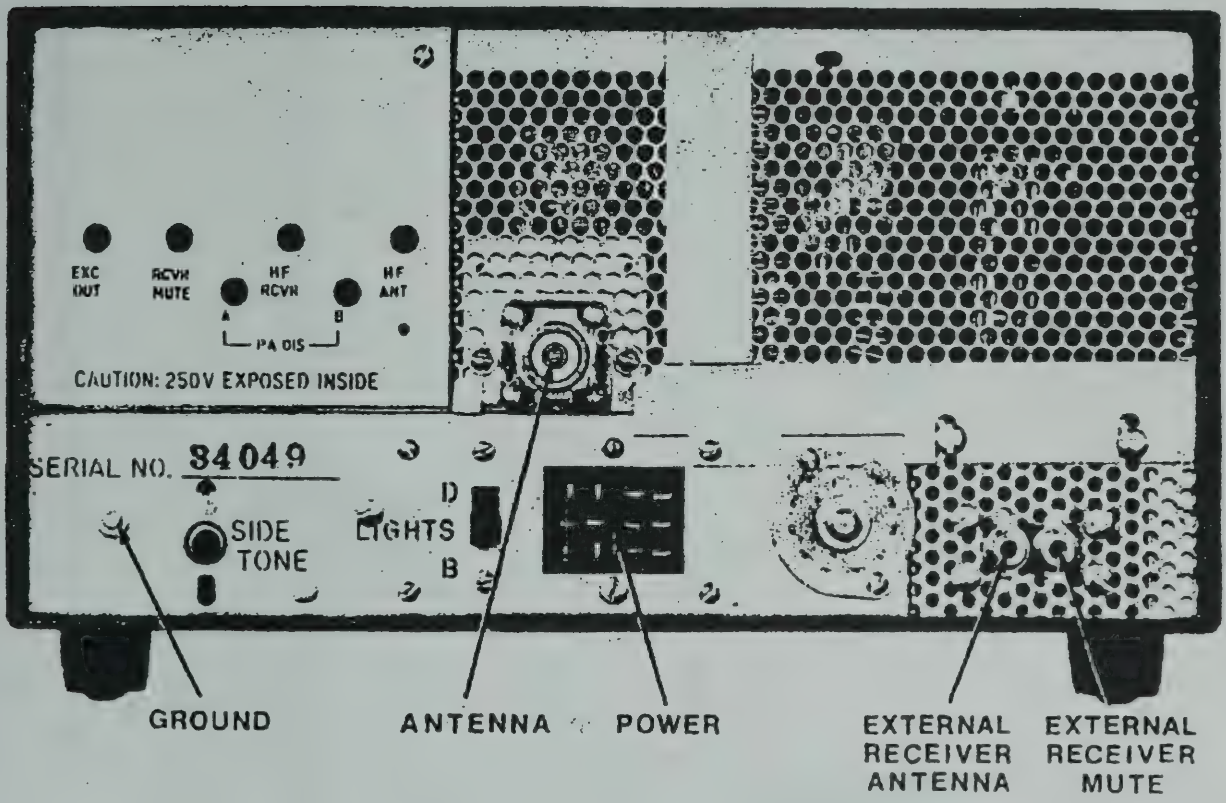

EXC OUT
RCVR MUTE
HF RCVR
HF ANT
A
B
PA DIS
CAUTION: 250V EXPOSED INSIDE
SERIAL NO. 34049
SIDE TONE
D
LIGHTS
B
GROUND
ANTENNA
POWER
EXTERNAL RECEIVER ANTENNA
EXTERNAL RECEIVER MUTE

Figure 2–2. Rear Chassis Connectors

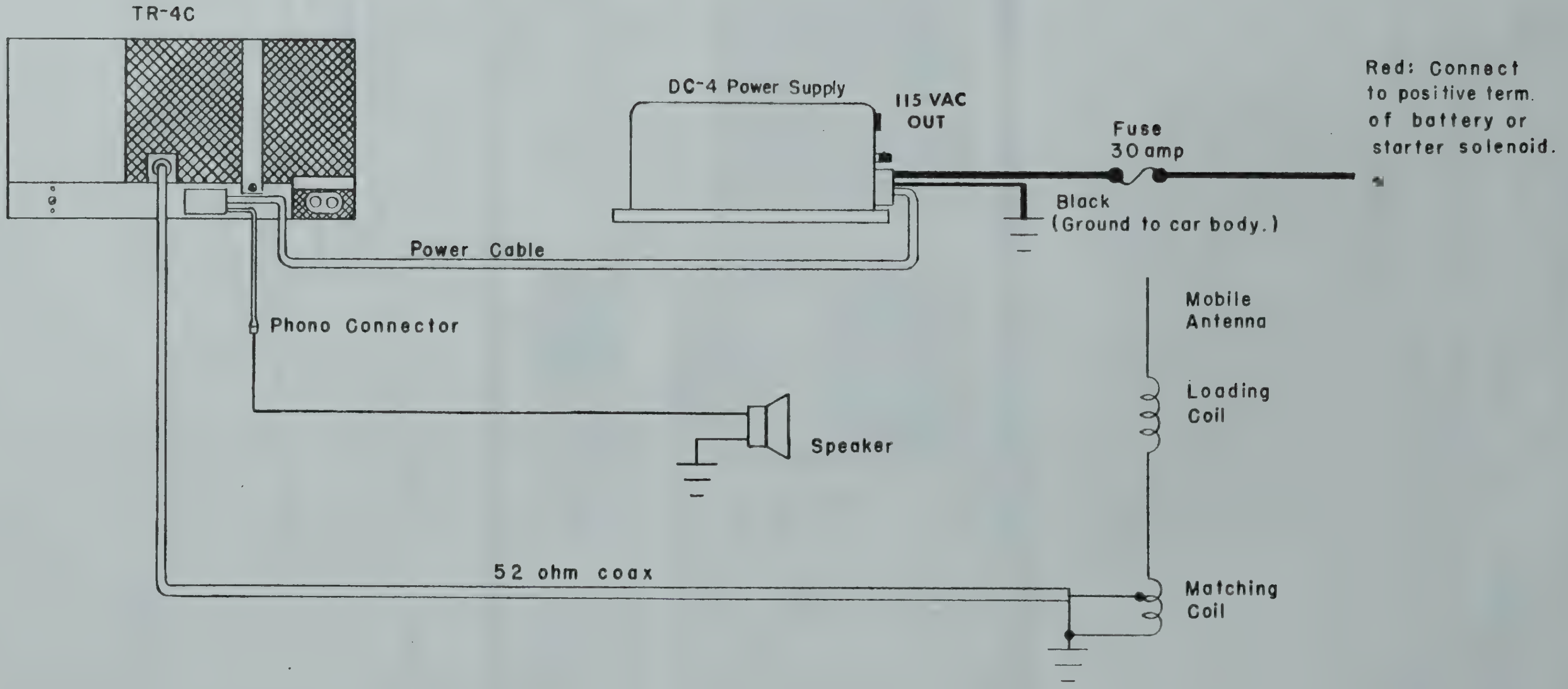
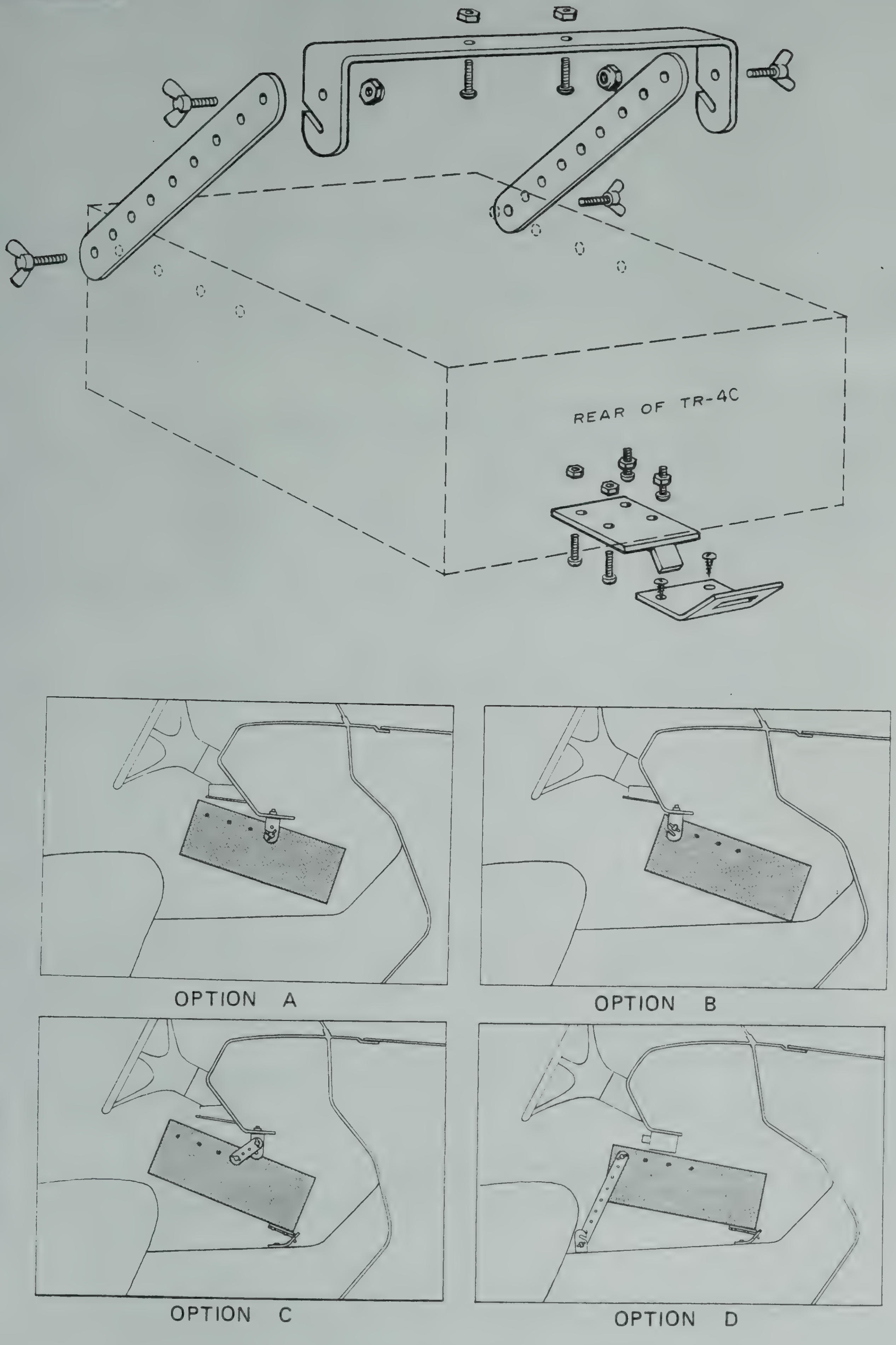

TR-4C
DC-4 Power Supply
115 VAC
OUT
Fuse
30 amp
Red: Connect
to positive term.
of battery or
starter solenoid.
Black
(Ground to car body.)
Power Cable
Phono Connector
Mobile
Antenna
Loading
Coil
Speaker
52 ohm coax
Matching
Coil

Figure 2–3. Electrical Connections Required for Mobile Installation


REAR OF TR-4C

OPTION A

OPTION B

OPTION C

OPTION D

Figure 2–4. Mobile Installation Mounting Options

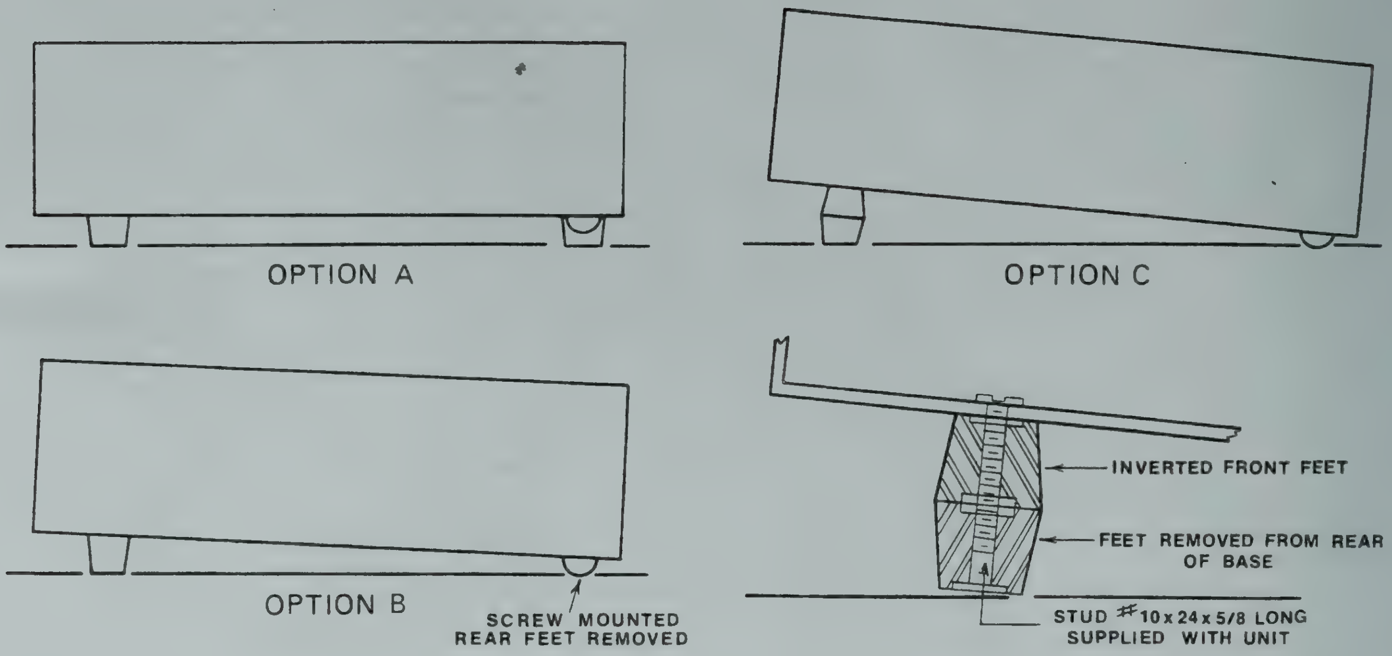

OPTION A
OPTION C
OPTION B
SCREW MOUNTED REAR FEET REMOVED
INVERTED FRONT FEET
FEET REMOVED FROM REAR OF BASE
STUD #10 x 24 x 5/8 LONG SUPPLIED WITH UNIT

Figure 2–5. Viewing Angle Options in a Stationary Installation

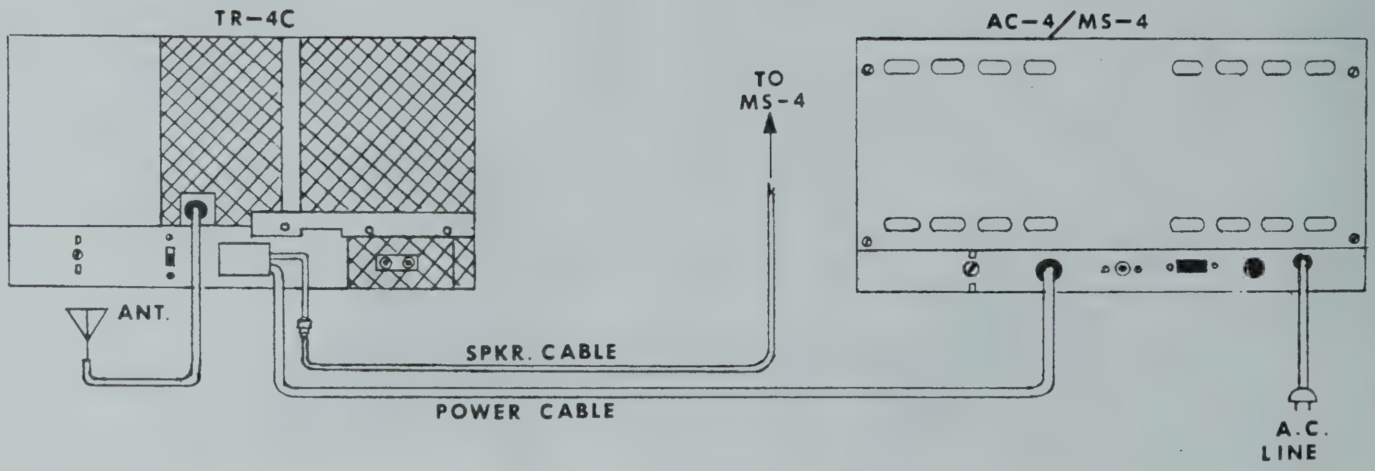

TR–4C
AC–4/MS–4
TO MS-4
ANT.
SPKR. CABLE
POWER CABLE
A.C. LINE

Figure 2–6. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply and MS–4 Speaker

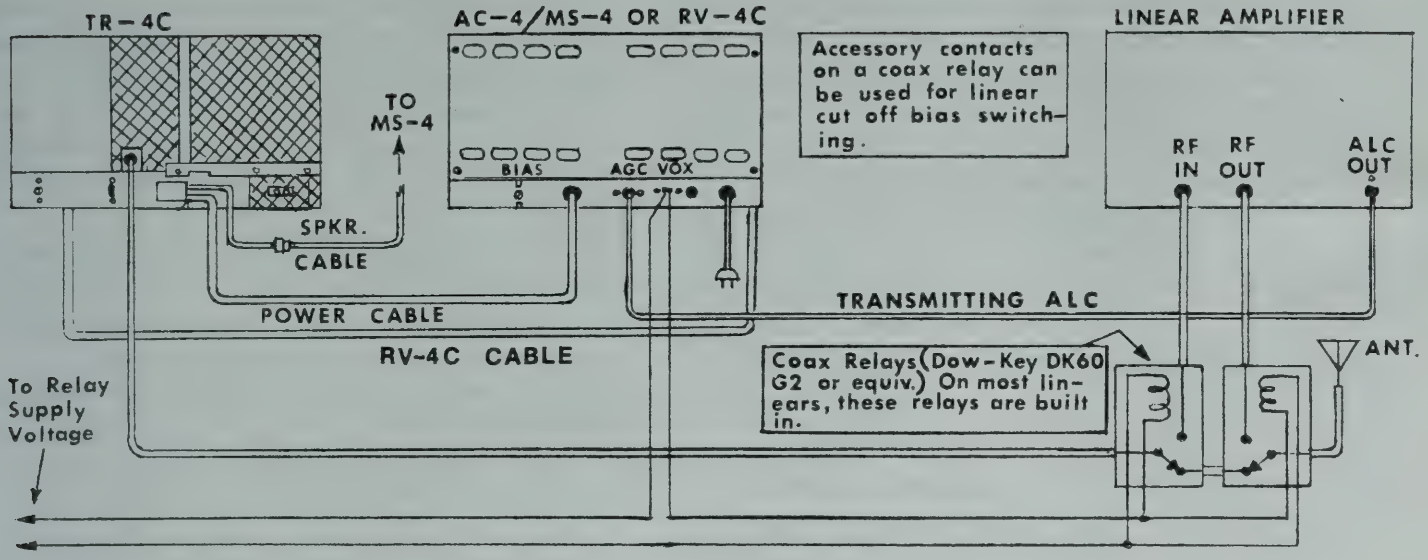

TR–4C
AC–4/MS–4 OR RV–4C
TO MS–4
BIAS
AGC
VOX
SPKR. CABLE
POWER CABLE
RV-4C CABLE
Accessory contacts on a coax relay can be used for linear cut off bias switching.
LINEAR AMPLIFIER
RF IN
RF OUT
ALC OUT
TRANSMITTING ALC
Coax Relays (Dow-Key DK60 G2 or equiv.) On most linears, these relays are built in.
ANT.
To Relay Supply Voltage

Figure 2–7. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply, RV–4C Remote VFO and a Linear Amplifier

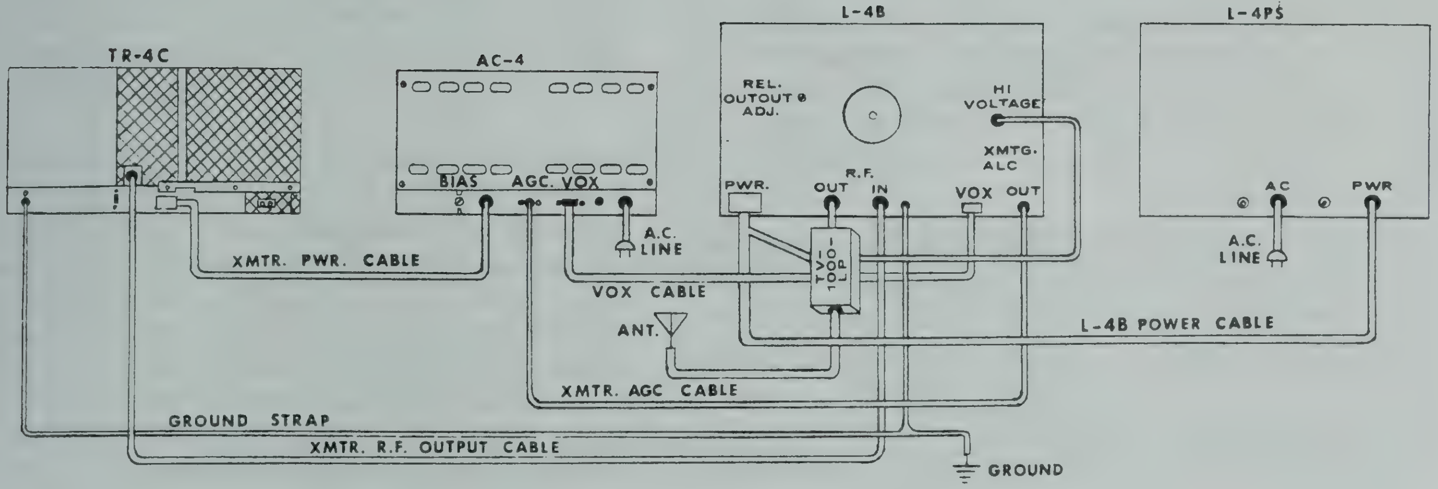

TR-4C
AC-4
BIAS
AGC.
VOX
A.C. LINE
XMTR. PWR. CABLE
VOX CABLE
L-4B
REL. OUTOUT ADJ.
HI VOLTAGE
XMTG. ALC
PWR.
R.F.
OUT
IN
VOX
OUT
L-4PS
AC
PWR
A.C. LINE
L-4B POWER CABLE
ANT.
XMTR. AGC CABLE
GROUND STRAP
XMTR. R.F. OUTPUT CABLE
GROUND

Figure 2–8. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply and the L–4B Linear Amplifier

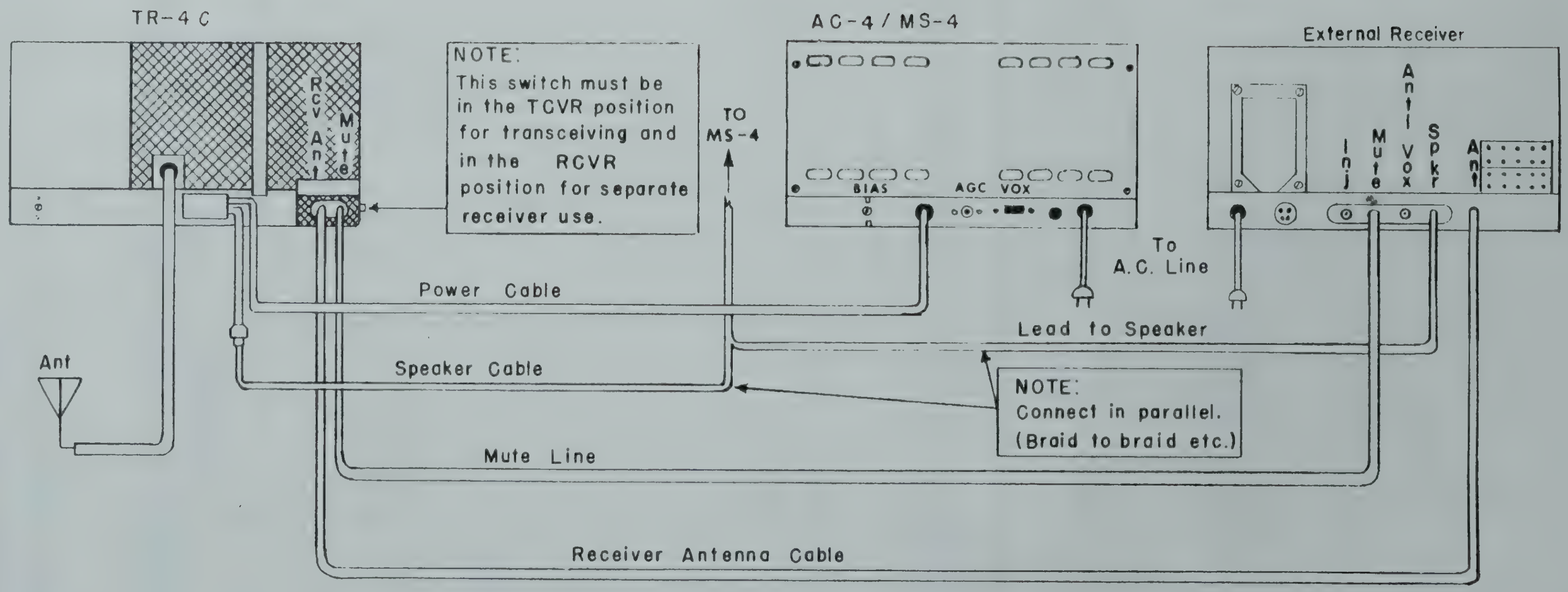

TR-4 C
Rcv Ant
Mute
Ant
NOTE:
This switch must be in the TCVR position for transceiving and in the RCVR position for separate receiver use.
TO MS-4
AC-4 / MS-4
BIAS
AGC
VOX
To A.C. Line
External Receiver
Inj
Mute
Anti Vox
Spkr
Ant
Power Cable
Lead to Speaker
Speaker Cable
NOTE:
Connect in parallel.
(Braid to braid etc.)
Mute Line
Receiver Antenna Cable

Figure 2–9. Connecting an External Receiver

CHAPTER III
OPERATION

3-1. GENERAL.

Figure 3-1 illustrates and describes all front panel controls and indicators on the TR–4C Transceiver. Controls and connectors located on the rear and sides of the unit are described under "other controls" below. Rear chassis connectors are identified in figure 2-2.

3-2. MODE SWITCH. In the SSB position, the receiver portion functions until the transmitter is energized either by talking into the microphone or actuating the microphone push-to-talk switch. The transmitter then emits an upper or lower sideband signal depending on the setting of the SIDEBAND switch. In the X-CW position, the receiver portion functions until the key is closed. The TR–4C then goes into the transmit mode, a CW sidetone is energized and the carrier is shifted approximately 1 kHz from the received frequency. The unit will remain in transmit during CW keying and will return to receive when keying is stopped briefly. NOTE: The SIDEBAND switch must be in the X position when the Mode switch is on X-CW or X-AM. It should also be noted that if the relays fail to close occasionally when the key is used, advance the VOX gain (screwdriver adjust on the right side of the chassis) until positive relay action is obtained. In the X-AM position, a controlled carrier screen modulator is incorporated for AM transmission and a diode detector is used for AM reception. Transmit and receive switching is accomplished by VOX or push-to-talk as on SSB.

3-3. BLANKER SWITCH. The noise blanker may be left on except when there is a strong signal within 5 kHz of the received signal. A strong signal which falls within the 10 kHz wide crystal filter in the noise blanker, and outside the 2.1 kHz crystal filter in the TR–4C, will operate the noise blanker gate circuit causing distortion products. This limitation in the noise blanker is caused by the necessity of having a bandwidth in the blanker wide enough to minimize stretching of noise pulses before blanking. Usually this limitation is no problem under normal operating conditions.

3-4. VFO DIAL. This dial consists of 2 transparent discs which display concentric scales and which rotate at different speeds. There are 2 scales on each disc. The upper scale on each disc is used for all bands except 20 meters where the lower scale is used. Zero to 100 kHz is indicated on one disc and hundreds of kHz is indicated on the other. The frequency of the operating signal is the sum of the frequencies indicated by the BAND switch and the VFO dial, for example:

BAND switch frequency	7.000 MHz
100 kHz dial	.200
1 kHz dial	.072
Operating frequency	7.272 MHz

This dial may be calibrated over a short range by the following procedure:

a. Set the Mode switch to CAL.
b. Tune the TR–4C to zero beat with the nearest 100 kHz calibrator signal.
c. Hold the tuning knob stationary and rotate the knob skirt until the dial displays the correct frequency.

3-5. TUNING PROCEDURE.

CAUTION

Under no circumstances should operation of the TR–4C be attempted until it is connected to a proper antenna or a dummy load. Always allow a two minute warm up period after the TR–4C is turned on before transmitting.

3-6. BIAS ADJUSTMENT. Before any type of operation is attempted, it will be necessary to set the PA bias to the correct value. Proceed as follows:

a. Turn on the TR–4C with the RCVR GAIN control.
b. Rotate the XMTR GAIN control fully counterclockwise.

(continued on page 3–5)

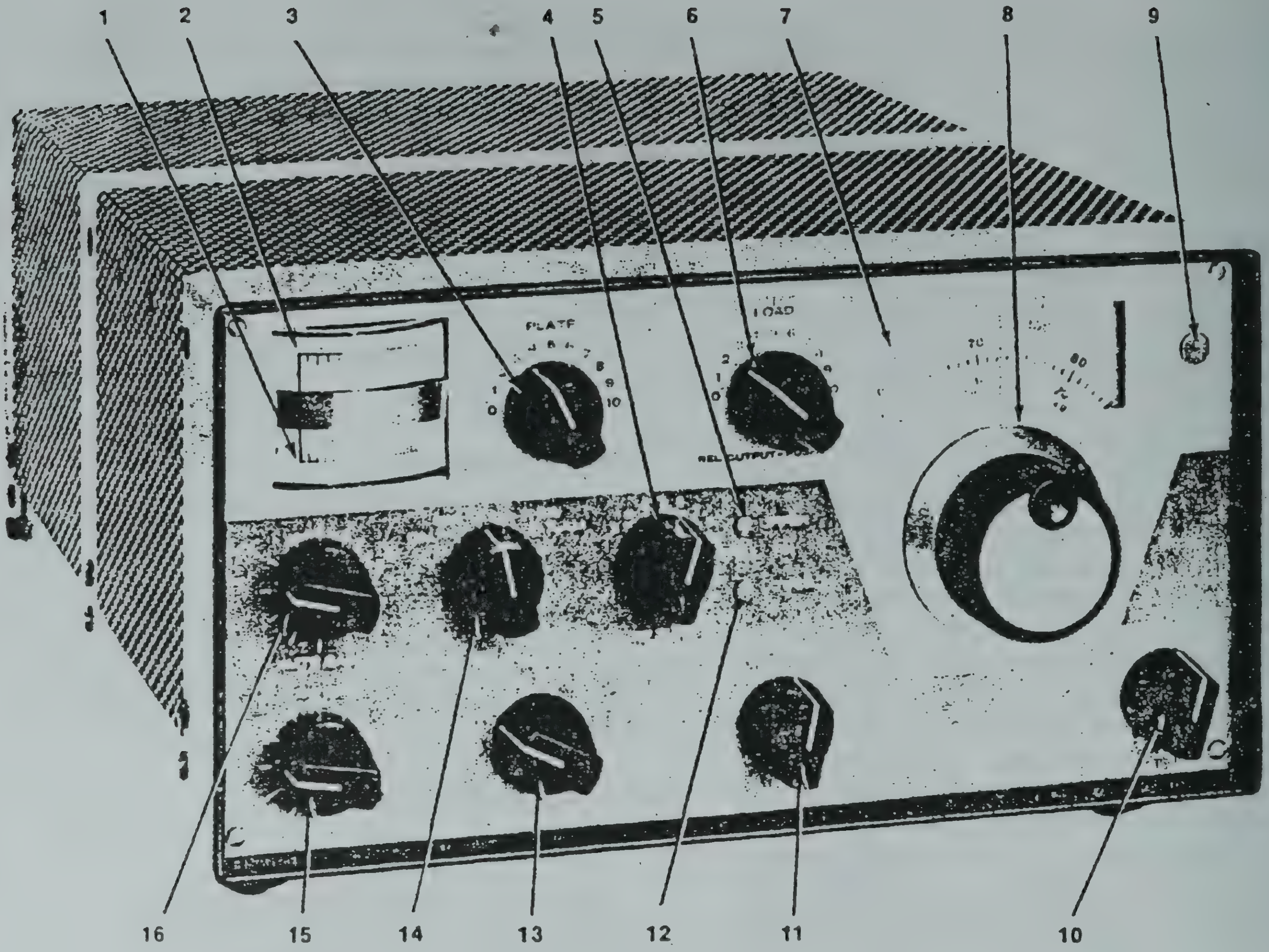

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
PLATE
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10
LOAD
0 1 2
10
16
15
14
13
12
11
10

Figure 3–1. Front Panel Controls

FRONT PANEL CONTROLS

1. S meter: Indicates relative level of received signals. Indicates transmitter AGC when transmitting.
2. Plate meter: Indicates plate current in the final amplifier. Indicates relative RF power when LOAD control (6) is pushed in.
3. PLATE control: Tunes power amplifier pi-network circuit for resonance.
4. RF TUNE control: Peak tunes the receiver RF amplifier, the transmitter driver grid and plate tuned circuits.
5. UPPER sideband indicator lamp: Glows when upper sideband is selected.
6. LOAD control: Matches the TR–4C to the impedance of the antenna. Push in to display relative RF power on plate meter (2).
7. VFO dial: Displays portion of operating frequency from zero to 600 kHz. Reading must be added to BAND switch frequency setting for complete operating frequency.
8. VFO control: Adjusts frequency setting of dial (7).
9. VFO indicator lamp: Glows only when TR–4C VFO is operating.
10. BLANKER switch: Provides on/off control for R. L. Drake's Model 34–PNB Noise Blanker (an accessory).
11. SIDEBAND switch: Selects upper or lower sideband and lights appropriate indicator lamp (5 or 12).
12. LOWER sideband indicator lamp: Glows when lower sideband is selected.
13. BAND switch: Selects the desired amateur band.
14. Mode switch: Selects the desired mode of operation. In CAL position, it switches on the 100 kHz crystal calibrator (operable in transmit or receiver mode).
15. RCVR GAIN control: Dual control. Knob controls the receiver audio level, and provides a power on/off control at the extreme counterclockwise position. Lever controls the maximum RF gain of the receiver.
16. XMTR GAIN control: Adjusts the microphone gain on AM and SSB. In CW mode it adjusts the RF drive.

OTHER CONTROLS

Right Side (not illustrated).

PHONE jack: Provides a connection for headphones or external speaker.

MIC jack: Provides a connection for microphone. Mates with connector S-230 furnished with the TR—4C.

VOX control: Adjusts the gain of the VOX amplifier and the antenna relay release time on CW.

ANTIVOX control: Adjusts the gain of the ANTIVOX amplifier.

ZERO control: Adjusts the no-signal display of the S meter to S1.

KEY jack: Provides a connection for CW key. With key connected, transmitter is disabled for all modes of operation and receiver is disabled for AM unless the key is closed.

Left Side (not illustrated).

RCVR/TCVR switch: Selects either the TR—4C Receiver or external receiver.

Rear Chassis (Refer to figure 2-2).

Ground terminal: Provides a connection for earth ground.

SIDE TONE control: Adjusts the level of the CW sidetone with respect to the received signal. For no sidetone, rotate fully counterclockwise.

LIGHTS switch: Changes intensity of dial lamps to dim (D) or bright (B).

Antenna connector: Provides a connection for the station antenna (SO-239).

Power connector: Provides a connection for either AC—4 or DC—4 Power Supply.

External Receiver Antenna jack: Provides a connection for an external receiver.

External Receiver Mute jack: Provides a connection for muting an external receiver. It may be used with any receiver which requires a DC path to ground for receiving and an open circuit for muting. All R. L. Drake receivers have this feature.

NOTE

Rear chassis markings *above* the CAUTION notice identify external cable connectors when TR--4C VHF Modification Kit is used.

c. Turn the SIDEBAND switch to its counterclockwise position.
d. Turn the Mode switch to X-CW.
e. Adjust the Power Supply (AC–4 or DC–4) bias control for a reading of 0.1 Amperes on the plate current meter.

3-7. TUNE UP. Do not allow plate current to exceed 0.1 Amperes for more than 6 seconds with the PLATE control not tuned for minimum plate current or maximum RF output.

CAUTION

Failure to observe the warning above will result in rapid final amplifier tube deterioration due to excessive plate dissipation.

The final amplifier pi-network will match a nominal 50 ohm load. The VSWR may be as high as 2:1 on all bands except 80 meters where a lower VSWR may be required. On 80 meters an external antenna matching network may be required.

Preset the controls as follows:

a. Select the desired band with the BAND switch.
b. Select the desired operating frequency with the VFO tuning knob.
c. Rotate the XMTR GAIN control full counterclockwise.
d. Rotate the LOAD control full counterclockwise.
e. Place the SIDEBAND control in the X position.
f. Place the Mode switch in the SSB position.
g. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum noise or signal as indicated by the S meter.

Rotate the Mode switch to the X-CW position and advance the XMTR GAIN control until the plate current meter moves up scale slightly. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum plate current and quickly tune the PLATE control for a dip in plate current. After the dip is found, rotate the XMTR GAIN control clockwise until plate current no longer increases.

Depress the LOAD control and alternately adjust the PLATE and LOAD controls in small increments for maximum RF output. Release the LOAD control and adjust the PLATE control for minimum plate current. At this point the plate meter should indicate a plate current between 0.380 and 0.500 Amperes. The reading will depend on the line voltage, antenna match, tube condition, etc. Increasing the setting of the LOAD control beyond the point at which maximum RF output occurs will result in excessive plate dissipation. It should not be necessary to advance the LOAD control beyond 4.5 to obtain maximum RF output. Further advancement indicates that the VSWR of the antenna system is too high and leaving the control set beyond this point is likely to result in excessive harmonic radiation. The above procedure should be completed as quickly as possible and the Mode switch should be returned to the SSB position.

When the Mode switch is in the X-CW position, the screen voltage on the final amplifier tubes is reduced to prevent overheating. When the switch is in the SSB position, this voltage is increased so that an input power of 300 watts can be obtained.

3-8. SSB OPERATION.

In the following discussion, it is assumed that the TR–4C has already been tuned up on the desired band as described in paragraph 3-7. Preset the controls as follows:

SIDEBAND –On desired sideband as shown by indicator lights.
Mode –On SSB.
XMTR GAIN –Fully counterclockwise.
RF gain (lever) –Fully clockwise.
RCVR GAIN (knob) –Fully counterclockwise (do not turn off power).
VOX gain –Fully clockwise.
ANTIVOX –Fully counterclockwise.

While talking into the microphone in a normal voice, increase the XMTR GAIN control until the S meter starts kicking up scale above its resting value. With no modulation, the S meter will rest up scale on transmit. This indicates that the transmitter AGC is starting to operate and the transmitter has maximum output. Continue talking and reduce the VOX gain until a point is reached where further reduction results in a too frequent relay drop out. Increase the AF GAIN until received signals are of the desired level. This may cause the transceiver to cycle back and forth between transmit and receive. Adjust the ANTIVOX control until the cycling stops. If the push-to-talk switch on the microphone is properly connected as described under Installa-

tion, it may be depressed at any time, thus overriding the VOX system. If VOX operation is not desired, turn the VOX gain control fully counterclockwise.

On SSB, the TR–4C transmits on exactly the same frequency on which it receives. Therefore, be sure that you have the signals tuned in so that the voices sound normal before you answer another station's CQ, or break another QSO. Otherwise, you will not be transmitting exactly on frequency. If a key is used, it must either be closed or unplugged from the KEY jack for SSB and AM operation.

3-9. CW OPERATION.

To operate CW, connect a key to the KEY jack. If an electronic keyer is used, connect it for grid block keying. Leave the key in the open condition. The TR–4C uses shifted carrier CW. With this system, it is possible to transmit approximately on the received station's frequency without being zero beat while receiving. The transmitter BFO is shifted from the received signal frequency by approximately 1 kHz. The VFO dial reads the correct frequency of a received signal when the signal is tuned for zero beat.

To receive CW signals, place the Mode switch in the X-CW position and the SIDEBAND switch in the X position. Tune in a CW signal for an audio pitch of about 1 kHz and adjust the audio gain control knob for a normal listening level.

To transmit, depress the key, and adjust the XMTR GAIN control until it is just below the point at which plate current no longer increases. Do not advance it beyond this point. Advance the SIDETONE control on the rear of the chassis until the sidetone reaches the desired volume. Adjusting the RCVR GAIN knob controls both the received signal and sidetone level.

The TR–4C uses automatic transmit/receive switching. This means that it will automatically transmit when the key is depressed and will remain in the transmit condition during keying. It will return to the receive condition when the key is released for a brief period. If this period is too long, decrease the VOX gain. Manual transmit/receive switching can be accomplished by connecting an external switch to the push-to-talk circuit of the MIC jack.

3-10. AM OPERATION.

For AM operation, the Mode switch should be in the X-AM position and the SIDEBAND switch should be in the X position. If a key is used, it should be left closed or unplugged. Tune in AM signals for most pleasing audio. This will not necessarily coincide with maximum S meter reading. The same procedure should be followed in setting the various gain controls on AM as on SSB, except that the XMTR GAIN control should be adjusted for plate current peaks of 0.2 to 0.25 Amperes when talking into the microphone in a normal voice. Care should be taken to stay within these limits since the transmitter AGC does not operate on AM.

3-11. OPERATION NEAR BAND EDGES.

When operating near the edge of a band, be sure to check the dial calibration as described under tuning procedure. When working SSB be sure to use the sideband that will be inside the band. On AM and CW, the transmitted carrier will be 1 kHz higher or lower than the indicated dial frequency.

3-12. OPERATION WITH A LINEAR AMPLIFIER.

Since the TR–4C Transceiver is conservatively rated at 300 watts PEP input, it is doubtful if it would be worthwhile to use a linear amplifier with a power rating of less than 1000 to 2000 watts PEP input. A triode type grounded grid linear amplifier with a 1000 to 2000 watt PEP rating will present a satisfactory load to the TR–4C.

If the linear amplifier is of the grounded cathode type with high impedance input, it will be necessary to install a resistive pad between the TR–4C and the linear amplifier that will present the proper impedance to the TR–4C. Such a pad must be made of non-inductive resistors and must have adequate power handling capacity. Antenna switching should be accomplished as shown in figure 2-7. Most linear amplifiers have these relays built-in.

To properly operate the TR–4C with a linear amplifier proceed as follows:

a. With the TR–4C connected to the linear amplifier tune the RF TUNE control as described in paragraph 3-7 g.
b. Set the LOAD control to the setting indicated on the chart below, for the band desired, when using a linear amplifier with a 50 ohm input.

BAND	50 Ohm LOAD Setting
3.5 MHz	2
7.0 MHz	3
14.0 MHz	2
21.0 MHz	3
28.5 MHz	2

c. Tune the PLATE control for minimum plate current.
d. Switch the Mode switch to the desired mode of operation.
e. Advance the XMTR GAIN control until the desired amount of input to the linear amplifier is obtained.

Note that when the TR–4C is loaded much below maximum RF output the AGC does not function properly and flat topping in the TR–4C may result. Care should be taken to keep the XMTR GAIN below the point where this occurs. This can be accomplished by making sure that the average peak plate current does not exceed one half of the plate current obtained on tune up.

If your linear amplifier has AGC output, connect it to the TR–4C as shown in figure 2-7. If the TR–4C is properly tuned, this should prevent flat topping on SSB regardless of the XMTR GAIN control setting. However, it will not prevent overdrive on AM since the AGC does not function in this mode.

3-13. NOVICE OPERATION.

If used on the novice bands, maximum legal input power is 250 Watts which occurs when the Plate Meter reads .385 Ampere. To realize the most useful output under these conditions, readjustment of the Bias control on the Power Supply is suggested. Follow the Bias Adjustment procedure in paragraph 3-6, except set bias control on AC–4 for .025 Ampere plate current (one fourth of the normal setting). If the transceiver is used on both novice band and by another operator on SSB or AM, the bias must be readjusted to .1 Ampere before voice operation is attempted.

To load the transmitter for novice operation, preset controls as described in paragraph 3-6. Turn the MODE switch to X–CW and advance XMTR GAIN for a very slight increase in plate current. Tune RF TUNE for a peak in plate current, being careful not to exceed .385 Ampere, and quickly tune PLATE control for a dip in plate current. Turn XMTR GAIN control fully clockwise. Adjust LOAD control clockwise and then redip the PLATE control. This procedure should be done repeatedly in small increments. Stop advancing LOAD control when plate current reaches .385 Ampere with the PLATE dipped, or when output power no longer increases, whichever occurs first. Reduce XMTR GAIN until plate current just starts to drop. The transmitter is now ready for operation.

CHAPTER IV
THEORY OF OPERATION

4-1. GENERAL.

The TR–4C is a 300 Watt HF single sideband transceiver which covers the 80 through 10 meter amateur bands. AM and CW modes are also included. The TR–4C requires either an R. L. Drake AC–4, 120 V AC power supply, or an R. L. Drake DC–4, 12 V DC power supply. The TR–4C features a high-stability linear permeability tuned VFO and two 8 pole crystal lattice filters for sideband selection. Some of the circuits are common to both the transmit and receive functions. Refer to the block diagram figure 4-1 and the schematic diagram figure 5-5 as required to supplement the following discussion.

4-2. RECEIVER CIRCUITRY.

A signal entering the antenna terminal passes through the antenna switching contacts of the relay and is applied to the grid of the RF amplifier V7 through the selectivity of the L/C network formed by T9, T10 and a section of the RF TUNE capacitor C37. After being amplified, it is passed through an additional L/C network consisting of T7, T8 and the remaining section of C37, to the grid of the mixer V3B. At this point it is combined with a signal from the premixer system of the required frequency to yield a 9.0 MHz IF. The premixer system consists of a 4.9-5.5 MHz solid state permeability tuned VFO, a buffer Q2, a switchable overtone crystal oscillator V1A, the premixer pentode V1B and a cathode follower V3A.

The VFO signal output is applied to the grid of the premixer pentode through the buffer Q2 and its associated circuitry. For 80 and 20 meter operation, the VFO signal bypasses the premixer and is connected through the cathode follower to the mixer. On 40, 15 and 10 meters a signal from the crystal oscillator heterodynes with the VFO in the premixer, V1B, to produce the desired injection frequency. On 40 meters, for example, a 21.5 MHz overtone crystal and the appropriate coil L1 are switched into the crystal oscillator circuit. The output from the oscillator is coupled into the premixer pentode where it heterodynes with the 4.9-5.5 MHz VFO to produce an output frequency of 16.0-16.6 MHz. This output is coupled through the 16.0-16.6 MHz bandpass coupler, T3, and to the cathode follower, V3A. On 15 meters, a 35.5 MHz crystal is used with a 30.0-30.6 MHz coupler, T2, and on the three 10 meter ranges, 42.5, 43.0 and 43.6 MHz crystals are used with a 37.0-38.7 MHz coupler, T1.

The 9.0 MHz output of the mixer, V3B, passes through the impedance matching transformer T6 into the upper or lower sideband crystal filter. The setting of the SIDEBAND knob determines which crystal filter is used. From the crystal filter the signal passes through the impedance matching transformer, T13, and is amplified by the 9 MHz receiver IF amplifier system, V11 and V12 and the IF transformers T11 and T12. The output of T12 is applied to the AGC amplifier, V13A, to the product detector, V16, and to the diode detector, V2.

The AGC amplifier V13A is biased beyond cutoff to provide an AGC delay. When sufficient RF voltage from T12 is applied to its grid, plate current flows during part of the cycle. This causes amplified negative voltage to appear across its plate load resistor R63, thus charging C115. This negative control voltage is applied to the grids of V7, V11 and V12. C115 discharges through R63 with a time constant of approximately one second. Rotating the RF Gain control counterclockwise applies increasingly more negative bias to the AGC controlled grids, thus limiting their maximum gain.

The product detector tube, V16, consists of a 9 MHz crystal oscillator formed by the cathode, grid 1 and grid 2. A product detector is formed by the cathode, grid 3, and the plate. The IF signal is applied to grid 3 where it heterodynes with the BFO voltage in the tube. The resulting audio signal is of sufficient amplitude to drive the audio preamplifier transistor, Q5, which drives the audio output tube, V17.

The IF signal from T12 is also applied to V2 which functions as a diode detector and an audio amplifier in the AM receive mode. The output of this stage is also fed to the Mode switch and is connected to V17 through the Audio Gain control when the Mode switch is in the X-AM position. The output of V17 is applied through the audio output transformer to the phone jack, J5, and to pin 12 of the power connector. Also, output from the plate of V17 is applied to the anti vox rectifier, D6, through the ANTIVOX control.

A 100 kHz crystal calibrator, V5, is switched on when the Mode switch is in the CAL position. Its output is coupled to the grid of the RF amplifier V7.

The S meter in the TR–4C operates in a bridge circuit with the plates of a receiver IF amplifier, V11, and the transmitter IF amplifier, V15 in one leg of the bridge and plate of the audio output tube V17 in the other leg. Receiver AGC voltage applied to V11 on receive and transmit causes these tubes to draw less current, thus unbalancing the bridge, which causes the S meter to read up scale. The bridge is balanced on receive by the ZERO control. On transmit, the meter may rest up scale with no modulation.

4-3. TRANSMITTER CIRCUITRY.

Audio input from the microphone is applied to one section of the microphone amplifier V18 where it is amplified and applied to the remaining section of this tube through one section of the XMTR GAIN control. Output from the cathode of the second triode of V18 is applied to the balanced modulator through the Mode switch for SSB operation. Output from the plate is applied to the grid of the AM screen modulator, V14, and to the grid of the first VOX amplifier triode, V19A, through the VOX control. The output from V19A is rectified by the VOX rectifier, D5, and the resulting positive DC voltage is applied to the grid of the relay control triode, V19B, causing it to conduct and to close the transmit/receive relay.

Audio voltage from V17 is rectified by the anti vox rectifier, D6, which supplies negative voltage to the grid of V19B, and preventing it from conducting and closing the relay when the microphone picks up audio from the speaker.

Cut off bias for the relay tube is obtained from a voltage divider. When the microphone push-to-talk switch is activated the cut off bias is grounded, causing V19B to conduct and close the relay.

RF from the 9.0 MHz crystal oscillator portion of the product detector tube V16 is applied to the balanced diode modulator through the carrier balance control. On SSB the audio from V18 is also applied to the balanced modulator and the result is a double sideband suppressed carrier signal which is applied to the transmitter IF amplifier. The amplified output is coupled through T13 to the upper or lower crystal filter where the undesired sideband is filtered out. The resulting SSB signal is coupled through T6 to the transmitter mixer, V4, where it is combined with a premixer signal of the proper frequency to give output on the desired amateur band.

Output from V4 passes through the L/C circuit, T7, T8 and C37, and is applied to the grid of the driver tube, V6. Here it is amplified and applied to the grids of V8, V9, and V10 through the L/C network, T9, T10 and the other half of C37.

Three parellel power amplifier tubes boost the signal to a power level suitable for transmission. The output impedance of the power amplifier tubes is matched to a 52 ohm load by means of the pi network circuit composed of L8, L9, C94 and C95.

At the first trace of flat topping in the final amplifier tubes, a small amount of grid current will be drawn. This produces a voltage drop across R47. The small negative going voltage thus obtained is applied through R46 to the cathode of V13B where it is amplified. The amplified negative voltage is applied to the grid of V15, thus reducing the level of the driving signal.

When the Mode switch is placed in the X-CW position, V2 becomes an audio phase shift oscillator which is grid-block keyed along with the transmitter mixer, V4, and the driver, V6. The audio output from V2 is applied to the grid of the

product detector tube V16, through the SIDETONE control, to provide audio output from the speaker for CW monitoring. Audio output from V2 is also applied to the grid of the VOX amplifier tube, V19A, which causes relays K1 and K2 to close. The relays turn on the transmitter, cause the 9.0 MHz oscillator to be shifted to 9.001 MHz and apply a variable source of DC, controlled by half of the XMTR GAIN control, to the balanced modulator. The DC voltage which unbalances the modulator increases the carrier to a suitable level. The resulting 9.001 MHz signal from the balanced modulator is amplified by V15 and coupled into the crystal filter. The SIDEBAND control must be in the "X" position to allow the signal to pass. A screen resistor is switched into the final amplifier screen circuit to prevent excessive screen current in the X-CW position of the Mode switch.

When the Mode switch is placed in the X-AM position the AM screen modulator V14 is inserted in series with the final amplifier screen supply and a constant voltage is applied to the balanced modulator. Relay K2 shifts the 9 MHz oscillator to 9.001 on transmit just as it does on X-CW. Vox and PTT functions are the same on AM as on SSB.

When relay K1 is closed, either by the VOX circuit or the push-to-talk switch, the cathode of V3B, V7, V11 and V12 are isolated from ground which disables the receiver. The cathodes of V4, V6, V8, V9, V10 and V15 are connected to ground which actuates the transmitter. Also, the antenna is switched from the receiver input to the final amplifier tank circuit. If the TCVR/RCVR switch is in the RCVR position, the RCVR MUTE jack is grounded through RFC 11 and RFC 7 and the antenna is connected to the RCVR ANT jack instead of T9 in the receive condition of the relays.

Pushing in the LOAD control disconnects the plate current meter from the final amplifier cathode circuit and connects it to the diode D9 and its associated circuitry. This network samples the RF output voltage at the antenna connection, rectifies it, and applies it across the meter.

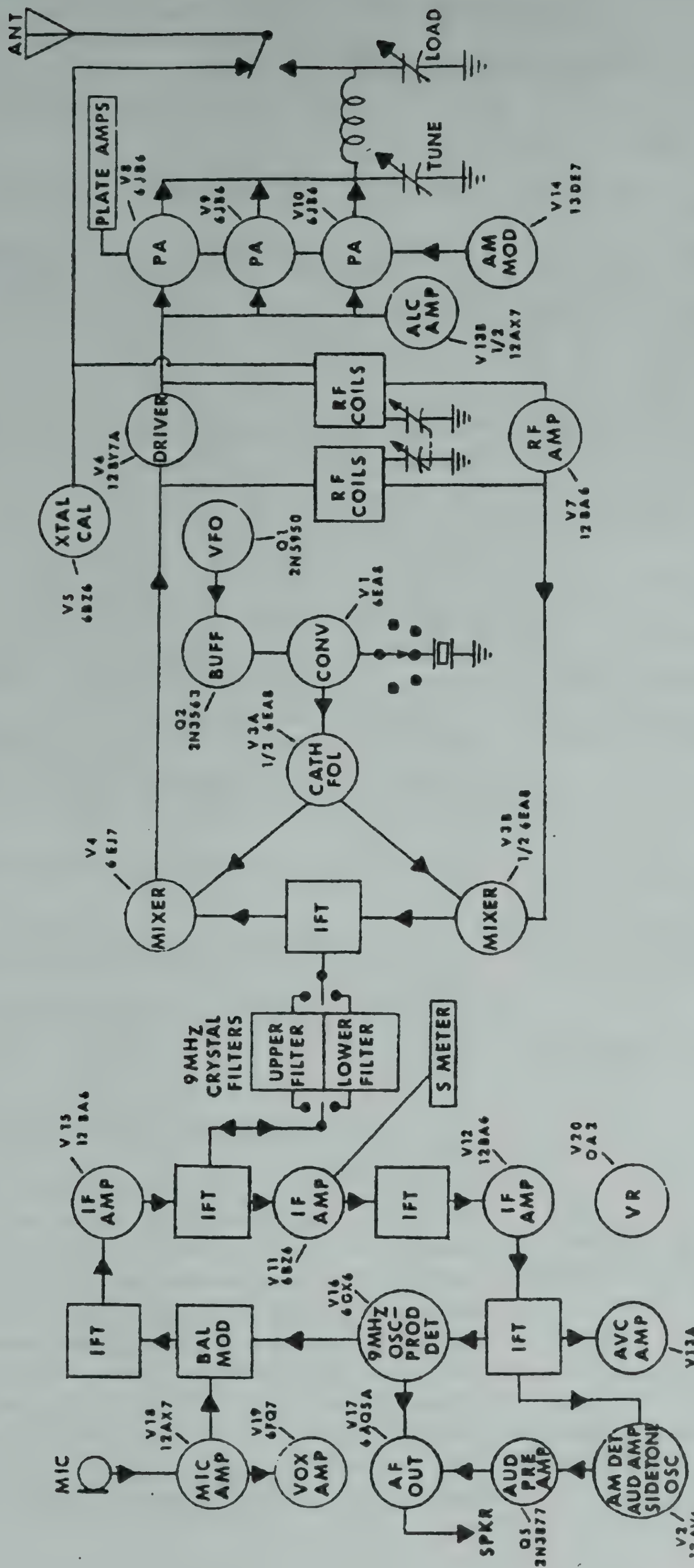

ANT
PLATE AMPS
V8 6JB6
V9 6JB6
V10 6JB6
PA
PA
PA
LOAD
TUNE
V14 13DE7
AM MOD
ALC AMP
V12B 1/2 12AX7
RF COILS
RF COILS
RF AMP
V7 12BA6
DRIVER
V6 12BY7A
XTAL CAL
V5 6BZ6
VFO
Q1 2N5950
BUFF
Q2 2N3563
CONV
V1 6EA8
CATH FOL
V3A 1/2 6EA8
V4 6EJ7
MIXER
IFT
MIXER
V3B 1/2 6EA8
9MHZ CRYSTAL FILTERS
UPPER FILTER
LOWER FILTER
S METER
V15 12BA6
IF AMP
IFT
IF AMP
V11 6BZ6
IFT
IF AMP
V12 12BA6
V20 OA2
VR
MIC
V18 12AX7
MIC AMP
V19 6FQ7
VOX AMP
IFT
BAL MOD
V16 6GX6
9MHZ OSC-PROD DET
IFT
AVC AMP
V13A 1/2 12AX7
V17 6AQ5A
AF OUT
SPKR
AUD PRE AMP
Q5 2N3877
AM DET AUD AMP SIDETONE OSC
V2 12AV6

Figure 4–1. Block Diagram

CHAPTER V
MAINTENANCE

5-1. SERVICE DATA.

We will check and align your transceiver at the factory for a nominal fee if it has not been tampered with. Transportation charges are extra. Any necessary repairs will be made on a time and material basis. Please write or call the factory for authorization before returning your unit for alignment or service. Address your request for authorization to:

R. L. Drake Company
540 Richard Street
Miamisburg, Ohio 45342
ATTN: Customer Service Department

Telephone: (Area Code 513) 866-3211
(Code-A-Phone Service after
1630 Hours E.S.T.)

WARNING

Extreme caution should be exercised when the top and bottom covers are removed. High voltage which is present at several points can cause a lethal electrical shock. Repairs and adjustments should be made only by a qualified electronics technician. Disconnect the Power Supply from the TR--4C before removing covers.

5-2. TOP COVER REMOVAL.

Remove the three top screws on each side of the TR--4C and remove the cover by first pulling up on the rear and then the front of the cabinet.

5-3. BOTTOM COVER REMOVAL.

Remove the three bottom screws on each side of the TR–4C and lift the chassis out of the bottom cover.

5-4. TUBE REPLACEMENT.

In general, most trouble in electronic equipment of good design is due to tube failure. The best method of finding defective tubes is by direct substitution. It is best not to rely too heavily on tube checkers. The TR--4C has been designed so that, with the exception of V8, V9 and V10, tubes can be replaced without need for realignment. These tubes are to be replaced with a matched set of the same brand as originally supplied. If a different brand is used, alignment of T7, T8, T9 and final amplifier neutralization is recommended. Matched sets of Sylvania 6JB6's are available directly from the factory. To replace the 6JB6 tubes, it is necessary to remove only the top of the final amplifier cage. To do this, remove the sheet metal screws holding the PA cover to the cage. A disc-handle is provided on the cover to facilitate removal. To replace the PA cover, simply reverse the process. Be sure the parasitic suppressors do not short to the cage.

5-5. TROUBLE SHOOTING.

Careful consideration has been given in the design of the TR–4C to keep maintenance problems to a minimum. However, it is quite possible that some problem will arise which cannot be cured by tube substitution. If this occurs, it is suggested that the TR–4C be returned to the dealer or you may write to the Customer Service Department at the address given in paragraph 5-1. Be sure to describe the problem in detail. Include full information concerning external connections, control settings, tubes substituted, serial number, etc. Always include the serial number when requesting service information. Before returning equipment to the factory, it is necessary to get prior authorization. In case of malfunction, first check the power supply fuse, the filament fuse in the TR--4C and the number 12 fuse lamp near the relay assembly for continuity. The voltage and resistance charts in this chapter should be valuable in isolating minor problems.

However, no attempt should be made to service the TR–4C unless you are thoroughly familiar with electronic circuitry and servicing technique. Care should be taken not to disturb the lead dress in the TR–4C since several circuits are quite critical in this regard.

5-6. TEST EQUIPMENT.

Alignment of TR–4C will require the following equipment:

a. A general coverage receiver capable of receiving WWV.
b. An 11 Megohm VTVM.
c. An alignment load consisting of a 1000 Ohm non-inductive resistor in series with a .005 uF disc ceramic capacitor.
d. A 52 Ohm dummy load.

> WARNING
>
> Before receiver alignment is attempted, the plate and screen power leads of the amplifier tubes should be disconnected where they pass through the partition under the chassis. Be sure the power is disconnected before this is attempted, or serious electrical shock may result.

5-7. ALIGNMENT PROCEDURES.

5-8. CRYSTAL CALIBRATOR. To align the crystal calibrator perform the following steps:

a. Let the TR–4C warm up for 30 minutes.
b. Preset the XMTR GAIN control fully counterclockwise.
c. Set the Mode switch to CAL.
d. Tune in WWV on the general coverage receiver with the BFO off.
e. Connect a wire from the receiver antenna terminal to V5 of the TR–4C. Wrap the wire around the tube a turn or two.
f. Adjust C45, located on top of the TR–4C chassis, until the calibrator signal is zero beat with the unmodulated WWV carrier.

5-9. 9.0 MHz OSCILLATOR.

a. Let the TR–4C warm up for 30 minutes.
b. Set the Mode switch in the SSB position.
c. Turn up the Audio Gain control until noise is audible in the speaker.
d. While switching the SIDEBAND knob back and forth, adjust C130, located on top of the chassis near the rear edge, until the pitch of the noise is the same on both positions.

5-10. INJECTION CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR.

a. Set the VTVM to its lowest DC negative volt scale and set the pointer to about center scale with VTVM zero adjust control.
b. Connect the common lead of the VTVM to the TR–4C chassis and the DC lead to the test point which is connected to pin 9 of V1.
c. Set BAND switch to 7.0 MHz and adjust L1 for maximum negative DC voltage.
d. Switch to 21.0 MHz and adjust L5 for maximum as in Step c.
e. Switch to 29.1 MHz and adjust L2 for maximum as in Step c.
f. The 28.0, the 28.5 and the 29.1 MHz positions should have about the same negative voltage.

5-11. VFO ADJUSTMENT.

The permeability tuned VFO was carefully adjusted at the factory and should require no further alignment. If it does not appear to track from one end of its range to the other, it should be returned to the factory for realignment. Maximum calibration error is 1 kHz when calibrated to the nearest 100 kHz point.

5-12. INJECTION COUPLER.

a. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 7.3 MHz.
b. Connect the alignment load between pin 6 of V1B and ground and adjust T3 (top) for maximum S meter reading.
c. Connect the load from pin 9 of V3A and ground and adjust T3 (bottom) for maximum S meter reading.
d. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 21.300 MHz and repeat the procedure for T2.
e. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 29.000 MHz and repeat the above procedure for T1. *Note:* On T1, adjust the bottom slug when the load is on pin 6 of V1B and the top slug when the load is on pin 9 on V3A.

Table 5–1. Resistance Chart

REF DES	Tube Type	MEASURED AT PIN								
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
V1	6EA8	9.5 K	2.5 Meg	20 K	0	Fil	9.6 K	220	220	150 K
V2	12AV6	3.3 Meg	Inf.	Fil	0	150 K	150 K	350 K	—	—
V3	6EA8	8.0 K	150 K	250 K	Fil	0	11 K	2.2 K	1 K	34 K
V4	6EJ7	25 K	660 K	23 K	Fil	0	0	11 K	9.5 K	0
V5	6BZ6	1 Meg	1 K	Fil	0	350 K	125 K	1 K	—	—
V6	12BY7A	25 K	67 K	0	0	0	Fil	8.5 K	25 K	0
V7	12BA6	2.8 Meg	0	Fil	0	11 K	10K	100	—	—
V8	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V9	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V10	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V11	6BZ6	2.5 Meg	150	0	Fil	10 K	13 K	0		
V12	12BA6	2.5 Meg	0	Fil	0	10 K	13 K	68		—
V13	12AX7	1 Meg	22 K	45 K	0	0	2.2 Meg	55 K	48 K	Fil
V14	13DE7	8 K	2.5 Meg	2.5 Meg	Fil	0	2.2 Meg	22 Meg	0	Inf.
V15	12BA6	2 Meg	0	0	Fil	10 K	13 K	25 K	—	—
V16	6GX6	2.2 Meg	1 K	0	Fil	250 K	9.2 K	22 K	—	
V17	6AQ5	500 K	270	0	Fil	8.7 K	8 K	500 K		
V18	12AX7	350 K	6.8 Meg	0	0	Fil	350 K	500 K	3.3 K	N. C.
V19	6FQ7	12 K	4.5 Meg	0	Fil	0	100 K	620 K	820	1.6 Meg
V20	OA2	7.8 K	0	Inf.	0	7.8 K	Inf.	0		

REF DES	Transistor Type	MEASURED AT:		
		Emitter	Base	Collector
Q1	2N5950	Located in PTO		
Q2	2N3563	Located in PTO		
Q3	AT5059	0	5.6 K	43 K
Q4	2N3394	0	750	1.1 K
Q5	2N3877	1 K	56 K	6.8 K

NOTE:
All measurements were made with respect to ground with the power supply disconnected from the TR 4C. The BAND switch was on 7.0 MHz. the Mode switch was on CAL and the RCVR GAIN and XMTR GAIN controls were fully clockwise. The VOX. ANTI VOX and SIDETONE controls were fully clockwise and the ZERO control was set at the balance point. The accessory 34 PNB jumper plug was in the noise blanker jack.

Table 5–2. Voltage Chart

REF DES	Tube Type	MEASURED AT PIN								
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
V1	6EA8	122	−2	125	0	6.3*	250 245	2.6	2.6	−1.3
V2	12AV6	0 −1.6	13.0 0	12.6*	0	0 0.9	0 0.9	255 122		
V3	6EA8	155 150	0	98 150	6.3*	0	260 250	3.5 150	17 15.5	17 15.2
V4	6EJ7	155 2.8	0	NC	6.3*	0	0	270 230	175 145	
V5	6BZ6	−42 0	0.9 23	12.6*	6.3*	70 140	58 144	0.9 23		
V6	12BY7A	155 3.3	0	NC	0	0	6.3*	265 240	262 165	0
V7	12BA6	−.14	0	12.6*	0	235 230	98 110	1.25 150		
V8	6JB6	262 250	−60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	−60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V9	6JB6	262 250	−60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	−60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V10	6JB6	262 250	−60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	−60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V11	6BZ6	−.16	1.6 150	0	6.3*	235	125 150	0		
V12	12BA6	−.16	0	12.6*	0	240	105 150	1.1 150		
V13	12AX7	−.1 0	−61 −61	−59 −59	0	0	−.16	−61 −61	−59 −58	6.3*
V14	13DE7	260 250	11.4 11.2	11.4 11.2	12.6*	0	11.4 11.2	−1.0 −1.0	0	64 53
V15	12BA6	0	0	0	12.6*	248 140	155 144	155 1.3		
V16	6GX6	−6.0 −5.6	4.0	0	6.3*	140 140	140	0		
V17	6AQ5	0	7.2 6.8	0	6.3*	240 230	155 150	NC		
V18	12AX7	88 87	−.75	0	0	12.6*	130 125	0	1.23 1.1	NC
V19	6FQ7	240 165	−9.5 0	0	6.3*	0	67 87	0	1.5 1.27	TP
V20	OA2	146	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	0		

Table 5–2. Voltage Chart (continued)

REF DES	Transistor Type	MEASURED AT:		
		Emitter	Base	Collector
Q1	2N5950	Located in PTO		
Q2	2N3563	Located in PTO		
Q3	AT5059	0	0	61
Q4	2N3394	0	11.2	0
Q5	2N3877	2.3	2.8	48

NOTE:
All measurements were made with an 11 Megohm VTVM and were taken from ground. RF TUNE, PLATE and LOAD controls were set as described in paragraph 3-7. BAND switch was on 7.0 MHz, VFO dial was at 7.250 MHz and SIDEBAND was on X. Receive measurements were made with the Mode switch in the CAL position and the transmit measurements were made with the Mode switch in the X-CW position, with the following exception:

On V14, both receive and transmit measurements were made with the Mode switch in the X-AM position and with PTT line grounded.

The AC–4 Power Supply was used. Where two voltages are shown, the top is for receive and the bottom is for transmit. An "*" indicates AC voltage. The accessory 34--PNB jumper plug was in the noise blanker jack.

5-13. RECEIVER IF.

a. Peak the RF TUNE control on noise at 3.8 MHz.
b. Adjust T11 top and bottom and T12 top and bottom for maximum noise from the speaker.

5-14. BALANCED MODULATOR AND CARRIER BALANCE.

a. Disconnect the power supply and reconnect the screen and plate supply leads to the final amplifier tubes.
b. Reconnect power supply.
c. Connect dummy load to the antenna jack.
d. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum receiver gain.
e. Adjust bias per paragraph 3-6. With XMIT GAIN fully counterclockwise, place the Mode switch in X--CW position and SIDEBAND switch in X position.
f. If the plate current exceeds 0.15 Ampere, adjust the RF TUNE for 0.15 Ampere maximum.
g. If plate current is less than 0.15 Amperes, adjust Carrier Balance pot until plate current reaches 0.15 Amperes.
h. Peak T14 for maximum plate current. Detune the RF TUNE control to prevent plate current from exceeding 0.15 Amperes.
i. Alternately adjust the Carrier Balance control and C127 for minimum plate current. There should be no difference in plate current between the two positions of the SIDEBAND switch.

5-15. FILTER MATCHING TRANSFORMER.

a. Adjust the S meter ZERO pot for zero S meter deflection (S-1).
b. With the SIDEBAND switch in USB, tune in the calibrator signal at 3.8 MHz for maximum S meter reading.
c. Adjust the RF TUNE control until the S meter reads S-9.
d. Turn the VFO control clockwise to increase the audio frequency until the S meter drops to S-5.
e. Adjust T6 and T13 for maximum S meter reading.
f. Repeat Steps b. through e.
g. Center the 9.0 MHz oscillator as described in paragraph 5-9.

5-16. MIXER AND RF ALIGNMENT.

a. Tune up the TR–4C at 3.8 MHz for maximum power output into a dummy load. Set the RF TUNE control on 5. Adjust the XMTR GAIN control for 0.2 Amperes plate current as indicated by the plate meter. Adjust T7 bottom and T9 bottom for maximum plate current.
b. Tune up the TR–4C at 7.3 MHz and repeat a. above, with the RF TUNE control on 6, by adjusting T8 top and T10 top.
c. Set RF TUNE control on 5. Tune up the TR–4C at 14.3 MHz and repeat a. above by adjusting T7 top and T9 top.
d. Tune up the TR–4C at 29.7 MHz (crystal not supplied). With the RF TUNE control at 9¾ repeat a. above by adjusting T8 bottom and T10 bottom.
e. Set RF TUNE control on 5. Tune up the TR–4C at 21.3 MHz and repeat a. above by adjusting L6 and L7.

5-17. PA NEUTRALIZATION.

a. Attach an RF output indicator between the TR-4C and the dummy load. If no external output indicator is available, the TR-4C's own RF output indicator may be used.
b. Tune up the TR-4C on 29.0 MHz for maximum power output into a dummy load.
c. Reduce plate current to 0.2 Amperes with the XMTR GAIN control.
d. While tuning the PLATE control back and forth through resonance, adjust C76, using an insulated screwdriver, until the plate current dip and maximum RF output occur simultaneously. An insulated screwdriver is required because the rotor of C76 is connected to + 250 Volts DC.

5-18. TRANSMITTER IF NEUTRALIZATION.

a. With microphone plugged into TR-4C, turn the VOX gain fully counterclockwise and turn XMTR GAIN fully clockwise. Place the Mode switch in the SSB position.
b. While talking into the microphone, increase the RCVR GAIN control setting until speech can be heard from the speaker.
c. Adjust C168 for minimum output from speaker.
d. If over one turn of adjustment is required, it will be necessary to realign T14, C127 and the Carrier Balance control.

5-19. S METER ADJUSTMENT.

With the RF GAIN control fully counterclockwise adjust R187 for an S meter reading of 60 dB over S-9.

Table 5–3. Tube and Semiconductor Complement

REF DES	Component Type	FUNCTION	
		Transmitter	Receiver
V1	6EA8	Pre-Mixer/Xtal Oscillator	Pre-Mixer/Xtal Oscillator
V2	12AV6	Sidetone Oscillator	Diode Det/1st AF Amplifier
V3	6EA8	Cathode Fol.	Mixer/Cathode Fol.
V4	6EJ7	Mixer	—
V5	6BZ6	—	Crystal Calibrator
V6	12BY7	Driver	—
V7	12BA6	—	RF Amplifier

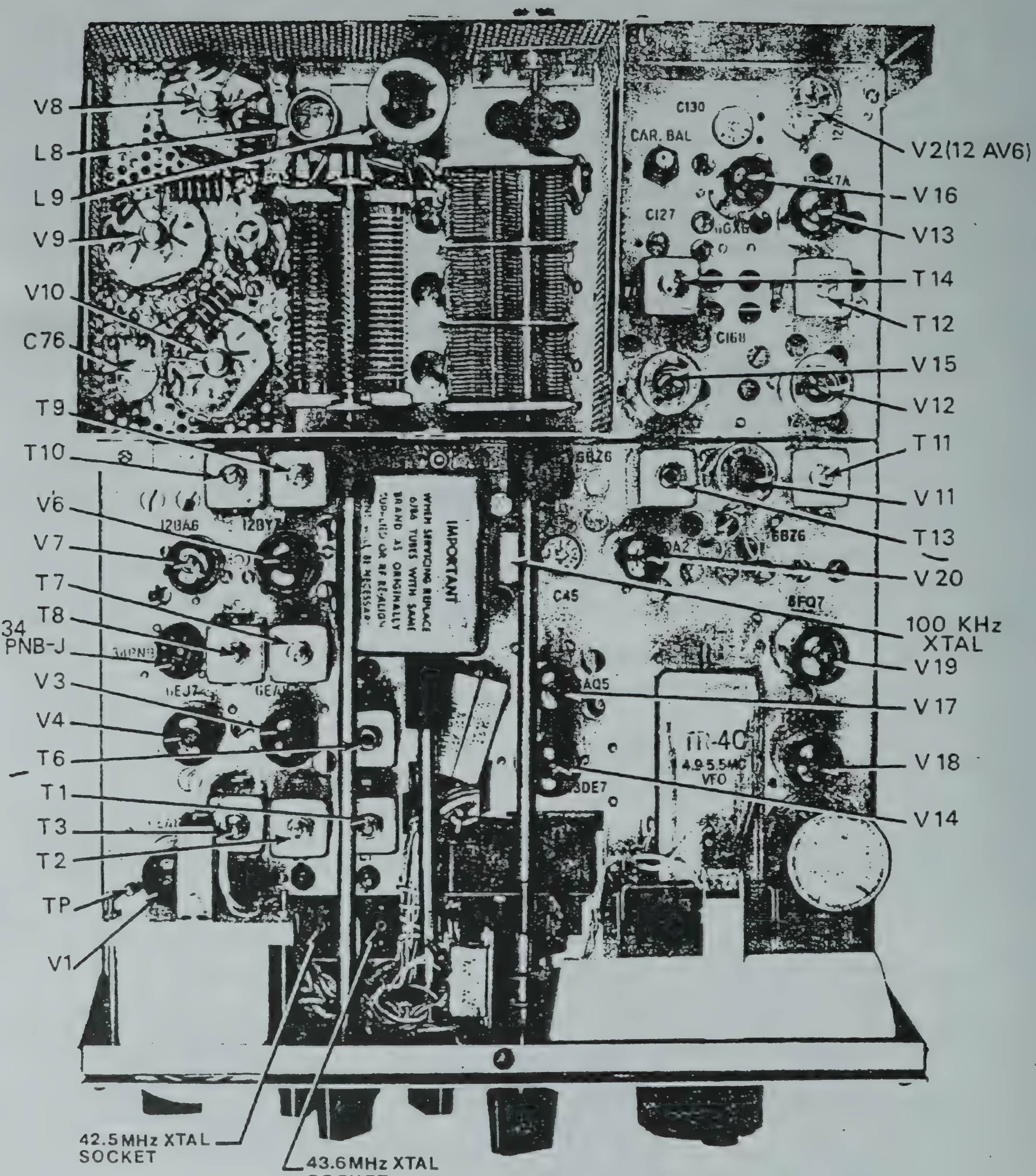

V8
L8
L9
V9
V10
C76
T9
T10
V6
V7
T7
T8
34 PNB-J
V3
V4
T6
T1
T3
T2
TP
V1
42.5MHz XTAL SOCKET
43.6MHz XTAL SOCKET
V2(12 AV6)
V16
V13
T14
T12
V15
V12
T11
V11
T13
V 20
100 KHz XTAL
V19
V17
V 18
V14
C130
CAR. BAL
C127
C168
C45
IMPORTANT
6JB6
12BA6
12BY7
6EJ7
6BZ6
6BZ6
6FQ7
6AQ5
4.9-5.5MC VFO

Figure 5–1. Alignment Locations, Top View

Table 5–3. (Continued)

REF DES	Component Type	FUNCTION	
		Transmitter	Receiver
V8, V9, V10	(3) 6JB6 Matched	Power Amps.	—
V11	6BZ6	—	IF Amplifier
V12	12BA6	—	IF Amplifier
V13	12AX7	AGC	AGC
V14	13DE7	AM Screen Modulator	—
V15	12BA6	IF Amplifier	—
V16	6GX6	9 MHz Xtal Oscillator	BFO/Product Detector
V17	6AQ5A	Anti Vox	Audio Output
V18	12AX7	Mike Amplifier	—
V19	6FQ7	VoxAmp/Relay	—
V20	OA2	Voltage Regulator	Voltage Regulator
Q1	2N5950	VFO	VFO
Q2	2N3563	VFO Buffer	VFO Buffer
Q3	AT5059	Neon Driver	Neon Driver
Q4	2N3394	VFO Shut Off	VFO Shut Off
Q5	2N3877	—	Audio Pre-Amp
D1	1N541	Balanced Modulator	
D2	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D3	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D4	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D5	1N4148	Vox Detector	—
D6	1N4148	Anti Vox Detector	—
D7	1N4148	Vox Relay Speed Up	—
D8	1N714	Voltage Regulator	Voltage Regulator
D9	1N4148	Output Power Detector	—
D10	1N4148	Anti Vox Detector	—
D11	1N4148	Output Power Detector	—
D12	1N4148	Meter Control	—
D13	1N4148	Transient Suppressor	Transient Suppressor
D14	1N4148	AGC Isolation	—

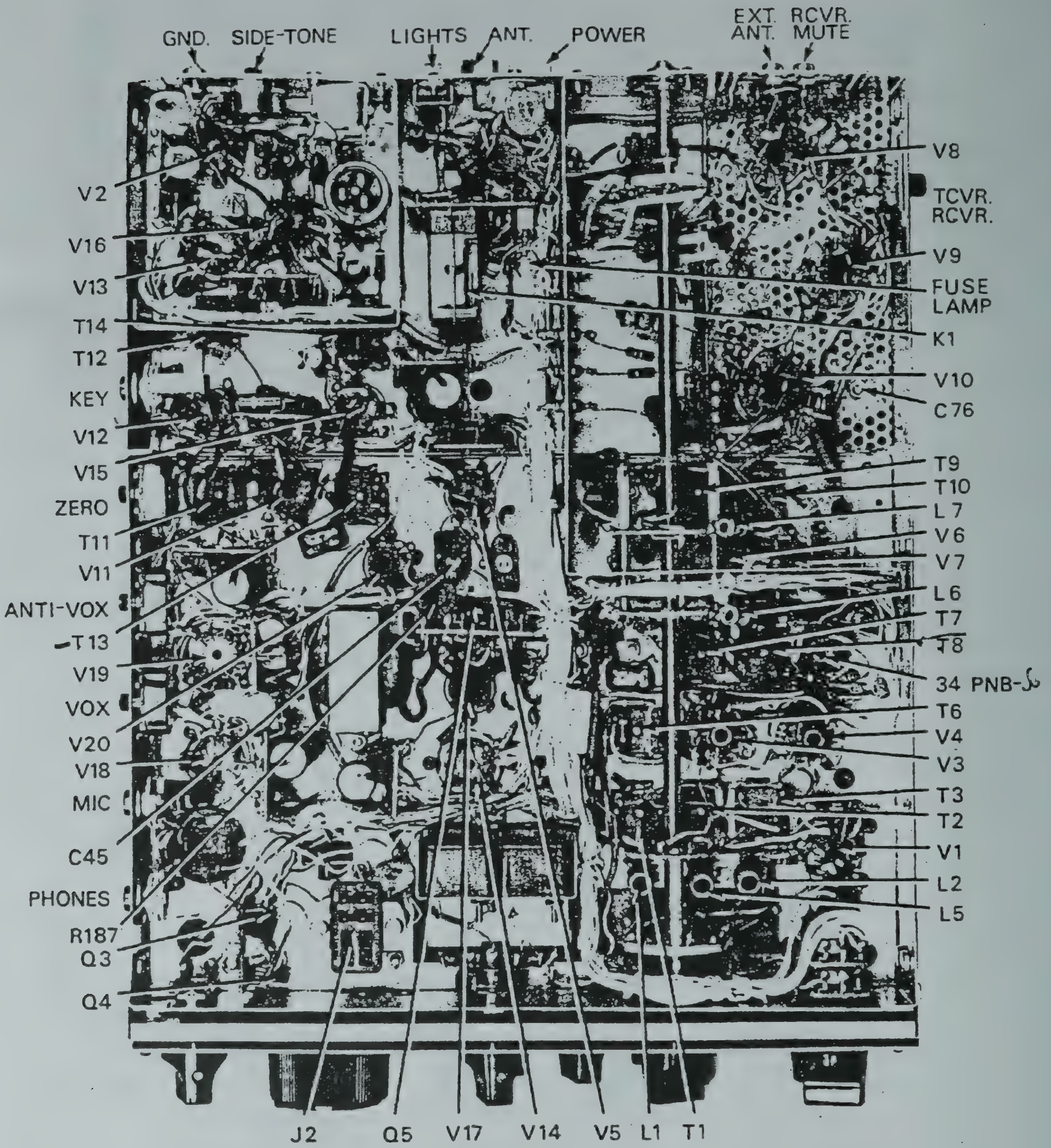

GND.
SIDE-TONE
LIGHTS
ANT.
POWER
EXT. ANT.
RCVR. MUTE
V2
V16
V13
T14
T12
KEY
V12
V15
ZERO
T11
V11
ANTI-VOX
T13
V19
VOX
V20
V18
MIC
C45
PHONES
R187
Q3
Q4
V8
TCVR. RCVR.
V9
FUSE LAMP
K1
V10
C76
T9
T10
L7
V6
V7
L6
T7
T8
34 PNB-5
T6
V4
V3
T3
T2
V1
L2
L5
J2
Q5
V17
V14
V5
L1
T1

Figure 5–2. Alignment Locations, Bottom View

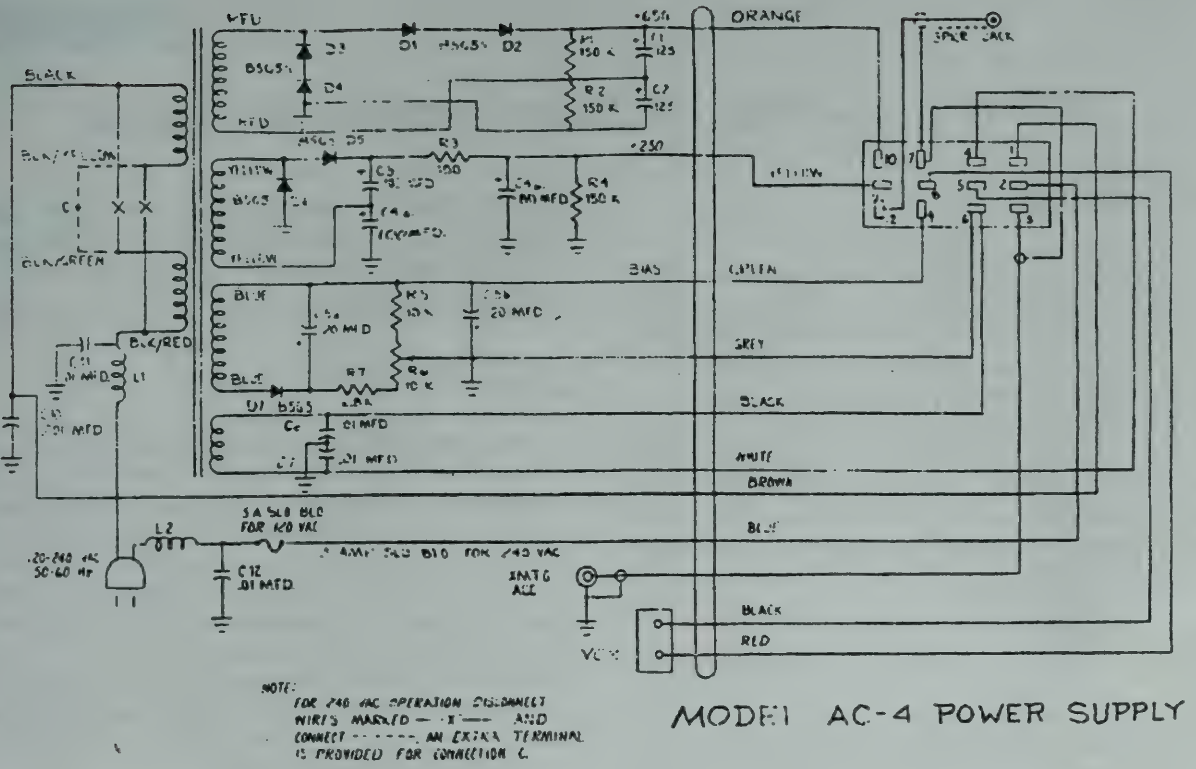

+650
ORANGE
SPKR JACK
BLACK
BLK/YELLOW
BLK/GREEN
BLK/RED
D1
D2
D3
D4
D5
R1 150 K
R2 150 K
C1 125
C2 125
R3 100
+250
YELLOW
R4 150 K
BIAS
GREEN
BLUE
R5 10 K
R6 10 K
R7
20 MFD
GREY
BLACK
D7 BSG5
.01 MFD
WHITE
BROWN
BLUE
L1
L2
C12 .01 MFD
5 A SLO BLO FOR 120 VAC
3 AMP SLO BLO FOR 240 VAC
120-240 VAC 50-60 Hz
XMTG ALC
BLACK
RED
VOX
NOTE:
FOR 240 VAC OPERATION DISCONNECT WIRES MARKED —X— AND CONNECT - - - - -. AN EXTRA TERMINAL IS PROVIDED FOR CONNECTION C.
MODEL AC-4 POWER SUPPLY

Figure 5–3. AC–4 Power Supply Schematic

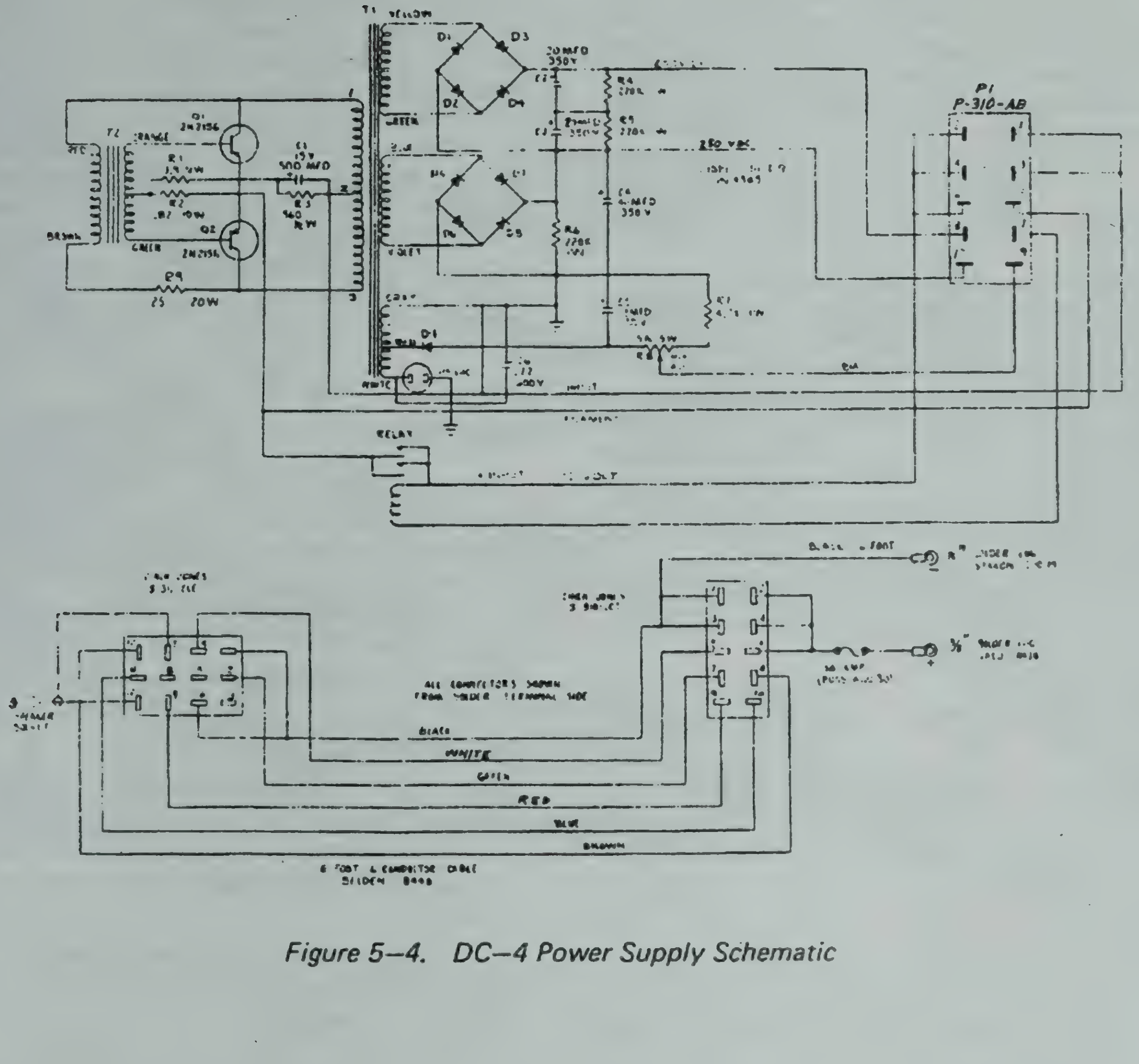
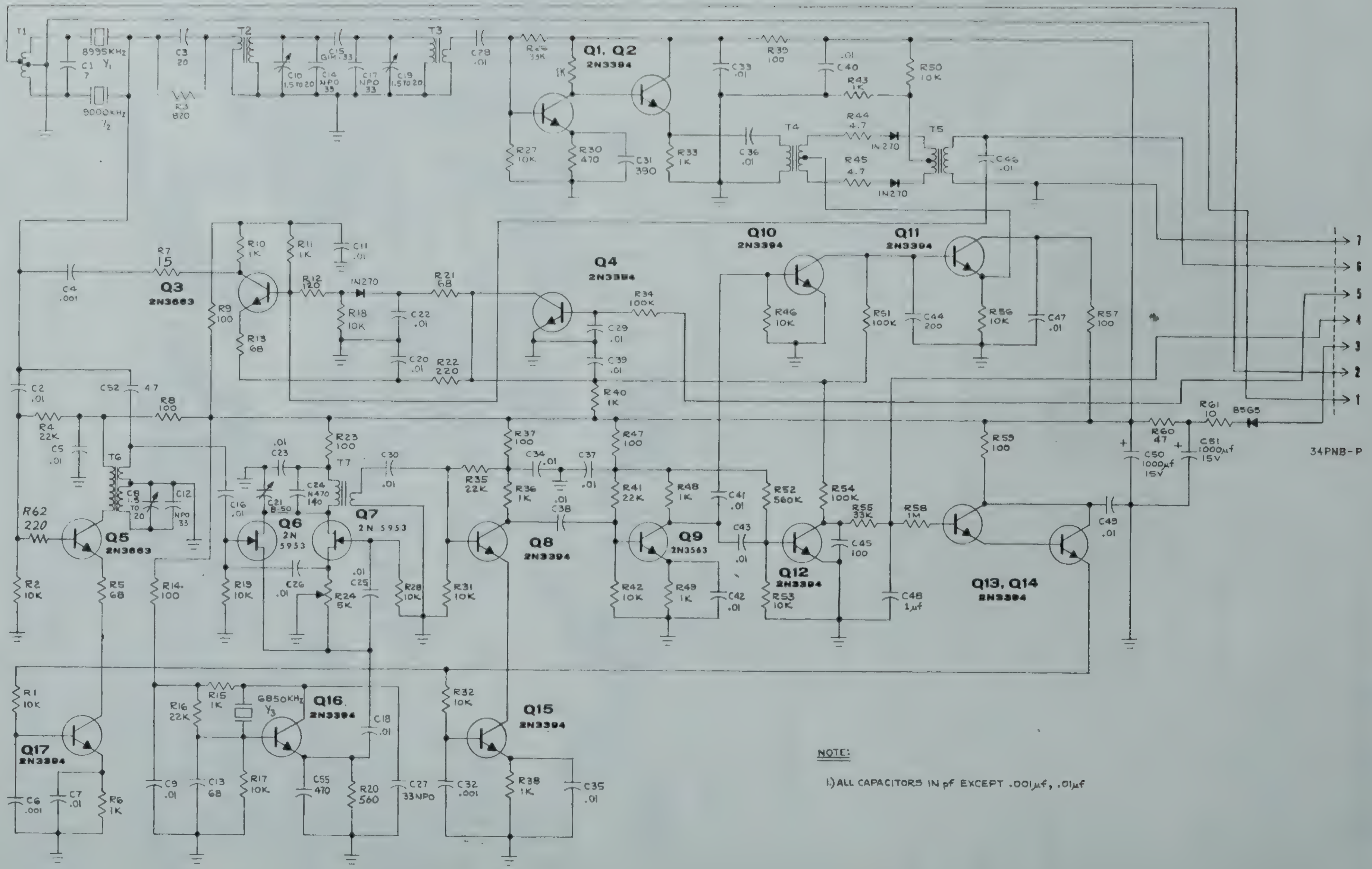

T1
YELLOW
D1
D2
D3
D4
D5
D6
20 MFD 350 V
T2
ORANGE
Q1 2N2156
Q2 2N2156
R1
R2
R3
R9
25 20W
GREEN
BROWN
250 VDC
P1
P-310-AB
C4
350 V
WHITE
RELAY
BLACK
WHITE
GREEN
RED
BLUE
BROWN
ALL CONNECTORS SHOWN FROM SOLDER TERMINAL SIDE
30 AMP
6 FOOT 6 CONDUCTOR CABLE BELDEN 8446

Figure 5–4. DC–4 Power Supply Schematic


T1
C1 7
8995KHz Y1
9000KHz Y2
C3 20
R3 820
T2
C10 1.5 TO 20
C14 NPO 33
C15 GIM 33
C17 NPO 33
C19 1.5 TO 20
T3
C78 .01
R26 33K
Q1, Q2 2N3394
1K
R27 10K
R30 470
C31 390
R33 1K
C33 .01
C36 .01
R39 100
.01 C40
R43 1K
R44 4.7
R45 4.7
IN270
T4
T5
R50 10K
C46 .01
R7 15
C4 .001
Q3 2N3663
R9 100
R10 1K
R11 1K
C11 .01
R12 120
IN270
R13 68
R18 10K
C22 .01
C20 .01
R21 68
R22 220
Q4 2N3394
R34 100K
C29 .01
C39 .01
R40 1K
Q10 2N3394
R46 10K
Q11 2N3394
R51 100K
C44 200
R56 10K
C47 .01
R57 100
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
34PNB-P
C2 .01
C52 47
R8 100
R4 22K
C5 .01
TG
C8 1.5 TO 20
C12 NPO 33
R62 220
Q5 2N3663
R2 10K
R5 68
R14 100
C16 .01
C23 .01
C21 8-50
C24 N470 140
R23 100
T7
Q6 2N 5953
Q7 2N 5953
R19 10K
C26 .01
R24 5K
C25 .01
R28 10K
C30 .01
R35 22K
R37 100
R36 1K
C34 .01
C37 .01
C38 .01
Q8 2N3394
R31 10K
R47 100
R41 22K
R48 1K
Q9 2N3563
R42 10K
R49 1K
C41 .01
C42 .01
C43 .01
R52 560K
Q12 2N3394
R53 10K
R54 100K
R55 33K
C45 100
C48 1µf
R58 1M
R59 100
Q13, Q14 2N3394
C49 .01
R60 47
R61 10
B5G5
C50 1000µf 15V
C51 1000µf 15V
R1 10K
Q17 2N3394
C6 .001
C7 .01
R6 1K
C9 .01
R16 22K
R15 1K
C13 68
6850KHz Y3
R17 10K
Q16 2N3394
C55 470
R20 560
C18 .01
C27 33NPO
R32 10K
Q15 2N3394
C32 .001
R38 1K
C35 .01

NOTE:

1.) ALL CAPACITORS IN pf EXCEPT .001µf, .01µf

Model 34–PNB Schematic Diagram

DRAKE

TR-3/TR-4/TR-4C/TR-4Cw TUNING ALTERATIONS

The tune up procedure for the TR series transceivers must be altered from the instruction manual in order to meet section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concerns the purity of emissions.

Tune up on 80, 40, and 15 meters must be altered by limiting the plate current to 350 milliamperes with the LOAD control. Instead of adjusting the LOAD control for maximum RF output, the LOAD control should be advanced from CCW to the point at which the resonant plate current does not exceed 350 milliamperes. On 80 meters the LOAD control should remain fully CCW.

The tune up procedure in the instruction manual may be followed for operation on 20 and 10 meters.

(CCW -- counterclockwise)

T-4/T-4X/T-4XB/T-4XC TUNING ALTERATIONS

The tune up procedure for the T-4 series transmitters must be altered from the instruction manual in order to meet section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concern the purity of emissions.

Tune up on 160, 80, 40 and 20 meters must be altered by limiting the plate current to 340 milliamperes with the LOAD control. Instead of adjusting the LOAD control for maximum RF output, the LOAD control should be advanced from CCW to the point at which the resonant plate current does not exceed 340 milliamperes.

The tune up procedure in the instruction manual may be followed for operation on 15 and 10 meters.

(CCW -- counterclockwise)

L-4B

The L-4B when tuned in accordance with the instruction manual meets the requirements of section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concern the purity of emissions.

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTION SHEET

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTION SHEET

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.

DRAKE

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

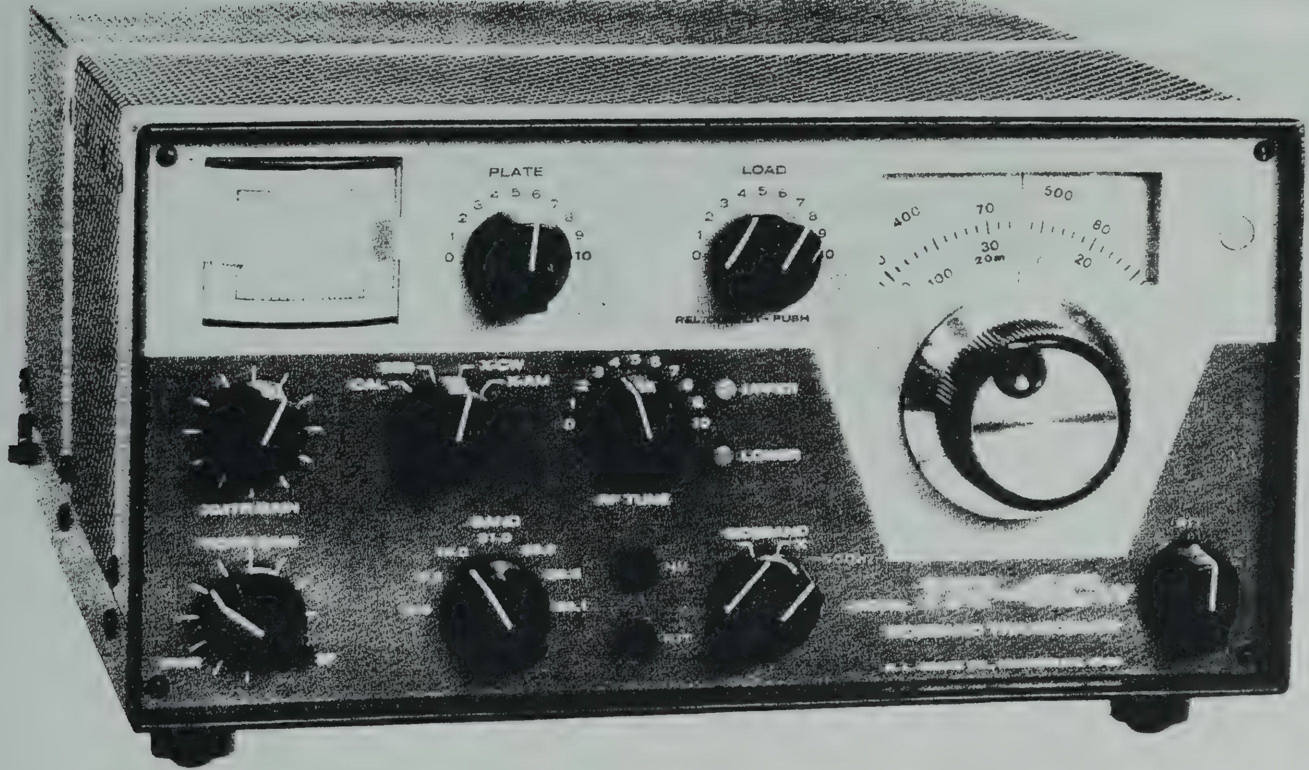


PLATE
LOAD
RELOAD - PUSH

TR-4Cw

SIDEBAND TRANSCEIVER

R. L. DRAKE COMPANY, MIAMISBURG, OHIO, U.S.A.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

CHAPTER I INTRODUCTION . . . 1–1

1–1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION . . . 1–1

1–2. MANUAL COVERAGE . . . 1–1

SPECIFICATIONS . . . 1–3

CHAPTER II INSTALLATION . . . 2–1

2–1. UNPACKING . . . 2–1

2–2. LOCATION . . . 2–1

2–3. MOBILE INSTALLATION . . . 2–1

2–4. POWER REQUIREMENTS . . . 2–1

2–5. MOUNTING . . . 2–1

2–6. ANTENNA . . . 2–1

2–7. SPEAKER . . . 2–1

2–8. MICROPHONE . . . 2–1

2–9. STATIONARY INSTALLATION . . . 2–2

2–10. POWER REQUIREMENTS . . . 2–2

2–11. VIEWING ANGLE . . . 2–2

2–12. ACCESSORIES . . . 2–2

CHAPTER III OPERATION . . . 3–1

3–1. GENERAL . . . 3–1

3–2. MODE SWITCH . . . 3–1

3–3. BLANKER SWITCH . . . 3–1

3–4. VFO DIAL . . . 3–1

3–5. TUNING PROCEDURE . . . 3–1

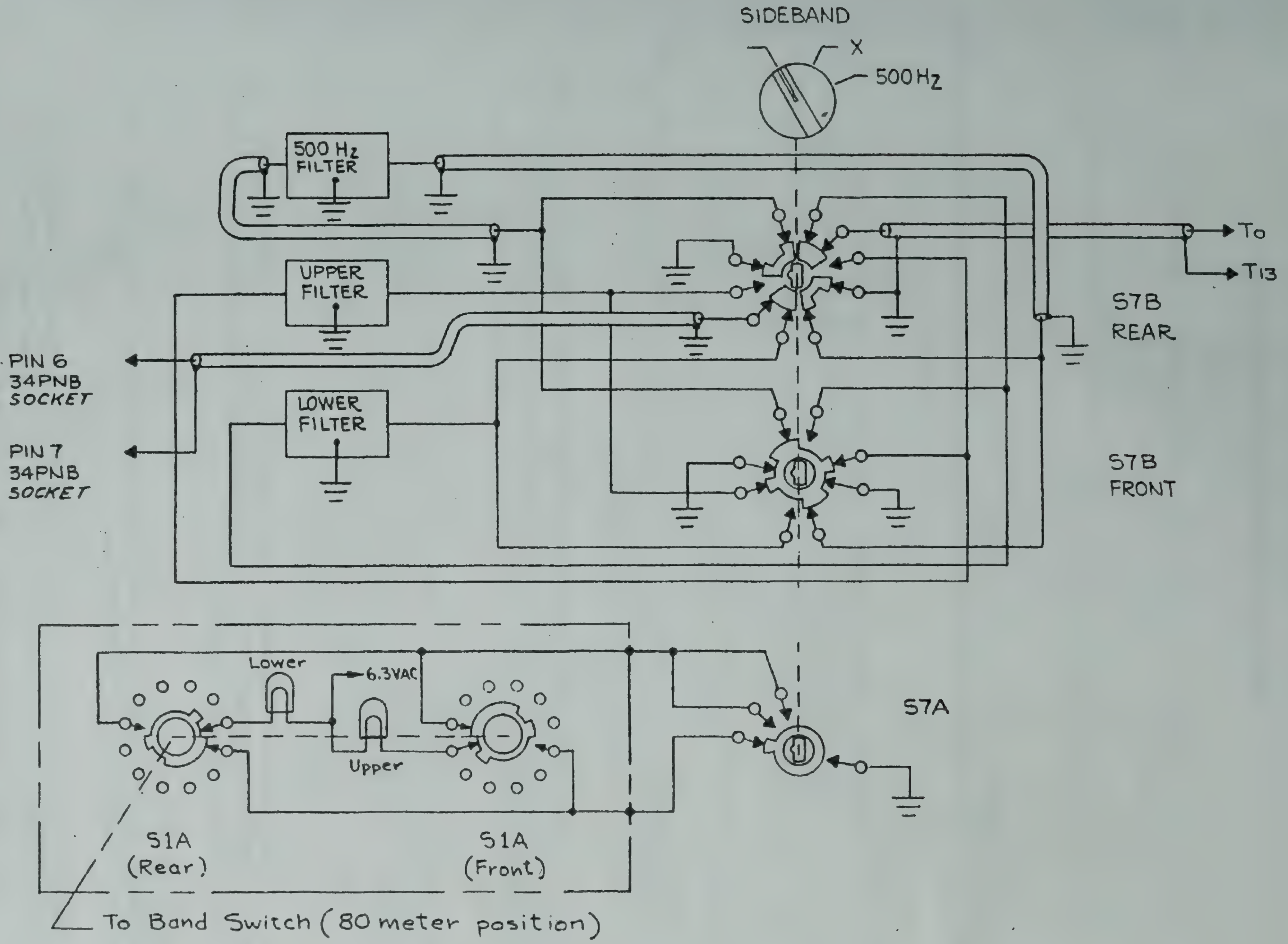
3–6. BIAS ADJUSTMENT . . . 3–1

FRONT PANEL CONTROLS . . . 3–3

OTHER CONTROLS . . . 3–4

3–7. TUNE UP . . . 3–5

3–8. SSB OPERATION . . . 3–5



SIDEBAND
X
500 Hz
500 Hz FILTER
UPPER FILTER
LOWER FILTER
To
T13
S7B REAR
S7B FRONT
PIN 6 34PNB SOCKET
PIN 7 34PNB SOCKET
Lower
6.3VAC
Upper
S7A
S1A (Rear)
S1A (Front)
To Band Switch (80 meter position)

TR-4Cw Schematic Diagram

DRAKE

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

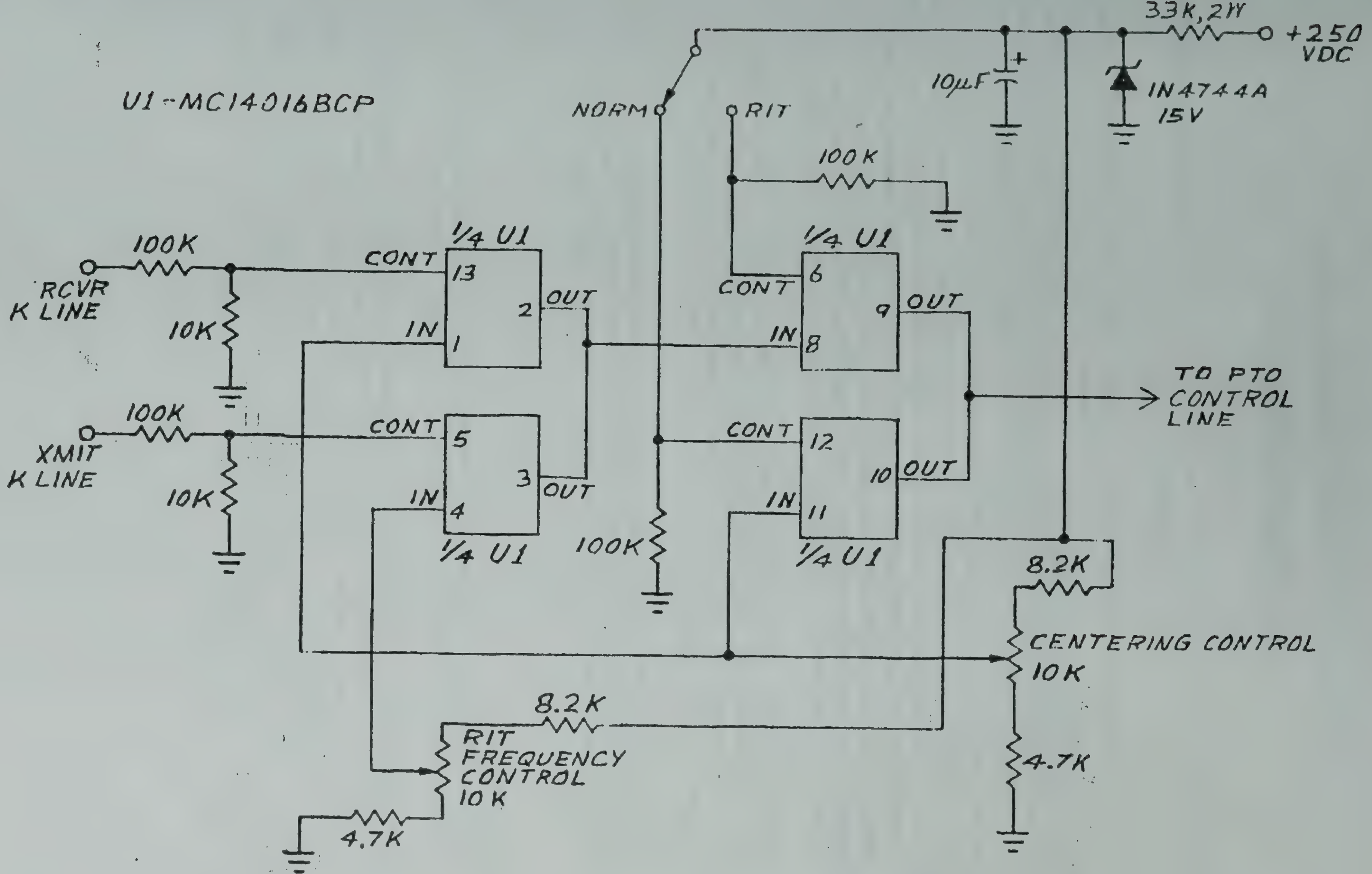
The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.


U1-MC14016BCP
NORM
RIT
33K,2W
+250 VDC
10µF
IN4744A 15V
100K
RCVR K LINE
100K
10K
1/4 U1
CONT
13
IN
1
2
OUT
XMIT K LINE
100K
10K
CONT
5
IN
4
3
OUT
1/4 U1
1/4 U1
CONT
6
IN
8
9
OUT
TO PTO CONTROL LINE
CONT
12
IN
11
10
OUT
1/4 U1
100K
8.2K
CENTERING CONTROL 10K
4.7K
8.2K
RIT FREQUENCY CONTROL 10K
4.7K

RIT Schematic Diagram

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS

COVERING MODELS WITH RIT

The addition of Receiver Incremental Tuning to the TR-4Cw allows the receive frequency to be varied approximately ±3 kHz (2 kHz min., 4 kHz max.) relative to the indicated dial frequency.

OPERATION

The RIT function is activated by depressing the RIT push button switch. When disabled, the RIT frequency control has no effect, and the received frequency is as indicated on the dial. The TR-4Cw transmit frequency is always as indicated on the dial.

If equipped with the accessory 34-PNB Noise Blanker, the Noise Blanker is activated by depressing the NB push button switch. For further information regarding the operation of the Noise Blanker, refer to section 3-3.

Use of RIT can be very useful for both CW and SSB operation. When working a station who is drifting in frequency, the drift can be compensated for without "walking" across the band.

ZERO ADJUSTMENT

The RIT printed circuit board is located on the partition enclosing the PA compartment on the bottom of the transceiver.

The trim pot located on this board is used to "center" the front panel RIT frequency control. With the front panel frequency control set at 12 o'clock, tune in the calibrator signal at any convenient 100 kHz point until a beat note is heard. The trim pot should be adjusted until there is little or no change in the beat note frequency when turning the RIT control on and off via the RIT push button. This adjustment is factory set, and centering should be within 200-300 Hz.

CHAPTER I
INTRODUCTION

1-1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

The TR-4C is a 300 Watt HF single sideband transceiver which covers the 80 through 10 meter amateur bands. AM and CW modes are also included. The TR-4C requires either an R. L. Drake AC-4, 120 V AC power supply, or an R. L. Drake DC-4, 12 V DC power supply. The TR-4C features a high-stability linear permeability tuned VFO and two 8 pole crystal lattice filters for sideband selection. Available accessories include an RV-4C Remote VFO, a matching MS-4 Speaker, an FF-1 Fixed Frequency Adapter, a 34-PNB Noise Blanker, an MC-4 Mobile Console, and a TR-4C VHF Modification Kit.

1-2. MANUAL COVERAGE.

This manual provides sufficient information for operation of the TR-4C Transceiver by a licensed operator and for repair and maintenance by an experienced electronics technician. Chapter II provides installation instructions and illustrates interconnection with accessories. Chapter III describes operation procedures. Chapter IV presents theory of operation supported by a block diagram. Chapter V provides maintenance instructions and parts ordering information.

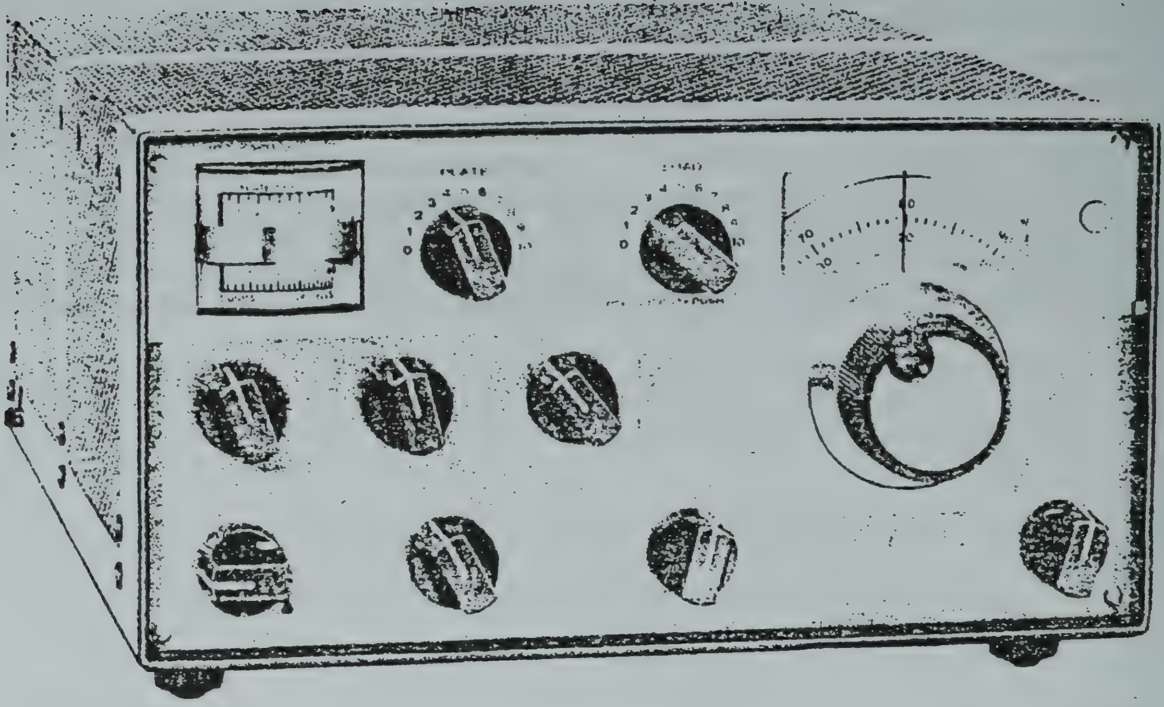


Figure 1–1. TR–4C Sideband Transceiver

SPECIFICATIONS

GENERAL:	
Frequency Coverage:	3.5 to 4.1 MHz, 7.0 to 7.6 MHz, 13.9 to 14.5 MHz, 21.0 to 21.6 MHz and 28.5 to 29.1 MHz; accessory crystals are available for the 28.0 to 28.6 MHz and 29.1 to 29.7 MHz segments of the 10 meter band.
Mode of Operation:	Lower Sideband, Upper Sideband, AM and CW.
Frequency Stability:	Total drift is less than 100 Hz after warm up. Total frequency change is less than 100 Hz for a ± 10% line voltage change.
Power Supply Requirements:	+ 650 Volts DC at 300 mA average and 500 mA maximum with 10% regulation from 100 to 500 mA and a maximum ripple 1%. + 250 Volts DC at 200 mA with 10% regulation from 170 mA to 200 mA. This includes the effect of the 650 Volt supply change if both voltages are obtained from the same transformer. Maximum ripple must be less than 1/4%. –45 to –65 Volts DC adjustable filtered bias into 33 K Ohm load. 12.6 Volts AC or DC at 5.5 Amperes.
Antenna Impedance:	Nominal 52 Ohms (VSWR less than 2:1).
Dial Calibration:	Better than ± 1 kHz when calibrated at the nearest 100 kHz calibration point.
Dimensions:	5.5 in. High x 10.75 in. Wide x 14.375 in. Deep. 13.97 cm. High x 27.31 cm. Wide x 36.51 cm. Deep.
Weight:	16 lbs. (7.26 kg.)
RECEIVER:	
Sensitivity:	Less than 0.5 uV for 10 dB $\frac{S+N}{N}$
AGC:	Less than 3 dB variation for 60 dB change in input signal.
Selectivity:	2.1 kHz at –6 dB and 3.4 kHz at –60 dB.
IF Frequency:	9 MHz.
Audio Output:	3 Watts with less than 10% distortion.
Output Impedance:	4 Ohms.
TRANSMITTER:	
Power Input:	300 Watts PEP SSB, 260 Watts CW and 260 Watts PEP AM.
Output Impedance:	Nominal 52 Ohms.
Average Distortion Products:	The odd order products are down 30 dB below PEP.
Microphone Input:	High Impedance.

CHAPTER II
INSTALLATION

2-1. UNPACKING.

Carefully remove the unit from the shipping carton and examine it for evidence of damage. If any damage is discovered, immediately notify the transportation company that delivered the unit. Be sure to keep the shipping carton and packing material as the transportation company will want to examine them if there is a damage claim. Keep the carton and packing material even if no shipping damage occurs. Having the original carton available makes packing the unit much easier if it should ever be necessary to store it or return it to the factory for service.

NOTE

Fill out the enclosed registration card and return it to the factory immediately to insure registration and validation of the warranty.

2-2. LOCATION.

The location of the TR–4C is not critical. However, care should be taken to insure that adequate clearance is provided to insure free circulation of air around the unit and to allow access to the side controls and connectors. Do not cover the top of the cabinet with books, papers or other equipment as overheating may result.

2-3. MOBILE INSTALLATION.

2-4. POWER REQUIREMENTS. Refer to figure 2-2 for rear chassis connector identification. The TR–4C may be installed in any vehicle with a 12 volt dc negative ground system. An R. L. Drake Model DC–4 Power Supply is required for a mobile installation. The recommended location for the DC–4 is on the passenger side of the firewall. Refer to figure 2-3 for the electrical connections required.

2-5. MOUNTING. Mount the TR–4C in a convenient location below the dash with an R. L. Drake Model MMK-3 Mobile Mounting Kit. Refer to figure 2-4 for various mounting options. Be sure to allow adequate clearance for air circulation and cable connections. Turn the TR-4C off. Connect the power cable between the TR–4C and the DC-4. Coil up any excess cable and tape it in place out of sight. Connect the black wire from the power supply to a convenient ground. Route the red wire from the power supply through the firewall and connect it to the positive battery terminal or the starter solenoid. The fuse holder should be installed as close to the solenoid as possible. Shorten both of these wires as much as possible.

2-6. ANTENNA. Install a mobile antenna as recommended by the antenna manufacturer. Connect a coaxial cable from the antenna to the SO-239 connector at the rear of the TR-4C.

2-7. SPEAKER. *DO NOT* connect the TR-4C to the speaker of the car radio. Install a separate speaker for use with the TR-4C. The R. L. Drake Model MC-4 Mobile Console is recommended for this type of installation. It includes a speaker and a wattmeter and is designed to mount over or under the TR-4C.

2-8. MICROPHONE. Use a microphone with a flat frequency response. The microphone should have a cardioid pattern to reduce pickup from the back and sides. Connect the microphone as illustrated in figure 2-1 to insure proper performance.

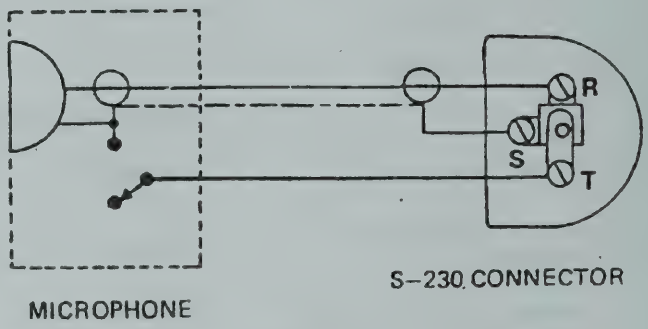


Figure 2–1. Microphone Connections

2-9. STATIONARY INSTALLATION.

2-10. POWER REQUIREMENTS. An R. L. Drake Model AC–4 Power Supply rated at 120 volts ac, 50/60 Hz, is required for stationary installations. The AC–4 is designed to fit inside the MS–4 speaker cabinet.

2-11. VIEWING ANGLE. Refer to figure 2-5 for illustrations of viewing angle options. See Chapter V for bottom cover removal.

2-12. ACCESSORIES. Refer to figures 2-6 through 2-9 for the electrical connections required to operate the TR–4C with the various recommended accessories.

NOTE

If the old RV–3 is to be used it must be modified as follows: Install a 22 K, 2 Watt resistor from pin 1 of the tube (0A2) to the terminal of the FUNCTION switch to which the orange wire is attached.

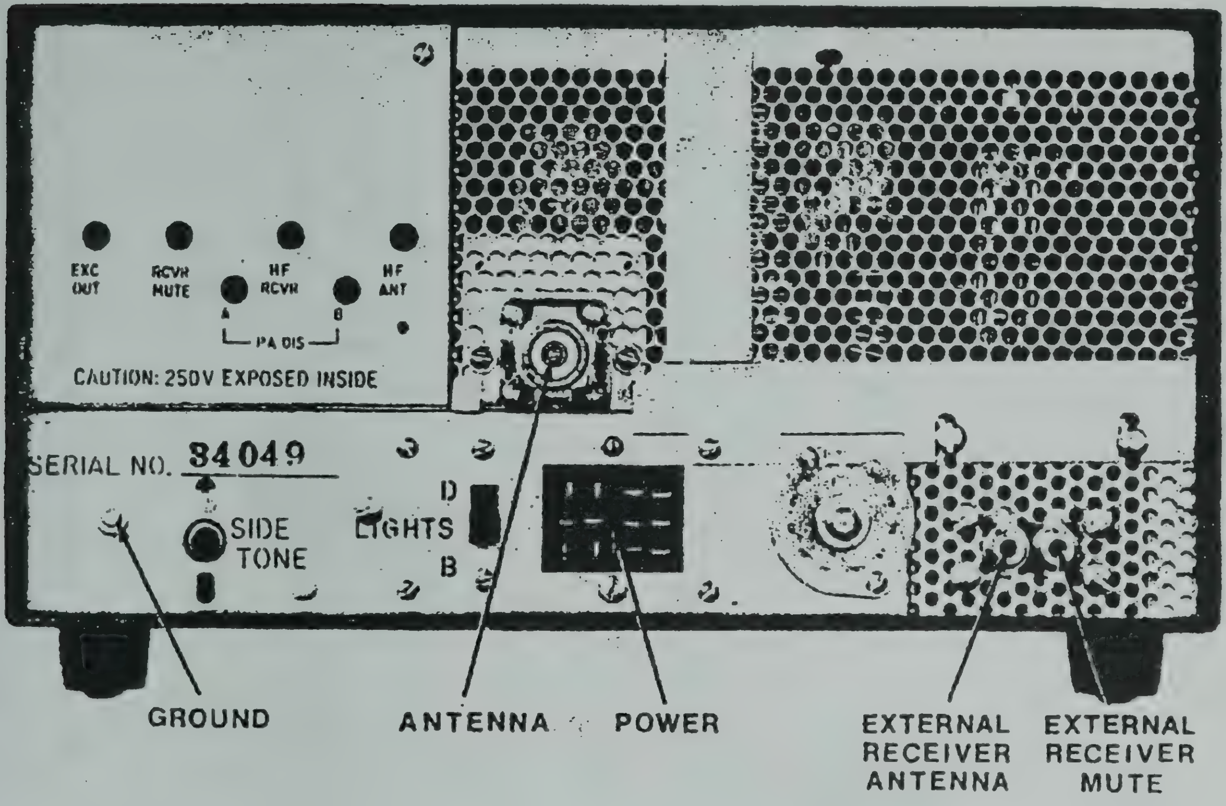

EXC OUT
RCVR MUTE
HF RCVR
HF ANT
A
B
PA DIS
CAUTION: 250V EXPOSED INSIDE
SERIAL NO. 34049
SIDE TONE
D
LIGHTS
B
GROUND
ANTENNA
POWER
EXTERNAL RECEIVER ANTENNA
EXTERNAL RECEIVER MUTE

Figure 2–2. Rear Chassis Connectors

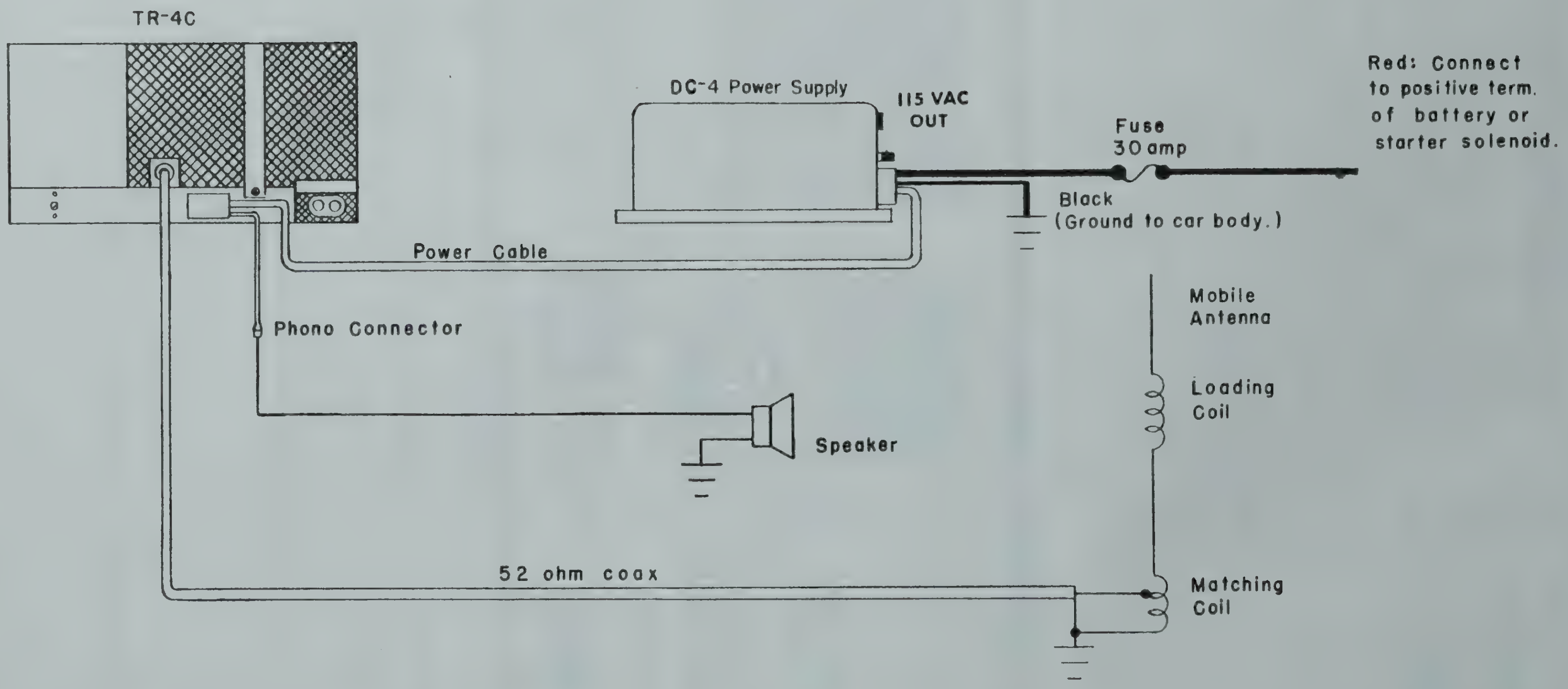
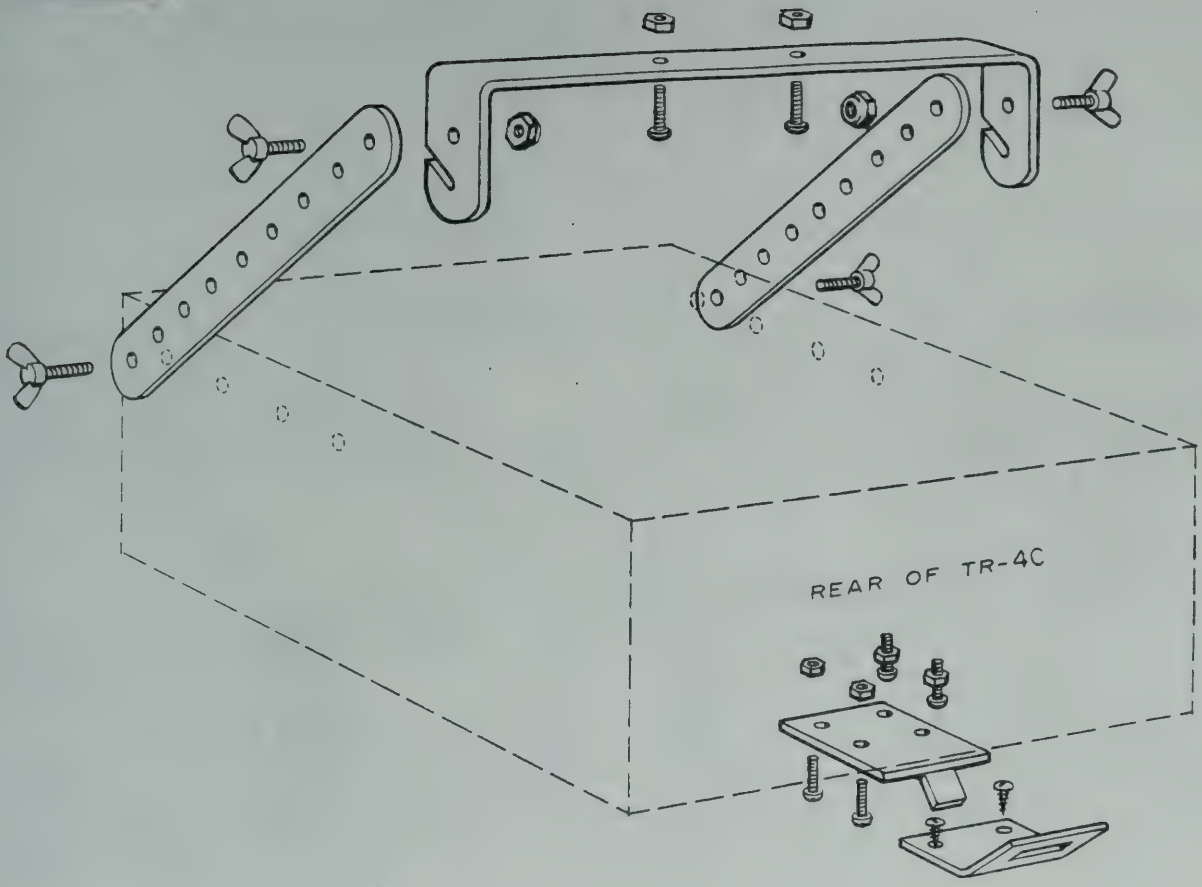
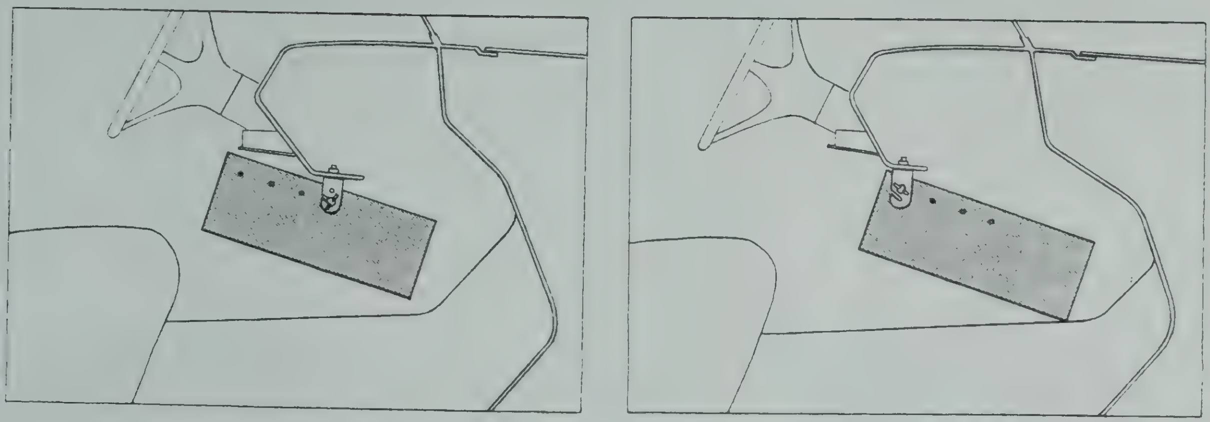
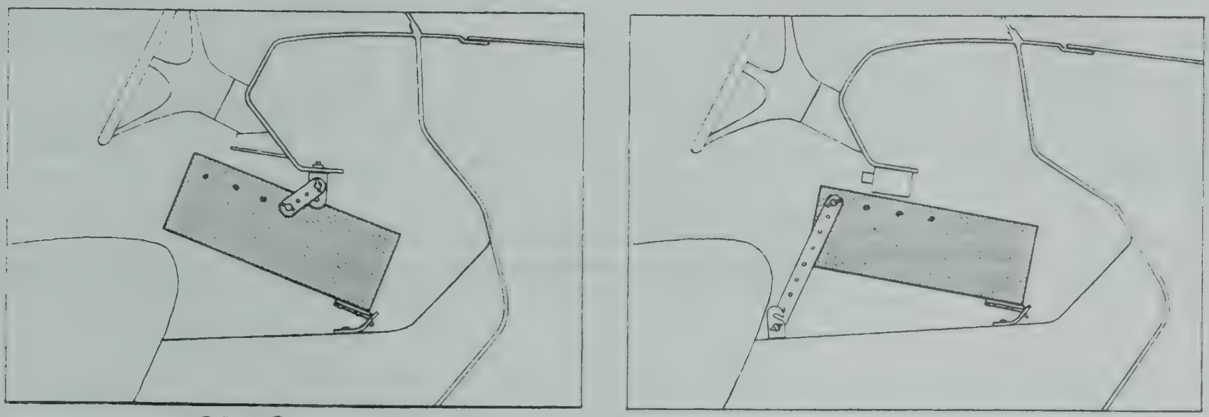

TR-4C
DC-4 Power Supply
115 VAC OUT
Fuse 30 amp
Red: Connect to positive term. of battery or starter solenoid.
Black (Ground to car body.)
Power Cable
Phono Connector
Mobile Antenna
Loading Coil
Speaker
52 ohm coax
Matching Coil

Figure 2–3. Electrical Connections Required for Mobile Installation


REAR OF TR-4C


OPTION A

OPTION B


OPTION C

OPTION D

Figure 2–4. Mobile Installation Mounting Options

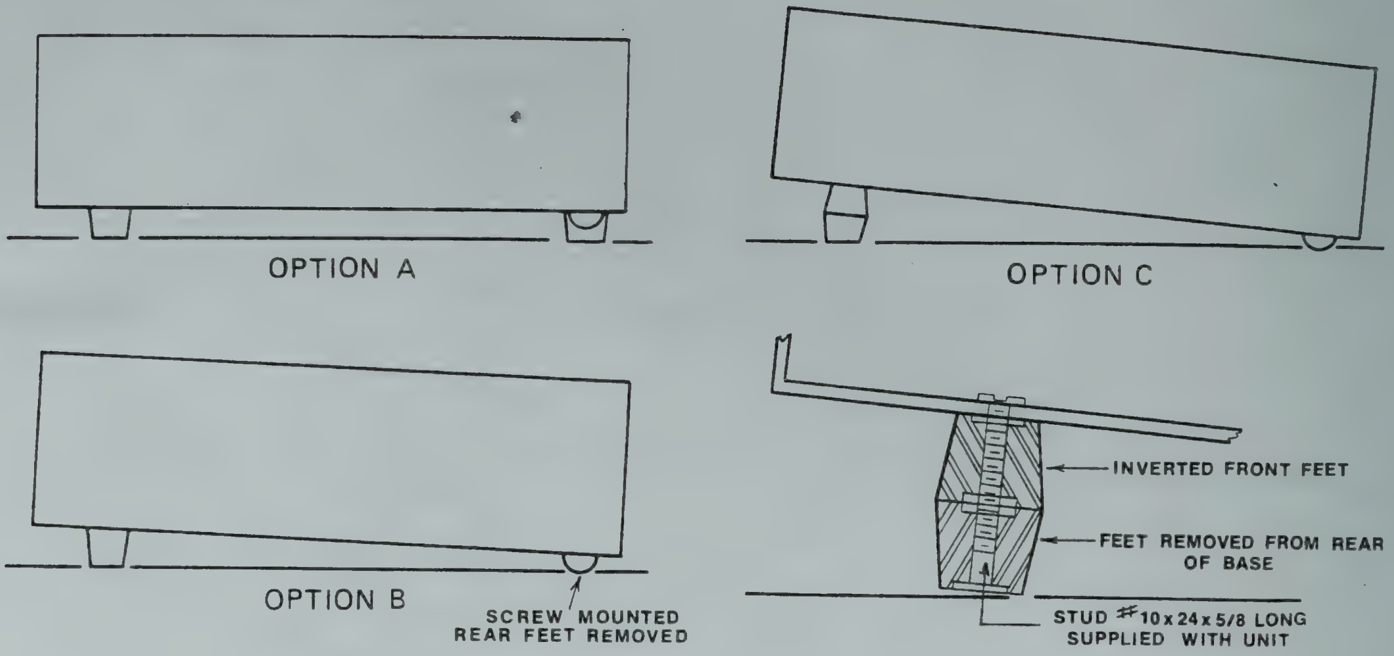

OPTION A
OPTION C
OPTION B
SCREW MOUNTED REAR FEET REMOVED
INVERTED FRONT FEET
FEET REMOVED FROM REAR OF BASE
STUD #10 x 24 x 5/8 LONG SUPPLIED WITH UNIT

Figure 2–5. Viewing Angle Options in a Stationary Installation

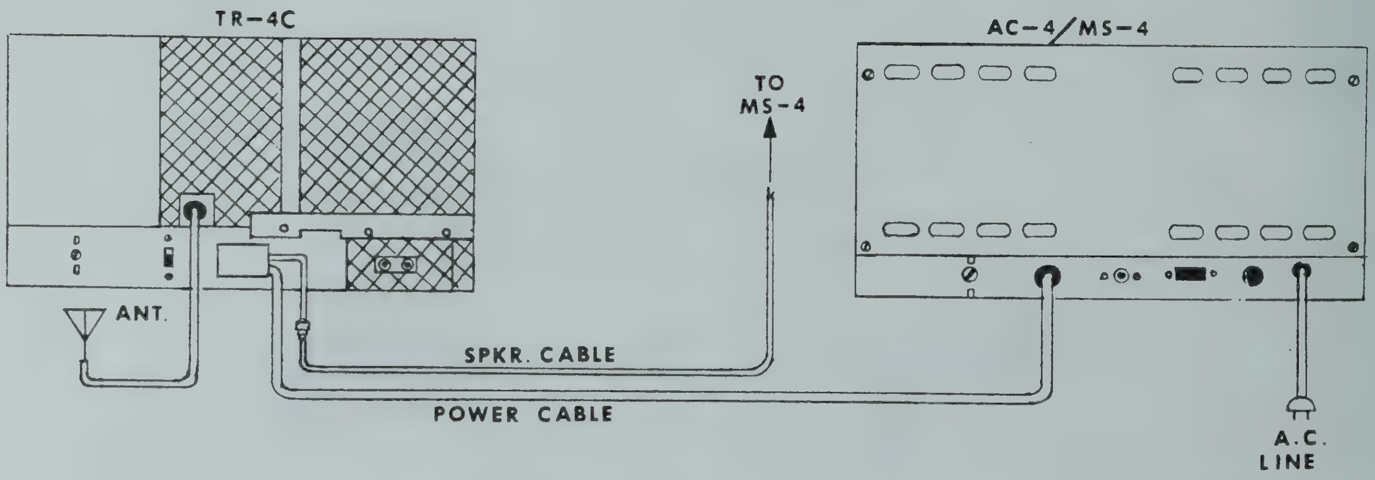

TR–4C
AC–4/MS–4
TO MS–4
ANT.
SPKR. CABLE
POWER CABLE
A.C. LINE

Figure 2–6. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply and MS–4 Speaker

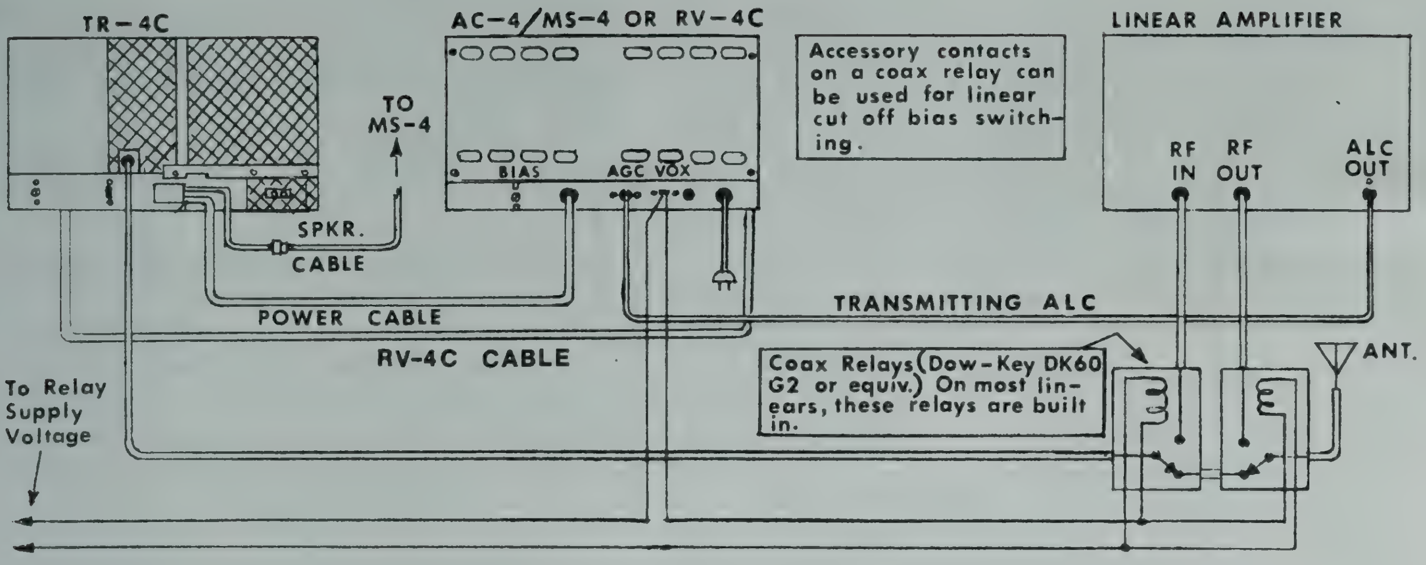

TR-4C
AC-4/MS-4 OR RV-4C
LINEAR AMPLIFIER
Accessory contacts on a coax relay can be used for linear cut off bias switching.
TO MS-4
BIAS
AGC
VOX
RF IN
RF OUT
ALC OUT
SPKR. CABLE
POWER CABLE
TRANSMITTING ALC
RV-4C CABLE
Coax Relays (Dow-Key DK60 G2 or equiv.) On most linears, these relays are built in.
ANT.
To Relay Supply Voltage

Figure 2–7. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply, RV–4C Remote VFO and a Linear Amplifier

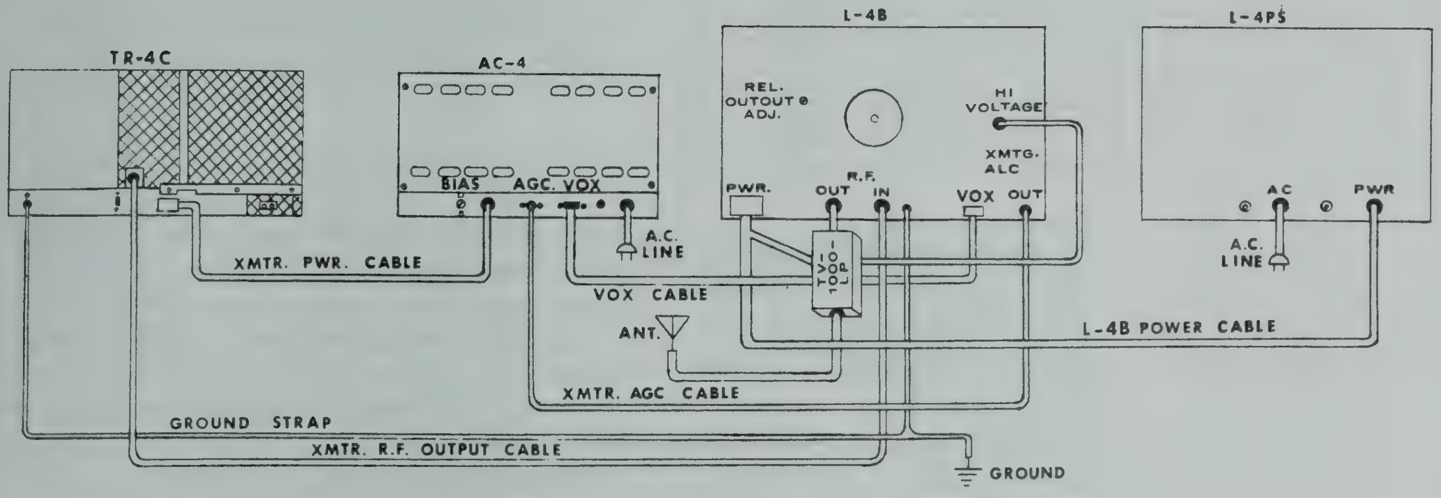
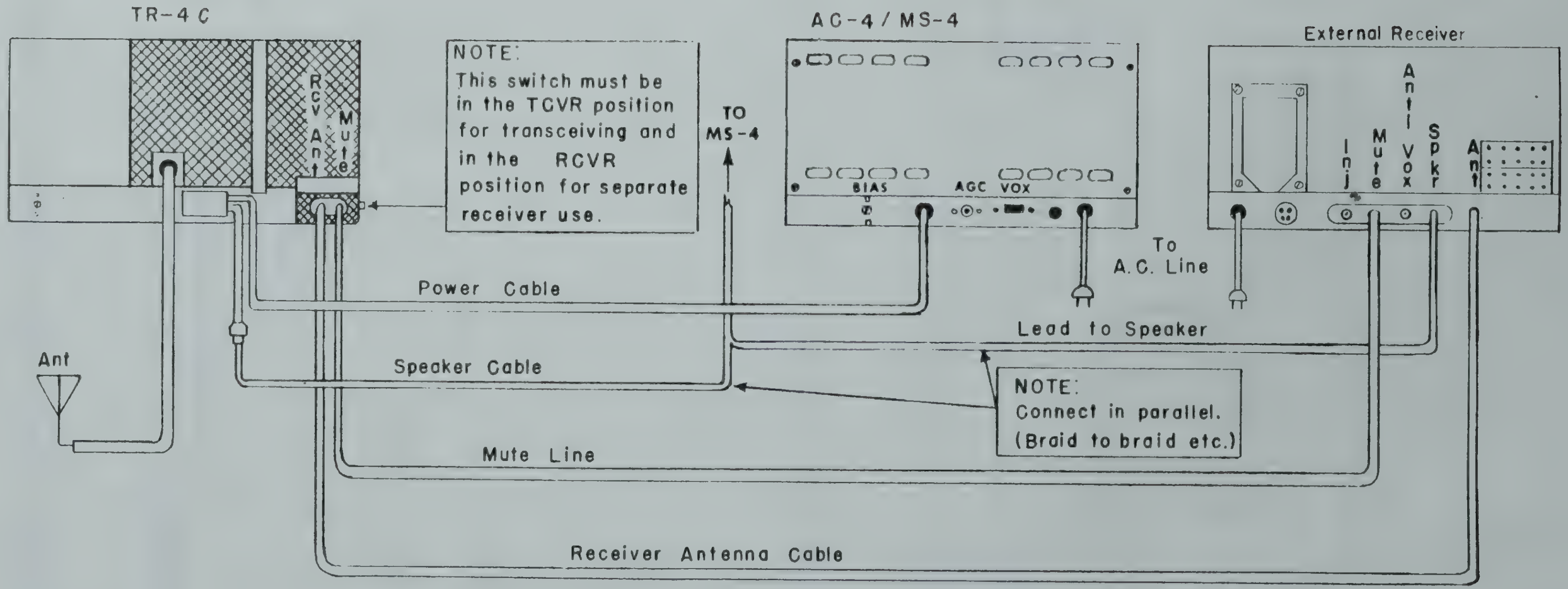

TR-4C
AC-4
L-4B
L-4PS
REL. OUTOUT ADJ.
HI VOLTAGE
XMTG. ALC
BIAS
AGC. VOX
A.C. LINE
PWR.
R.F.
OUT
IN
VOX
OUT
AC
PWR
A.C. LINE
XMTR. PWR. CABLE
VOX CABLE
ANT.
L-4B POWER CABLE
XMTR. AGC CABLE
GROUND STRAP
XMTR. R.F. OUTPUT CABLE
GROUND

Figure 2–8. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply and the L–4B Linear Amplifier


TR-4 C
Rcv Ant
Mute
Ant
TO MS-4
AC-4 / MS-4
BIAS
AGC
VOX
External Receiver
Inj
Mute
Ant Vox
Spkr
Ant
To A.C. Line
Power Cable
Lead to Speaker
Speaker Cable
Mute Line
Receiver Antenna Cable

NOTE:
This switch must be in the TCVR position for transceiving and in the RCVR position for separate receiver use.

NOTE:
Connect in parallel.
(Braid to braid etc.)

Figure 2–9. Connecting an External Receiver

CHAPTER III
OPERATION

3-1. GENERAL.

Figure 3-1 illustrates and describes all front panel controls and indicators on the TR–4C Transceiver. Controls and connectors located on the rear and sides of the unit are described under "other controls" below. Rear chassis connectors are identified in figure 2-2.

3-2. MODE SWITCH. In the SSB position, the receiver portion functions until the transmitter is energized either by talking into the microphone or actuating the microphone push-to-talk switch. The transmitter then emits an upper or lower sideband signal depending on the setting of the SIDEBAND switch. In the X-CW position, the receiver portion functions until the key is closed. The TR–4C then goes into the transmit mode, a CW sidetone is energized and the carrier is shifted approximately 1 kHz from the received frequency. The unit will remain in transmit during CW keying and will return to receive when keying is stopped briefly. NOTE: The SIDEBAND switch must be in the X position when the Mode switch is on X-CW or X-AM. It should also be noted that if the relays fail to close occasionally when the key is used, advance the VOX gain (screwdriver adjust on the right side of the chassis) until positive relay action is obtained. In the X-AM position, a controlled carrier screen modulator is incorporated for AM transmission and a diode detector is used for AM reception. Transmit and receive switching is accomplished by VOX or push-to-talk as on SSB.

3-3. BLANKER SWITCH. The noise blanker may be left on except when there is a strong signal within 5 kHz of the received signal. A strong signal which falls within the 10 kHz wide crystal filter in the noise blanker, and outside the 2.1 kHz crystal filter in the TR–4C, will operate the noise blanker gate circuit causing distortion products. This limitation in the noise blanker is caused by the necessity of having a bandwidth in the blanker wide enough to minimize stretching of noise pulses before blanking. Usually this limitation is no problem under normal operating conditions.

3-4. VFO DIAL. This dial consists of 2 transparent discs which display concentric scales and which rotate at different speeds. There are 2 scales on each disc. The upper scale on each disc is used for all bands except 20 meters where the lower scale is used. Zero to 100 kHz is indicated on one disc and hundreds of kHz is indicated on the other. The frequency of the operating signal is the sum of the frequencies indicated by the BAND switch and the VFO dial, for example:

BAND switch frequency	7.000 MHz
100 kHz dial	.200
1 kHz dial	.072
Operating frequency	7.272 MHz

This dial may be calibrated over a short range by the following procedure:

a. Set the Mode switch to CAL.
b. Tune the TR–4C to zero beat with the nearest 100 kHz calibrator signal.
c. Hold the tuning knob stationary and rotate the knob skirt until the dial displays the correct frequency.

3-5. TUNING PROCEDURE.

> CAUTION
>
> Under no circumstances should operation of the TR–4C be attempted until it is connected to a proper antenna or a dummy load. Always allow a two minute warm up period after the TR -4C is turned on before transmitting.

3-6. BIAS ADJUSTMENT. Before any type of operation is attempted, it will be necessary to set the PA bias to the correct value. Proceed as follows:

a. Turn on the TR–4C with the RCVR GAIN control.
b. Rotate the XMTR GAIN control fully counterclockwise.

(continued on page 3–5)

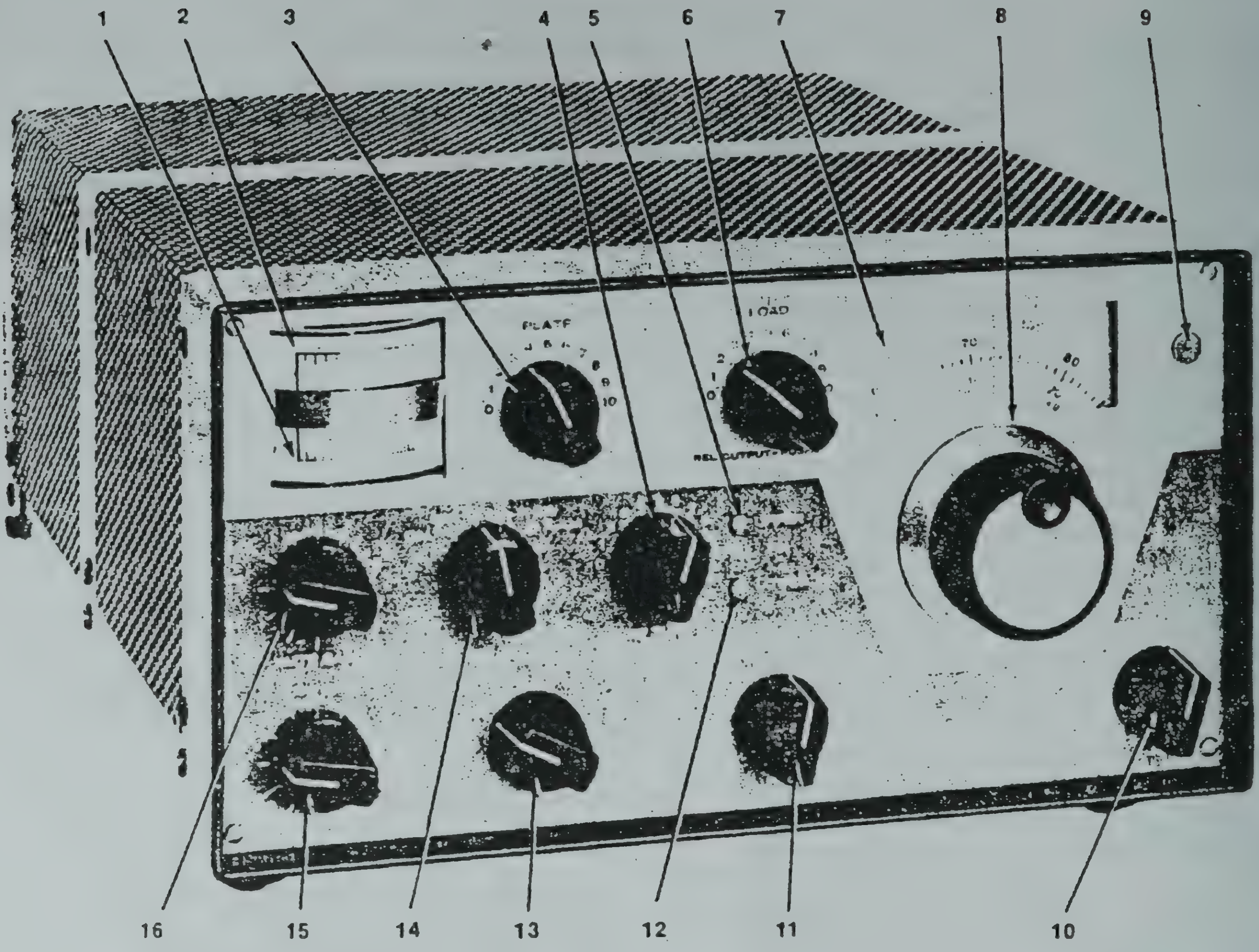

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
PLATE
LOAD
16
15
14
13
12
11
10

Figure 3–1. Front Panel Controls

FRONT PANEL CONTROLS

1. S meter: Indicates relative level of received signals. Indicates transmitter AGC when transmitting.
2. Plate meter: Indicates plate current in the final amplifier. Indicates relative RF power when LOAD control (6) is pushed in.
3. PLATE control: Tunes power amplifier pi-network circuit for resonance.
4. RF TUNE control: Peak tunes the receiver RF amplifier, the transmitter driver grid and plate tuned circuits.
5. UPPER sideband indicator lamp: Glows when upper sideband is selected.
6. LOAD control: Matches the TR–4C to the impedance of the antenna. Push in to display relative RF power on plate meter (2).
7. VFO dial: Displays portion of operating frequency from zero to 600 kHz. Reading must be added to BAND switch frequency setting for complete operating frequency.
8. VFO control: Adjusts frequency setting of dial (7).
9. VFO indicator lamp: Glows only when TR–4C VFO is operating.
10. BLANKER switch: Provides on/off control for R. L. Drake's Model 34–PNB Noise Blanker (an accessory).
11. SIDEBAND switch: Selects upper or lower sideband and lights appropriate indicator lamp (5 or 12).
12. LOWER sideband indicator lamp: Glows when lower sideband is selected.
13. BAND switch: Selects the desired amateur band.
14. Mode switch: Selects the desired mode of operation. In CAL position, it switches on the 100 kHz crystal calibrator (operable in transmit or receiver mode).
15. RCVR GAIN control: Dual control. Knob controls the receiver audio level, and provides a power on/off control at the extreme counterclockwise position. Lever controls the maximum RF gain of the receiver.
16. XMTR GAIN control: Adjusts the microphone gain on AM and SSB. In CW mode it adjusts the RF drive.

OTHER CONTROLS

Right Side (not illustrated).

PHONE jack: Provides a connection for headphones or external speaker.

MIC jack: Provides a connection for microphone. Mates with connector S-230 furnished with the TR–4C.

VOX control: Adjusts the gain of the VOX amplifier and the antenna relay release time on CW.

ANTIVOX control: Adjusts the gain of the ANTIVOX amplifier.

ZERO control: Adjusts the no-signal display of the S meter to S1.

KEY jack: Provides a connection for CW key. With key connected, transmitter is disabled for all modes of operation and receiver is disabled for AM unless the key is closed.

Left Side (not illustrated).

RCVR/TCVR switch: Selects either the TR–4C Receiver or external receiver.

Rear Chassis (Refer to figure 2-2).

Ground terminal: Provides a connection for earth ground.

SIDE TONE control: Adjusts the level of the CW sidetone with respect to the received signal. For no sidetone, rotate fully counterclockwise.

LIGHTS switch: Changes intensity of dial lamps to dim (D) or bright (B).

Antenna connector: Provides a connection for the station antenna (SO-239).

Power connector: Provides a connection for either AC–4 or DC–4 Power Supply.

External Receiver Antenna jack: Provides a connection for an external receiver.

External Receiver Mute jack: Provides a connection for muting an external receiver. It may be used with any receiver which requires a DC path to ground for receiving and an open circuit for muting. All R. L. Drake receivers have this feature.

NOTE

Rear chassis markings *above* the CAUTION notice identify external cable connectors when TR--4C VHF Modification Kit is used.

c. Turn the SIDEBAND switch to its counterclockwise position.
d. Turn the Mode switch to X-CW.
e. Adjust the Power Supply (AC–4 or DC–4) bias control for a reading of 0.1 Amperes on the plate current meter.

3-7. TUNE UP. Do not allow plate current to exceed 0.1 Amperes for more than 6 seconds with the PLATE control not tuned for minimum plate current or maximum RF output.

CAUTION

> Failure to observe the warning above will result in rapid final amplifier tube deterioration due to excessive plate dissipation.

The final amplifier pi-network will match a nominal 50 ohm load. The VSWR may be as high as 2:1 on all bands except 80 meters where a lower VSWR may be required. On 80 meters an external antenna matching network may be required.

Preset the controls as follows:

a. Select the desired band with the BAND switch.
b. Select the desired operating frequency with the VFO tuning knob.
c. Rotate the XMTR GAIN control full counterclockwise.
d. Rotate the LOAD control full counterclockwise.
e. Place the SIDEBAND control in the X position.
f. Place the Mode switch in the SSB position.
g. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum noise or signal as indicated by the S meter.

Rotate the Mode switch to the X-CW position and advance the XMTR GAIN control until the plate current meter moves up scale slightly. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum plate current and quickly tune the PLATE control for a dip in plate current. After the dip is found, rotate the XMTR GAIN control clockwise until plate current no longer increases.

Depress the LOAD control and alternately adjust the PLATE and LOAD controls in small increments for maximum RF output. Release the LOAD control and adjust the PLATE control for minimum plate current. At this point the plate meter should indicate a plate current between 0.380 and 0.500 Amperes. The reading will depend on the line voltage, antenna match, tube condition, etc. Increasing the setting of the LOAD control beyond the point at which maximum RF output occurs will result in excessive plate dissipation. It should not be necessary to advance the LOAD control beyond 4.5 to obtain maximum RF output. Further advancement indicates that the VSWR of the antenna system is too high and leaving the control set beyond this point is likely to result in excessive harmonic radiation. The above procedure should be completed as quickly as possible and the Mode switch should be returned to the SSB position.

When the Mode switch is in the X-CW position, the screen voltage on the final amplifier tubes is reduced to prevent overheating. When the switch is in the SSB position, this voltage is increased so that an input power of 300 watts can be obtained.

3-8. SSB OPERATION.

In the following discussion, it is assumed that the TR–4C has already been tuned up on the desired band as described in paragraph 3-7. Preset the controls as follows:

SIDEBAND	–On desired sideband as shown by indicator lights.
Mode	–On SSB.
XMTR GAIN	--Fully counterclockwise.
RF gain (lever)	–Fully clockwise.
RCVR GAIN (knob)	–Fully counterclockwise (do not turn off power).
VOX gain	–Fully clockwise.
ANTIVOX	–Fully counterclockwise.

While talking into the microphone in a normal voice, increase the XMTR GAIN control until the S meter starts kicking up scale above its resting value. With no modulation, the S meter will rest up scale on transmit. This indicates that the transmitter AGC is starting to operate and the transmitter has maximum output. Continue talking and reduce the VOX gain until a point is reached where further reduction results in a too frequent relay drop out. Increase the AF GAIN until received signals are of the desired level. This may cause the transceiver to cycle back and forth between transmit and receive. Adjust the ANTIVOX control until the cycling stops. If the push-to-talk switch on the microphone is properly connected as described under Installa-

tion, it may be depressed at any time, thus overriding the VOX system. If VOX operation is not desired, turn the VOX gain control fully counterclockwise.

On SSB, the TR–4C transmits on exactly the same frequency on which it receives. Therefore, be sure that you have the signals tuned in so that the voices sound normal before you answer another station's CQ, or break another QSO. Otherwise, you will not be transmitting exactly on frequency. If a key is used, it must either be closed or unplugged from the KEY jack for SSB and AM operation.

3-9. CW OPERATION.

To operate CW, connect a key to the KEY jack. If an electronic keyer is used, connect it for grid block keying. Leave the key in the open condition. The TR–4C uses shifted carrier CW. With this system, it is possible to transmit approximately on the received station's frequency without being zero beat while receiving. The transmitter BFO is shifted from the received signal frequency by approximately 1 kHz. The VFO dial reads the correct frequency of a received signal when the signal is tuned for zero beat.

To receive CW signals, place the Mode switch in the X-CW position and the SIDEBAND switch in the X position. Tune in a CW signal for an audio pitch of about 1 kHz and adjust the audio gain control knob for a normal listening level.

To transmit, depress the key, and adjust the XMTR GAIN control until it is just below the point at which plate current no longer increases. Do not advance it beyond this point. Advance the SIDETONE control on the rear of the chassis until the sidetone reaches the desired volume. Adjusting the RCVR GAIN knob controls both the received signal and sidetone level.

The TR–4C uses automatic transmit/receive switching. This means that it will automatically transmit when the key is depressed and will remain in the transmit condition during keying. It will return to the receive condition when the key is released for a brief period. If this period is too long, decrease the VOX gain. Manual transmit/receive switching can be accomplished by connecting an external switch to the push-to-talk circuit of the MIC jack.

3-10. AM OPERATION.

For AM operation, the Mode switch should be in the X-AM position and the SIDEBAND switch should be in the X position. If a key is used, it should be left closed or unplugged. Tune in AM signals for most pleasing audio. This will not necessarily coincide with maximum S meter reading. The same procedure should be followed in setting the various gain controls on AM as on SSB, except that the XMTR GAIN control should be adjusted for plate current peaks of 0.2 to 0.25 Amperes when talking into the microphone in a normal voice. Care should be taken to stay within these limits since the transmitter AGC does not operate on AM.

3-11. OPERATION NEAR BAND EDGES.

When operating near the edge of a band, be sure to check the dial calibration as described under tuning procedure. When working SSB be sure to use the sideband that will be inside the band. On AM and CW, the transmitted carrier will be 1 kHz higher or lower than the indicated dial frequency.

3-12. OPERATION WITH A LINEAR AMPLIFIER.

Since the TR–4C Transceiver is conservatively rated at 300 watts PEP input, it is doubtful if it would be worthwhile to use a linear amplifier with a power rating of less than 1000 to 2000 watts PEP input. A triode type grounded grid linear amplifier with a 1000 to 2000 watt PEP rating will present a satisfactory load to the TR–4C.

If the linear amplifier is of the grounded cathode type with high impedance input, it will be necessary to install a resistive pad between the TR–4C and the linear amplifier that will present the proper impedance to the TR–4C. Such a pad must be made of non-inductive resistors and must have adequate power handling capacity. Antenna switching should be accomplished as shown in figure 2-7. Most linear amplifiers have these relays built-in.

To properly operate the TR–4C with a linear amplifier proceed as follows:

a. With the TR–4C connected to the linear amplifier tune the RF TUNE control as described in paragraph 3-7 g.
b. Set the LOAD control to the setting indicated on the chart below, for the band desired, when using a linear amplifier with a 50 ohm input.

BAND	50 Ohm LOAD Setting
3.5 MHz	2
7.0 MHz	3
14.0 MHz	2
21.0 MHz	3
28.5 MHz	2

c. Tune the PLATE control for minimum plate current.
d. Switch the Mode switch to the desired mode of operation.
e. Advance the XMTR GAIN control until the desired amount of input to the linear amplifier is obtained.

Note that when the TR–4C is loaded much below maximum RF output the AGC does not function properly and flat topping in the TR–4C may result. Care should be taken to keep the XMTR GAIN below the point where this occurs. This can be accomplished by making sure that the average peak plate current does not exceed one half of the plate current obtained on tune up.

If your linear amplifier has AGC output, connect it to the TR–4C as shown in figure 2-7. If the TR–4C is properly tuned, this should prevent flat topping on SSB regardless of the XMTR GAIN control setting. However, it will not prevent overdrive on AM since the AGC does not function in this mode.

3-13. NOVICE OPERATION.

If used on the novice bands, maximum legal input power is 250 Watts which occurs when the Plate Meter reads .385 Ampere. To realize the most useful output under these conditions, readjustment of the Bias control on the Power Supply is suggested. Follow the Bias Adjustment procedure in paragraph 3-6, except set bias control on AC–4 for .025 Ampere plate current (one fourth of the normal setting). If the transceiver is used on both novice band and by another operator on SSB or AM, the bias must be readjusted to .1 Ampere before voice operation is attempted.

To load the transmitter for novice operation, preset controls as described in paragraph 3-6. Turn the MODE switch to X–CW and advance XMTR GAIN for a very slight increase in plate current. Tune RF TUNE for a peak in plate current, being careful not to exceed .385 Ampere, and quickly tune PLATE control for a dip in plate current. Turn XMTR GAIN control fully clockwise. Adjust LOAD control clockwise and then redip the PLATE control. This procedure should be done repeatedly in small increments. Stop advancing LOAD control when plate current reaches .385 Ampere with the PLATE dipped, or when output power no longer increases, whichever occurs first. Reduce XMTR GAIN until plate current just starts to drop. The transmitter is now ready for operation.

CHAPTER IV
THEORY OF OPERATION

4-1. GENERAL.

The TR–4C is a 300 Watt HF single sideband transceiver which covers the 80 through 10 meter amateur bands. AM and CW modes are also included. The TR–4C requires either an R. L. Drake AC–4, 120 V AC power supply, or an R. L. Drake DC–4, 12 V DC power supply. The TR–4C features a high-stability linear permeability tuned VFO and two 8 pole crystal lattice filters for sideband selection. Some of the circuits are common to both the transmit and receive functions. Refer to the block diagram figure 4-1 and the schematic diagram figure 5-5 as required to supplement the following discussion.

4-2. RECEIVER CIRCUITRY.

A signal entering the antenna terminal passes through the antenna switching contacts of the relay and is applied to the grid of the RF amplifier V7 through the selectivity of the L/C network formed by T9, T10 and a section of the RF TUNE capacitor C37. After being amplified, it is passed through an additional L/C network consisting of T7, T8 and the remaining section of C37, to the grid of the mixer V3B. At this point it is combined with a signal from the premixer system of the required frequency to yield a 9.0 MHz IF. The premixer system consists of a 4.9-5.5 MHz solid state permeability tuned VFO, a buffer Q2, a switchable overtone crystal oscillator V1A, the premixer pentode V1B and a cathode follower V3A.

The VFO signal output is applied to the grid of the premixer pentode through the buffer Q2 and its associated circuitry. For 80 and 20 meter operation, the VFO signal bypasses the premixer and is connected through the cathode follower to the mixer. On 40, 15 and 10 meters a signal from the crystal oscillator heterodynes with the VFO in the premixer, V1B, to produce the desired injection frequency. On 40 meters, for example, a 21.5 MHz overtone crystal and the appropriate coil L1 are switched into the crystal oscillator circuit. The output from the oscillator is coupled into the premixer pentode where it heterodynes with the 4.9-5.5 MHz VFO to produce an output frequency of 16.0-16.6 MHz. This output is coupled through the 16.0-16.6 MHz bandpass coupler, T3, and to the cathode follower, V3A. On 15 meters, a 35.5 MHz crystal is used with a 30.0-30.6 MHz coupler, T2, and on the three 10 meter ranges, 42.5, 43.0 and 43.6 MHz crystals are used with a 37.0-38.7 MHz coupler, T1.

The 9.0 MHz output of the mixer, V3B, passes through the impedance matching transformer T6 into the upper or lower sideband crystal filter. The setting of the SIDEBAND knob determines which crystal filter is used. From the crystal filter the signal passes through the impedance matching transformer, T13, and is amplified by the 9 MHz receiver IF amplifier system, V11 and V12 and the IF transformers T11 and T12. The output of T12 is applied to the AGC amplifier, V13A, to the product detector, V16, and to the diode detector, V2.

The AGC amplifier V13A is biased beyond cutoff to provide an AGC delay. When sufficient RF voltage from T12 is applied to its grid, plate current flows during part of the cycle. This causes amplified negative voltage to appear across its plate load resistor R63, thus charging C115. This negative control voltage is applied to the grids of V7, V11 and V12. C115 discharges through R63 with a time constant of approximately one second. Rotating the RF Gain control counterclockwise applies increasingly more negative bias to the AGC controlled grids, thus limiting their maximum gain.

The product detector tube, V16, consists of a 9 MHz crystal oscillator formed by the cathode, grid 1 and grid 2. A product detector is formed by the cathode, grid 3, and the plate. The IF signal is applied to grid 3 where it heterodynes with the BFO voltage in the tube. The resulting audio signal is of sufficient amplitude to drive the audio preamplifier transistor, Q5, which drives the audio output tube, V17.

The IF signal from T12 is also applied to V2 which functions as a diode detector and an audio amplifier in the AM receive mode. The output of this stage is also fed to the Mode switch and is connected to V17 through the Audio Gain control when the Mode switch is in the X-AM position. The output of V17 is applied through the audio output transformer to the phone jack, J5, and to pin 12 of the power connector. Also, output from the plate of V17 is applied to the anti vox rectifier, D6, through the ANTIVOX control.

A 100 kHz crystal calibrator, V5, is switched on when the Mode switch is in the CAL position. Its output is coupled to the grid of the RF amplifier V7.

The S meter in the TR–4C operates in a bridge circuit with the plates of a receiver IF amplifier, V11, and the transmitter IF amplifier, V15 in one leg of the bridge and plate of the audio output tube V17 in the other leg. Receiver AGC voltage applied to V11 on receive and transmit causes these tubes to draw less current, thus unbalancing the bridge, which causes the S meter to read up scale. The bridge is balanced on receive by the ZERO control. On transmit, the meter may rest up scale with no modulation.

4-3. TRANSMITTER CIRCUITRY.

Audio input from the microphone is applied to one section of the microphone amplifier V18 where it is amplified and applied to the remaining section of this tube through one section of the XMTR GAIN control. Output from the cathode of the second triode of V18 is applied to the balanced modulator through the Mode switch for SSB operation. Output from the plate is applied to the grid of the AM screen modulator, V14, and to the grid of the first VOX amplifier triode, V19A, through the VOX control. The output from V19A is rectified by the VOX rectifier, D5, and the resulting positive DC voltage is applied to the grid of the relay control triode, V19B, causing it to conduct and to close the transmit/receive relay.

Audio voltage from V17 is rectified by the anti vox rectifier, D6, which supplies negative voltage to the grid of V19B, and preventing it from conducting and closing the relay when the microphone picks up audio from the speaker.

Cut off bias for the relay tube is obtained from a voltage divider. When the microphone push-to-talk switch is activated the cut off bias is grounded, causing V19B to conduct and close the relay.

RF from the 9.0 MHz crystal oscillator portion of the product detector tube V16 is applied to the balanced diode modulator through the carrier balance control. On SSB the audio from V18 is also applied to the balanced modulator and the result is a double sideband suppressed carrier signal which is applied to the transmitter IF amplifier. The amplified output is coupled through T13 to the upper or lower crystal filter where the undesired sideband is filtered out. The resulting SSB signal is coupled through T6 to the transmitter mixer, V4, where it is combined with a premixer signal of the proper frequency to give output on the desired amateur band.

Output from V4 passes through the L/C circuit, T7, T8 and C37, and is applied to the grid of the driver tube, V6. Here it is amplified and applied to the grids of V8, V9, and V10 through the L/C network, T9, T10 and the other half of C37.

Three parellel power amplifier tubes boost the signal to a power level suitable for transmission. The output impedance of the power amplifier tubes is matched to a 52 ohm load by means of the pi network circuit composed of L8, L9, C94 and C95.

At the first trace of flat topping in the final amplifier tubes, a small amount of grid current will be drawn. This produces a voltage drop across R47. The small negative going voltage thus obtained is applied through R46 to the cathode of V13B where it is amplified. The amplified negative voltage is applied to the grid of V15, thus reducing the level of the driving signal.

When the Mode switch is placed in the X-CW position, V2 becomes an audio phase shift oscillator which is grid-block keyed along with the transmitter mixer, V4, and the driver, V6. The audio output from V2 is applied to the grid of the

product detector tube V16, through the SIDETONE control, to provide audio output from the speaker for CW monitoring. Audio output from V2 is also applied to the grid of the VOX amplifier tube, V19A, which causes relays K1 and K2 to close. The relays turn on the transmitter, cause the 9.0 MHz oscillator to be shifted to 9.001 MHz and apply a variable source of DC, controlled by half of the XMTR GAIN control, to the balanced modulator. The DC voltage which unbalances the modulator increases the carrier to a suitable level. The resulting 9.001 MHz signal from the balanced modulator is amplified by V15 and coupled into the crystal filter. The SIDEBAND control must be in the "X" position to allow the signal to pass. A screen resistor is switched into the final amplifier screen circuit to prevent excessive screen current in the X-CW position of the Mode switch.

When the Mode switch is placed in the X-AM position the AM screen modulator V14 is inserted in series with the final amplifier screen supply and a constant voltage is applied to the balanced modulator. Relay K2 shifts the 9 MHz oscillator to 9.001 on transmit just as it does on X-CW. Vox and PTT functions are the same on AM as on SSB.

When relay K1 is closed, either by the VOX circuit or the push-to-talk switch, the cathode of V3B, V7, V11 and V12 are isolated from ground which disables the receiver. The cathodes of V4, V6, V8, V9, V10 and V15 are connected to ground which actuates the transmitter. Also, the antenna is switched from the receiver input to the final amplifier tank circuit. If the TCVR/RCVR switch is in the RCVR position, the RCVR MUTE jack is grounded through RFC 11 and RFC 7 and the antenna is connected to the RCVR ANT jack instead of T9 in the receive condition of the relays.

Pushing in the LOAD control disconnects the plate current meter from the final amplifier cathode circuit and connects it to the diode D9 and its associated circuitry. This network samples the RF output voltage at the antenna connection, rectifies it, and applies it across the meter.

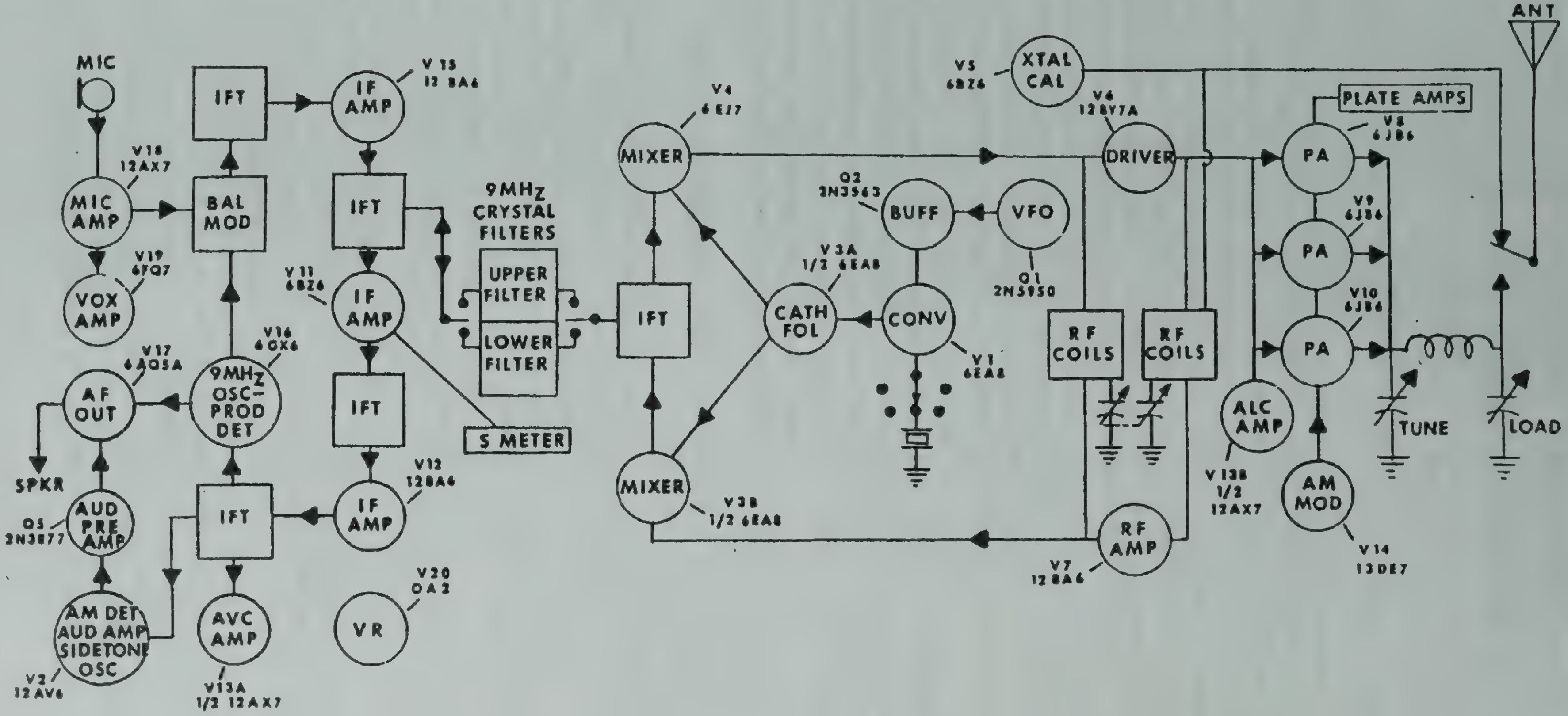

MIC
V18 12AX7
MIC AMP
V19 6FQ7
VOX AMP
IFT
BAL MOD
V15 12BA6
IF AMP
IFT
V11 6BZ6
IF AMP
IFT
V12 12BA6
IF AMP
V16 6GX6
9MHz OSC-PROD DET
V17 6AQ5A
AF OUT
SPKR
Q5 2N3877
AUD PRE AMP
AM DET AUD AMP SIDETONE OSC
V2 12AV6
IFT
AVC AMP
V13A 1/2 12AX7
V20 OA2
VR
9MHz CRYSTAL FILTERS
UPPER FILTER
LOWER FILTER
S METER
IFT
V4 6EJ7
MIXER
MIXER
V3B 1/2 6EA8
V3A 1/2 6EA8
CATH FOL
Q2 2N3563
BUFF
VFO
Q1 2N5950
CONV
V1 6EA8
V5 6BZ6
XTAL CAL
V6 12BY7A
DRIVER
RF COILS
RF COILS
RF AMP
V7 12BA6
ALC AMP
V13B 1/2 12AX7
PLATE AMPS
V8 6JB6
PA
V9 6JB6
PA
V10 6JB6
PA
AM MOD
V14 13DE7
TUNE
LOAD
ANT

Figure 4–1. Block Diagram

CHAPTER V
MAINTENANCE

5-1. SERVICE DATA.

We will check and align your transceiver at the factory for a nominal fee if it has not been tampered with. Transportation charges are extra. Any necessary repairs will be made on a time and material basis. Please write or call the factory for authorization before returning your unit for alignment or service. Address your request for authorization to:

R. L. Drake Company
540 Richard Street
Miamisburg, Ohio 45342
ATTN: Customer Service Department
Telephone: (Area Code 513) 866-3211
(Code-A-Phone Service after
1630 Hours E.S.T.)

WARNING
Extreme caution should be exercised when the top and bottom covers are removed. High voltage which is present at several points can cause a lethal electrical shock. Repairs and adjustments should be made only by a qualified electronics technician. Disconnect the Power Supply from the TR–4C before removing covers.

5-2. TOP COVER REMOVAL.

Remove the three top screws on each side of the TR–4C and remove the cover by first pulling up on the rear and then the front of the cabinet.

5-3. BOTTOM COVER REMOVAL.

Remove the three bottom screws on each side of the TR–4C and lift the chassis out of the bottom cover.

5-4. TUBE REPLACEMENT.

In general, most trouble in electronic equipment of good design is due to tube failure. The best method of finding defective tubes is by direct substitution. It is best not to rely too heavily on tube checkers. The TR–4C has been designed so that, with the exception of V8, V9 and V10, tubes can be replaced without need for realignment. These tubes are to be replaced with a matched set of the same brand as originally supplied. If a different brand is used, alignment of T7, T8, T9 and final amplifier neutralization is recommended. Matched sets of Sylvania 6JB6's are available directly from the factory. To replace the 6JB6 tubes, it is necessary to remove only the top of the final amplifier cage. To do this, remove the sheet metal screws holding the PA cover to the cage. A disc-handle is provided on the cover to facilitate removal. To replace the PA cover, simply reverse the process. Be sure the parasitic suppressors do not short to the cage.

5-5. TROUBLE SHOOTING.

Careful consideration has been given in the design of the TR–4C to keep maintenance problems to a minimum. However, it is quite possible that some problem will arise which cannot be cured by tube substitution. If this occurs, it is suggested that the TR–4C be returned to the dealer or you may write to the Customer Service Department at the address given in paragraph 5-1. Be sure to describe the problem in detail. Include full information concerning external connections, control settings, tubes substituted, serial number, etc. Always include the serial number when requesting service information. Before returning equipment to the factory, it is necessary to get prior authorization. In case of malfunction, first check the power supply fuse, the filament fuse in the TR–4C and the number 12 fuse lamp near the relay assembly for continuity. The voltage and resistance charts in this chapter should be valuable in isolating minor problems.

However, no attempt should be made to service the TR–4C unless you are thoroughly familiar with electronic circuitry and servicing technique. Care should be taken not to disturb the lead dress in the TR–4C since several circuits are quite critical in this regard.

5-6. TEST EQUIPMENT.

Alignment of TR–4C will require the following equipment:

a. A general coverage receiver capable of receiving WWV.
b. An 11 Megohm VTVM.
c. An alignment load consisting of a 1000 Ohm non-inductive resistor in series with a .005 uF disc ceramic capacitor.
d. A 52 Ohm dummy load.

WARNING

Before receiver alignment is attempted, the plate and screen power leads of the amplifier tubes should be disconnected where they pass through the partition under the chassis. Be sure the power is disconnected before this is attempted, or serious electrical shock may result.

5-7. ALIGNMENT PROCEDURES.

5-8. CRYSTAL CALIBRATOR. To align the crystal calibrator perform the following steps:

a. Let the TR–4C warm up for 30 minutes.
b. Preset the XMTR GAIN control fully counterclockwise.
c. Set the Mode switch to CAL.
d. Tune in WWV on the general coverage receiver with the BFO off.
e. Connect a wire from the receiver antenna terminal to V5 of the TR–4C. Wrap the wire around the tube a turn or two.
f. Adjust C45, located on top of the TR–4C chassis, until the calibrator signal is zero beat with the unmodulated WWV carrier.

5-9. 9.0 MHz OSCILLATOR.

a. Let the TR–4C warm up for 30 minutes.
b. Set the Mode switch in the SSB position.
c. Turn up the Audio Gain control until noise is audible in the speaker.
d. While switching the SIDEBAND knob back and forth, adjust C130, located on top of the chassis near the rear edge, until the pitch of the noise is the same on both positions.

5-10. INJECTION CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR.

a. Set the VTVM to its lowest DC negative volt scale and set the pointer to about center scale with VTVM zero adjust control.
b. Connect the common lead of the VTVM to the TR–4C chassis and the DC lead to the test point which is connected to pin 9 of V1.
c. Set BAND switch to 7.0 MHz and adjust L1 for maximum negative DC voltage.
d. Switch to 21.0 MHz and adjust L5 for maximum as in Step c.
e. Switch to 29.1 MHz and adjust L2 for maximum as in Step c.
f. The 28.0, the 28.5 and the 29.1 MHz positions should have about the same negative voltage.

5-11. VFO ADJUSTMENT.

The permeability tuned VFO was carefully adjusted at the factory and should require no further alignment. If it does not appear to track from one end of its range to the other, it should be returned to the factory for realignment. Maximum calibration error is 1 kHz when calibrated to the nearest 100 kHz point.

5-12. INJECTION COUPLER.

a. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 7.3 MHz.
b. Connect the alignment load between pin 6 of V1B and ground and adjust T3 (top) for maximum S meter reading.
c. Connect the load from pin 9 of V3A and ground and adjust T3 (bottom) for maximum S meter reading.
d. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 21.300 MHz and repeat the procedure for T2. .
e. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 29.000 MHz and repeat the above procedure for T1. *Note:* On T1, adjust the bottom slug when the load is on pin 6 of V1B and the top slug when the load is on pin 9 on V3A.

Table 5–1. Resistance Chart

REF DES	Tube Type	MEASURED AT PIN								
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
V1	6EA8	9.5 K	2.5 Meg	20 K	0	Fil	9.6 K	220	220	150 K
V2	12AV6	3.3 Meg	Inf.	Fil	0	150 K	150 K	350 K	—	—
V3	6EA8	8.0 K	150 K	250 K	Fil	0	11 K	2.2 K	1 K	34 K
V4	6EJ7	25 K	660 K	23 K	Fil	0	0	11 K	9.5 K	0
V5	6BZ6	1 Meg	1 K	Fil	0	350 K	125 K	1 K	—	—
V6	12BY7A	25 K	67 K	0	0	0	Fil	8.5 K	25 K	0
V7	12BA6	2.8 Meg	0	Fil	0	11 K	10K	100	—	—
V8	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V9	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V10	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V11	6BZ6	2.5 Meg	150	0	Fil	10 K	13 K	0		
V12	12BA6	2.5 Meg	0	Fil	0	10 K	13 K	68		—
V13	12AX7	1 Meg	22 K	45 K	0	0	2.2 Meg	55 K	48 K	Fil
V14	13DE7	8 K	2.5 Meg	2.5 Meg	Fil	0	2.2 Meg	22 Meg	0	Inf.
V15	12BA6	2 Meg	0	0	Fil	10 K	13 K	25 K	—	—
V16	6GX6	2.2 Meg	1 K	0	Fil	250 K	9.2 K	22 K	—	
V17	6AQ5	500 K	270	0	Fil	8.7 K	8 K	500 K		
V18	12AX7	350 K	6.8 Meg	0	0	Fil	350 K	500 K	3.3 K	N. C.
V19	6FQ7	12 K	4.5 Meg	0	Fil	0	100 K	620 K	820	1.6 Meg
V20	OA2	7.8 K	0	Inf.	0	7.8 K	Inf.	0		

REF DES	Transistor Type	MEASURED AT:		
		Emitter	Base	Collector
Q1	2N5950	Located in PTO		
Q2	2N3563	Located in PTO		
Q3	AT5059	0	5.6 K	43 K
Q4	2N3394	0	750	1.1 K
Q5	2N3877	1 K	56 K	6.8 K

NOTE:
All measurements were made with respect to ground with the power supply disconnected from the TR 4C. The BAND switch was on 7.0 MHz, the Mode switch was on CAL and the RCVR GAIN and XMTR GAIN controls were fully clockwise. The VOX, ANTI VOX and SIDETONE controls were fully clockwise and the ZERO control was set at the balance point. The accessory 34 PNB jumper plug was in the noise blanker jack.

Table 5–2. Voltage Chart

REF	Tube	MEASURED AT PIN								
DES	Type	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
V1	6EA8	122	-2	125	0	6.3*	250 245	2.6	2.6	-1.3
V2	12AV6	0 -1.6	13.0 0	12.6*	0	0 0.9	0 0.9	255 122		
V3	6EA8	155 150	0	98 150	6.3*	0	260 250	3.5 150	17 15.5	17 15.2
V4	6EJ7	155 2.8	0	NC	6.3*	0	0	270 230	175 145	
V5	6BZ6	-42 0	0.9 23	12.6*	6.3*	70 140	58 144	0.9 23		
V6	12BY7A	155 3.3	0	NC	0	0	6.3*	265 240	262 165	0
V7	12BA6	-.14	0	12.6*	0	235 230	98 110	1.25 150		
V8	6JB6	262 250	-60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	-60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V9	6JB6	262 250	-60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	-60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V10	6JB6	262 250	-60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	-60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V11	6BZ6	-.16	1.6 150	0	6.3*	235	125 150	0		
V12	12BA6	-.16	0	12.6*	0	240	105 150	1.1 150		
V13	12AX7	-.1 0	-61 -61	-59 -59	0	0	-.16	-61 -61	-59 -58	6.3*
V14	13DE7	260 250	11.4 11.2	11.4 11.2	12.6*	0	11.4 11.2	-1.0 -1.0	0	64 53
V15	12BA6	0	0	0	12.6*	248 140	155 144	155 1.3		
V16	6GX6	-6.0 -5.6	4.0	0	6.3*	140 140	140	0		
V17	6AQ5	0	7.2 6.8	0	6.3*	240 230	155 150	NC		
V18	12AX7	88 87	-.75	0	0	12.6*	130 125	0	1.23 1.1	NC
V19	6FQ7	240 165	-9.5 0	0	6.3*	0	67 87	0	1.5 1.27	TP
V20	OA2	146	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	0		

Table 5–2. Voltage Chart (continued)

REF DES	Transistor Type	MEASURED AT:		
		Emitter	Base	Collector
Q1	2N5950	Located in PTO		
Q2	2N3563	Located in PTO		
Q3	AT5059	0	0	61
Q4	2N3394	0	11.2	0
Q5	2N3877	2.3	2.8	48

NOTE:
All measurements were made with an 11 Megohm VTVM and were taken from ground. RF TUNE, PLATE and LOAD controls were set as described in paragraph 3-7. BAND switch was on 7.0 MHz. VFO dial was at 7.250 MHz and SIDEBAND was on X. Receive measurements were made with the Mode switch in the CAL position and the transmit measurements were made with the Mode switch in the X-CW position, with the following exception:

On V14, both receive and transmit measurements were made with the Mode switch in the X-AM position and with PTT line grounded.

The AC–4 Power Supply was used. Where two voltages are shown, the top is for receive and the bottom is for transmit. An "*" indicates AC voltage. The accessory 34--PNB jumper plug was in the noise blanker jack.

5-13. RECEIVER IF.

a. Peak the RF TUNE control on noise at 3.8 MHz.
b. Adjust T11 top and bottom and T12 top and bottom for maximum noise from the speaker.

5-14. BALANCED MODULATOR AND CARRIER BALANCE.

a. Disconnect the power supply and reconnect the screen and plate supply leads to the final amplifier tubes.
b. Reconnect power supply.
c. Connect dummy load to the antenna jack.
d. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum receiver gain.
e. Adjust bias per paragraph 3-6. With XMIT GAIN fully counterclockwise, place the Mode switch in X--CW position and SIDEBAND switch in X position.
f. If the plate current exceeds 0.15 Ampere, adjust the RF TUNE for 0.15 Ampere maximum.
g. If plate current is less than 0.15 Amperes, adjust Carrier Balance pot until plate current reaches 0.15 Amperes.
h. Peak T14 for maximum plate current. Detune the RF TUNE control to prevent plate current from exceeding 0.15 Amperes.
i. Alternately adjust the Carrier Balance control and C127 for minimum plate current. There should be no difference in plate current between the two positions of the SIDEBAND switch.

5-15. FILTER MATCHING TRANSFORMER.

a. Adjust the S meter ZERO pot for zero S meter deflection (S-1).
b. With the SIDEBAND switch in USB, tune in the calibrator signal at 3.8 MHz for maximum S meter reading.
c. Adjust the RF TUNE control until the S meter reads S-9.
d. Turn the VFO control clockwise to increase the audio frequency until the S meter drops to S-5.
e. Adjust T6 and T13 for maximum S meter reading.
f. Repeat Steps b. through e.
g. Center the 9.0 MHz oscillator as described in paragraph 5-9.

5-16. MIXER AND RF ALIGNMENT.

a. Tune up the TR–4C at 3.8 MHz for maximum power output into a dummy load. Set the RF TUNE control on 5. Adjust the XMTR GAIN control for 0.2 Amperes plate current as indicated by the plate meter. Adjust T7 bottom and T9 bottom for maximum plate current.
b. Tune up the TR–4C at 7.3 MHz and repeat a. above, with the RF TUNE control on 6, by adjusting T8 top and T10 top.
c. Set RF TUNE control on 5. Tune up the TR–4C at 14.3 MHz and repeat a. above by adjusting T7 top and T9 top.
d. Tune up the TR–4C at 29.7 MHz (crystal not supplied). With the RF TUNE control at 9¾ repeat a. above by adjusting T8 bottom and T10 bottom.
e. Set RF TUNE control on 5. Tune up the TR–4C at 21.3 MHz and repeat a. above by adjusting L6 and L7.

5-17. PA NEUTRALIZATION.

a. Attach an RF output indicator between the TR-4C and the dummy load. If no external output indicator is available, the TR-4C's own RF output indicator may be used.
b. Tune up the TR-4C on 29.0 MHz for maximum power output into a dummy load.
c. Reduce plate current to 0.2 Amperes with the XMTR GAIN control.
d. While tuning the PLATE control back and forth through resonance, adjust C76, using an insulated screwdriver, until the plate current dip and maximum RF output occur simultaneously. An insulated screwdriver is required because the rotor of C76 is connected to + 250 Volts DC.

5-18. TRANSMITTER IF NEUTRALIZATION.

a. With microphone plugged into TR-4C, turn the VOX gain fully counterclockwise and turn XMTR GAIN fully clockwise. Place the Mode switch in the SSB position.
b. While talking into the microphone, increase the RCVR GAIN control setting until speech can be heard from the speaker.
c. Adjust C168 for minimum output from speaker.
d. If over one turn of adjustment is required, it will be necessary to realign T14, C127 and the Carrier Balance control.

5-19. S METER ADJUSTMENT.

With the RF GAIN control fully counterclockwise adjust R187 for an S meter reading of 60 dB over S-9.

Table 5–3. Tube and Semiconductor Complement

REF DES	Component Type	FUNCTION	
		Transmitter	Receiver
V1	6EA8	Pre-Mixer/Xtal Oscillator	Pre-Mixer/Xtal Oscillator
V2	12AV6	Sidetone Oscillator	Diode Det/1st AF Amplifier
V3	6EA8	Cathode Fol.	Mixer/Cathode Fol.
V4	6EJ7	Mixer	—
V5	6BZ6	—	Crystal Calibrator
V6	12BY7	Driver	—
V7	12BA6	—	RF Amplifier

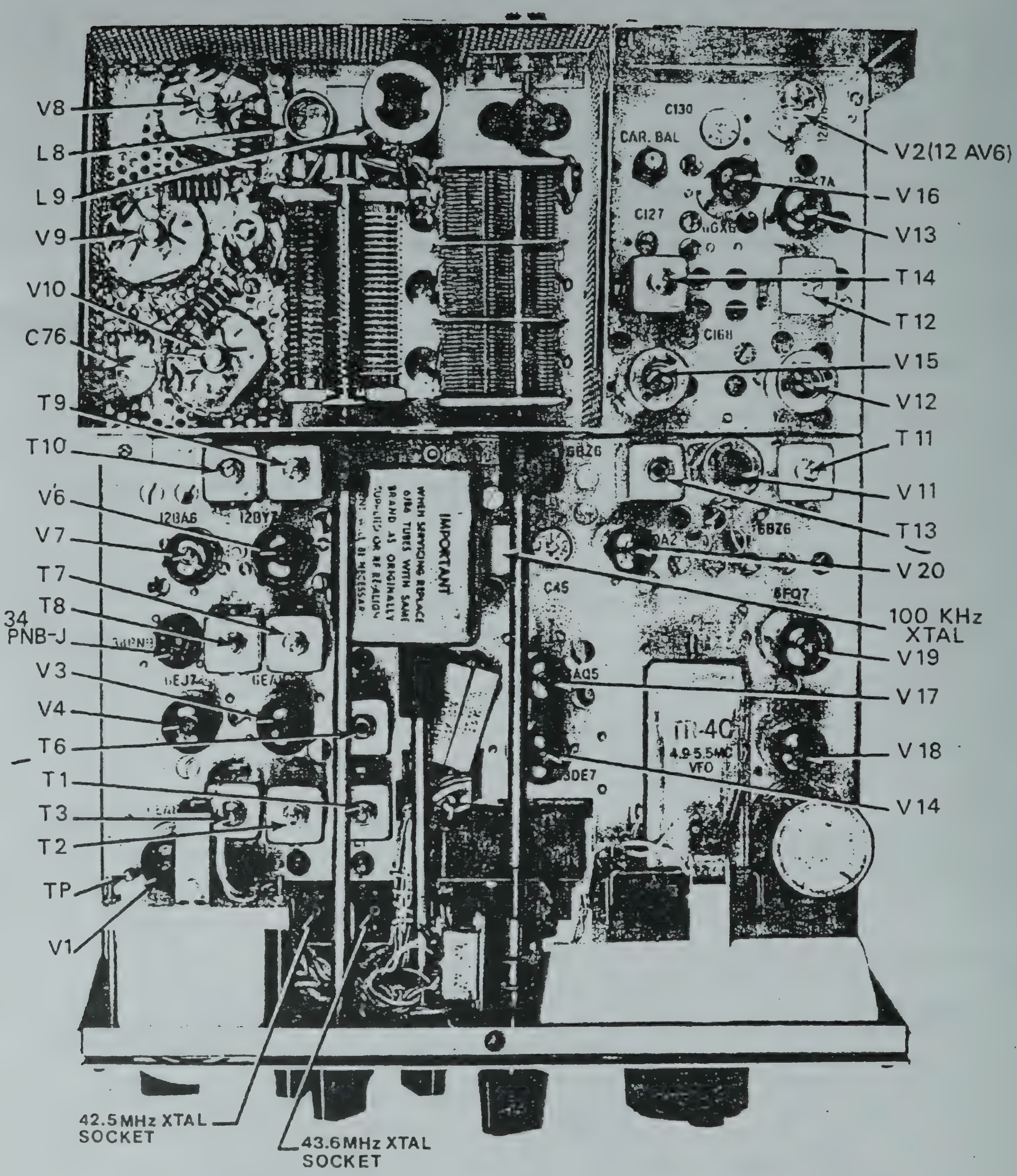

V8
L8
L9
V9
V10
C76
T9
T10
V6
V7
T7
T8
34 PNB-J
V3
V4
T6
T1
T3
T2
TP
V1
42.5MHz XTAL SOCKET
43.6MHz XTAL SOCKET
V2(12 AV6)
V16
V13
T14
T12
V15
V12
T11
V11
T13
V20
100 KHz XTAL
V19
V17
V18
V14
C130
CAR. BAL
C127
C168
C45
12BA6
12BY7
6BZ6
6AQ5
6BQ7
TR-40
4.9-5.5MC
VFO
IMPORTANT

Figure 5—1. Alignment Locations, Top View

Table 5–3. (Continued)

REF DES	Component Type	FUNCTION	
		Transmitter	Receiver
V8, V9, V10	(3) 6JB6 Matched	Power Amps.	—
V11	6BZ6	—	IF Amplifier
V12	12BA6	—	IF Amplifier
V13	12AX7	AGC	AGC
V14	13DE7	AM Screen Modulator	—
V15	12BA6	IF Amplifier	—
V16	6GX6	9 MHz Xtal Oscillator	BFO/Product Detector
V17	6AQ5A	Anti Vox	Audio Output
V18	12AX7	Mike Amplifier	—
V19	6FQ7	VoxAmp/Relay	—
V20	OA2	Voltage Regulator	Voltage Regulator
Q1	2N5950	VFO	VFO
Q2	2N3563	VFO Buffer	VFO Buffer
Q3	AT5059	Neon Driver	Neon Driver
Q4	2N3394	VFO Shut Off	VFO Shut Off
Q5	2N3877	—	Audio Pre-Amp
D1	1N541	Balanced Modulator	
D2	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D3	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D4	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D5	1N4148	Vox Detector	—
D6	1N4148	Anti Vox Detector	—
D7	1N4148	Vox Relay Speed Up	—
D8	1N714	Voltage Regulator	Voltage Regulator
D9	1N4148	Output Power Detector	—
D10	1N4148	Anti Vox Detector	—
D11	1N4148	Output Power Detector	—
D12	1N4148	Meter Control	—
D13	1N4148	Transient Suppressor	Transient Suppressor
D14	1N4148	AGC Isolation	—

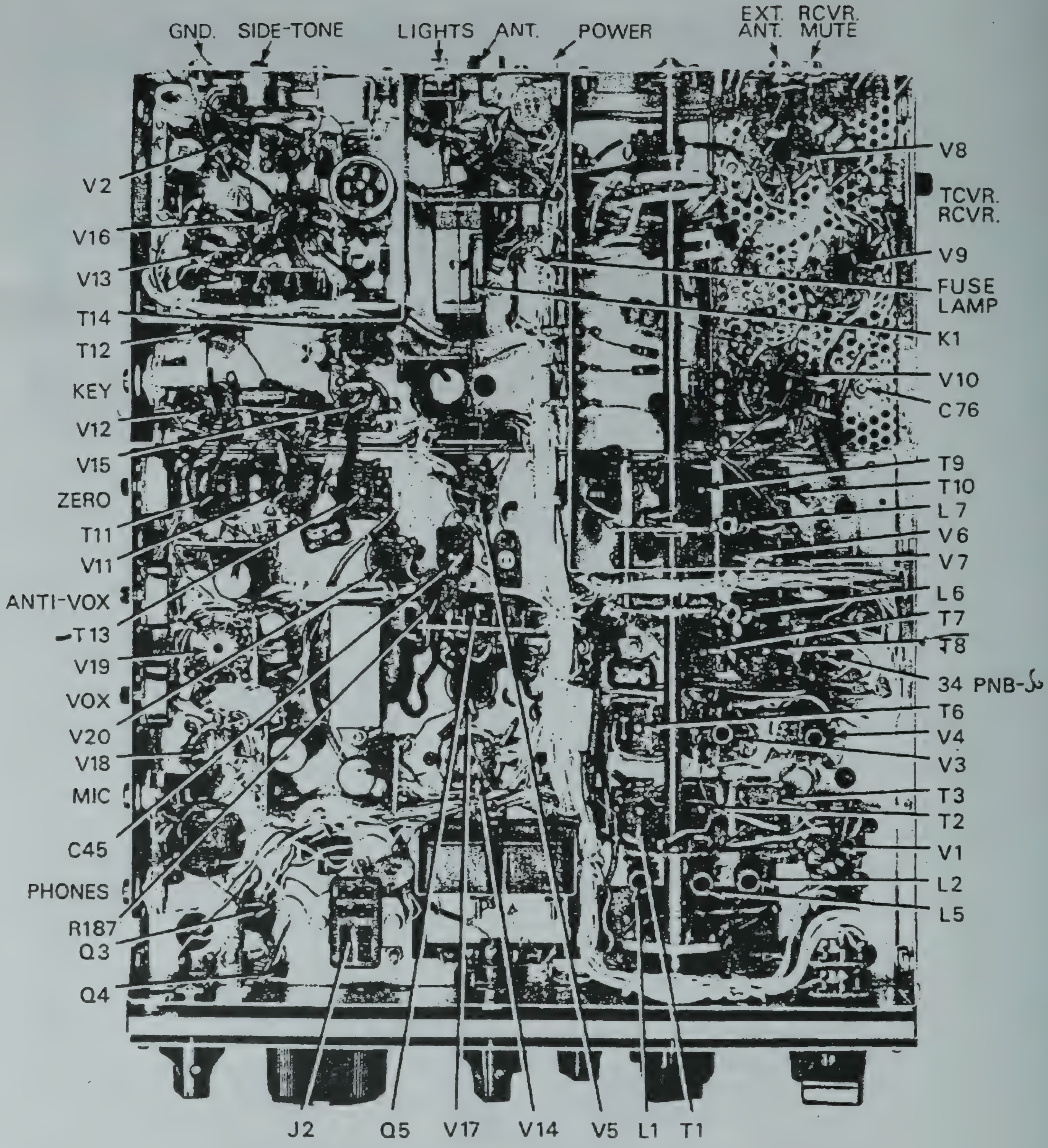

GND.
SIDE-TONE
LIGHTS
ANT.
POWER
EXT. ANT.
RCVR. MUTE
V2
V16
V13
T14
T12
KEY
V12
V15
ZERO
T11
V11
ANTI-VOX
T13
V19
VOX
V20
V18
MIC
C45
PHONES
R187
Q3
Q4
V8
TCVR. RCVR.
V9
FUSE LAMP
K1
V10
C76
T9
T10
L7
V6
V7
L6
T7
T8
34 PNB-5
T6
V4
V3
T3
T2
V1
L2
L5
J2
Q5
V17
V14
V5
L1
T1

Figure 5–2. Alignment Locations, Bottom View

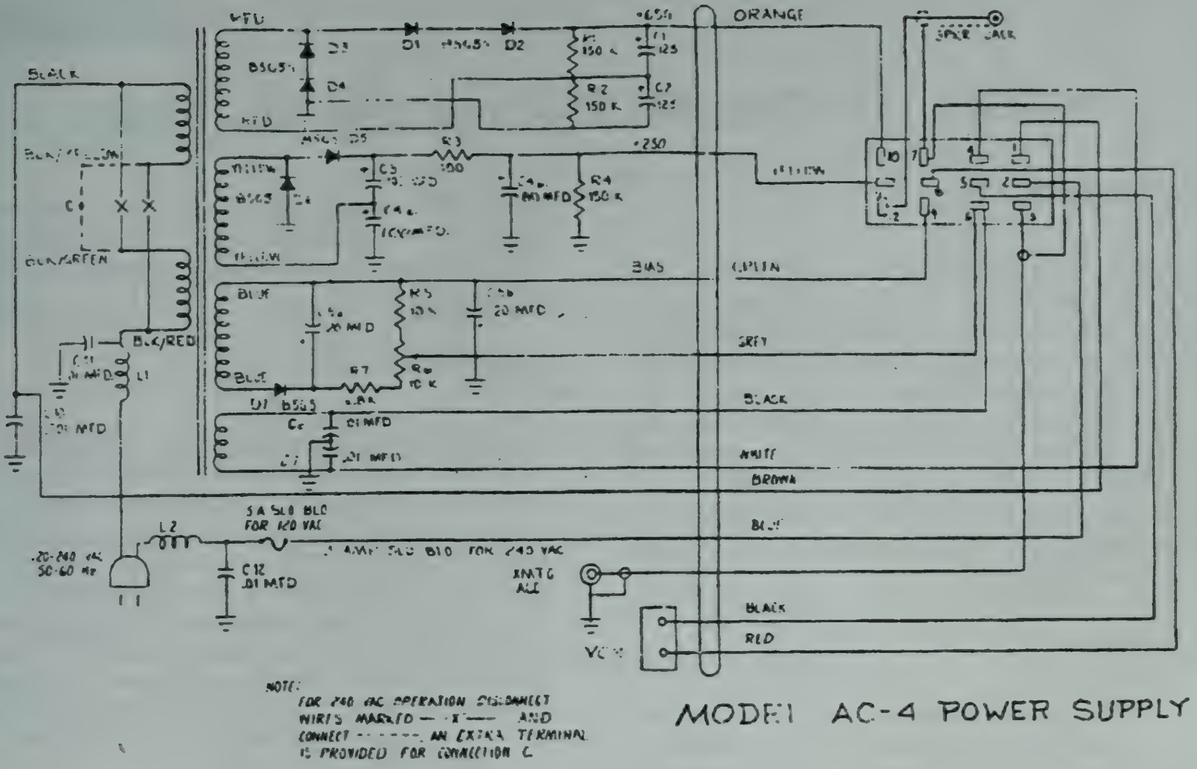

MODEL AC-4 POWER SUPPLY
NOTE:
FOR 240 AC OPERATION DISCONNECT
WIRES MARKED —X— AND
CONNECT - - - - -, AN EXTRA TERMINAL
IS PROVIDED FOR CONNECTION C
+650
ORANGE
SPKR JACK
+250
BIAS
GREEN
GREY
BLACK
WHITE
BROWN
BLUE
BLACK
RED
L2
5 A SLO BLO
FOR 120 VAC
C12
.01 MFD
XMT G
ALC
BLACK
BLK/RED
L1
R3
100
R4
150 K
R5
10 K
R7
D7 B555
D1
D2
D3
D4
D5
R1
150 K
R2
150 K
C1
125
C2
125
20 MFD

Figure 5—3. AC—4 Power Supply Schematic

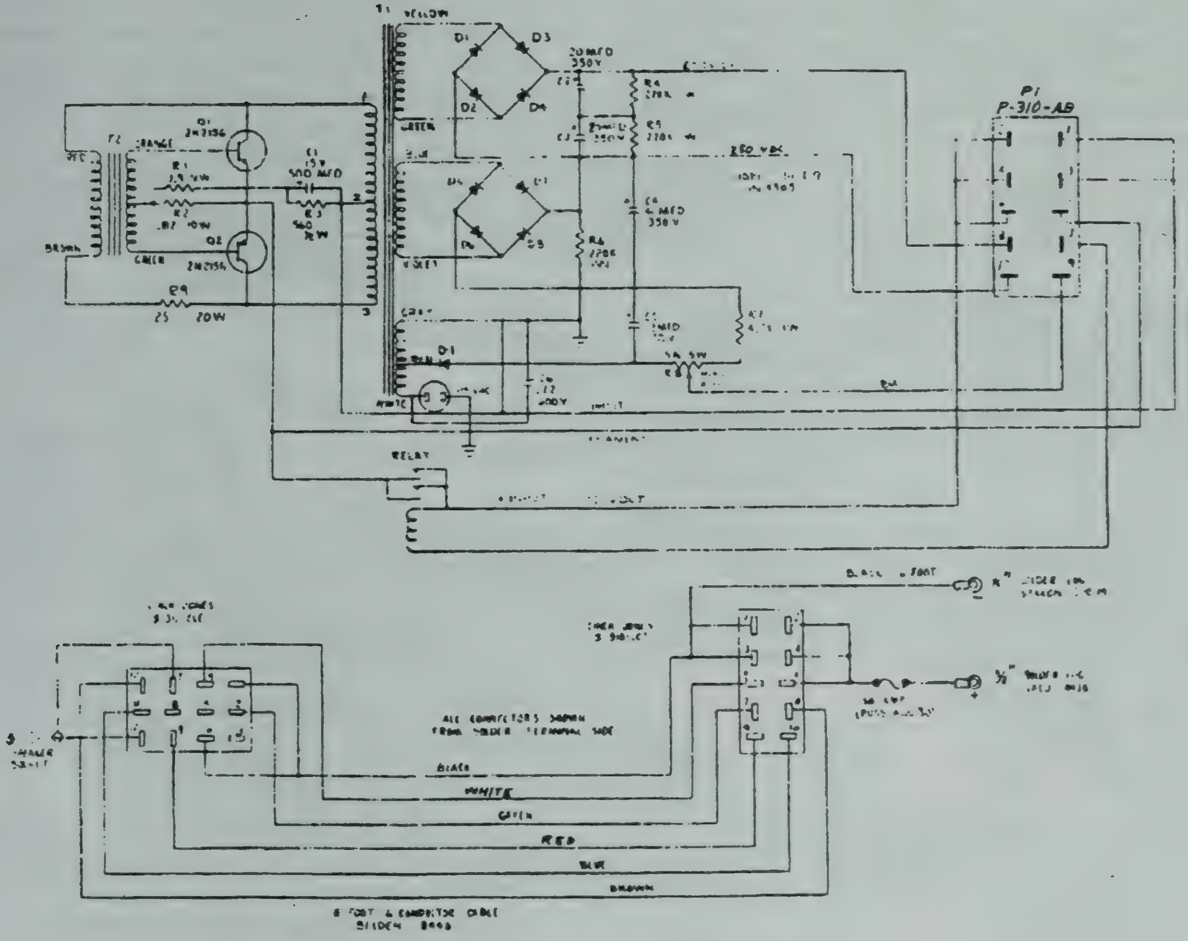

T1
YELLOW
D1
D3
D2
D4
20 MFD
350 V
GREEN
D5
D6
D8
VIOLET
GREY
WHITE
P1
P-310-AB
250 VAC
Q1
2N7156
Q2
2N2156
T2
ORANGE
RED
BROWN
GREEN
C1
15 V
500 MFD
R1
R2
R3
560
R9
25 20W
RELAY
BLACK
WHITE
GREEN
RED
BLUE
BROWN
ALL CONNECTORS SHOWN
FROM SOLDER TERMINAL SIDE

Figure 5—4. DC—4 Power Supply Schematic

MODEL 34–PNB PLUG-IN NOISE BLANKER

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

The 34—PNB Noise Blanker is a solid-state unit designed for use with the TR—4C and TR—4 Transceivers. Unlike noise clippers or limiters commonly found in communications equipment, this is an advanced noise blanker which mutes the receiver for the duration of the noise pulse. Between noise pulses full receiver gain is restored. Receiver AGC is affected only by the desired signal and not by noise. The 34—PNB is most effective on strong, periodic noise impulses such as automobile ignition noise.

INSTALLATION.

Disconnect the power connector from the TR—4C or TR—4. Remove the top half of the transceiver cabinet. Remove the 7 pin jumper plug located in front of the power amplifier cage. With the printed circuit side of the 34—PNB facing the outside of the transceiver chassis, carefully plug in the 34—PNB. After it is correctly seated in the socket, install a number 4 self-tapping screw in each corner of the 34—PNB bracket to secure it to the transceiver chassis. Replace the cabinet top. Some alignment may be necessary at the time of installation. See ALIGNMENT below.

OPERATION.

The BLANKER switch on the transceiver is used to turn the accessory 34—PNB Noise Blanker on and off. The Noise Blanker may be left on except when there is a strong signal within 5 kHz of the received signal. A strong signal which falls within the 10 kHz wide crystal filter in the Noise Blanker, and outside the 2.1 kHz wide crystal filter in the transceiver, will operate the Noise Blanker gate circuit causing distortion products. This limitation in the Noise Blanker is caused by the necessity of having a bandwidth in the blanker wide enough to minimize stretching of noise pulses before blanking. Under normal operating conditions, this limitation is no problem.

CIRCUIT DESCRIPTION.

This noise blanker system is composed of the three major networks described below. Refer to the block diagram and schematic diagram to follow this circuit description.

TRANSMITTING PATH.

The transmitting path consists of a single RC coupled 9 MHz amplifier which passes the transmitter signal through the blanker. The signal then passes through the crystal filter passband and into the transmitter mixer.

RECEIVER PATH.

The signal first passes through a crystal filter with a bandwidth wide enough to pass most of the noise frequency components but narrow enough to keep strong adjacent signals from overloading the noise blanker amplifier. The signal simultaneously enters the noise processor and the delay circuit, a reactive network which compensates for the inherent phase-shift of the noise processing section. The 9 MHz receive amplifier provides an overall system gain for the receive path. The balanced gate is an electronic series switch that opens for noise pulses but closes to allow the signal to pass.

NOISE PROCESSOR.

The signal passes through the tuned 9 MHz amplifier and into the balanced mixer. This mixer converts the 9 MHz noise pulses to 2150 kHz and prevents the high level 6.85 MHz oscillator signal from reaching the amplifier strip. The 2150 kHz noise pulses pass through the two amplifiers, the detector and into the gate driver. The driver reverse-biases the gate at the instant a 9 MHz noise pulse enters on its way to the receiver IF. The gate then is controlled by the same pulse it is blanking, enabling it to respond automatically to pulses of varying width.

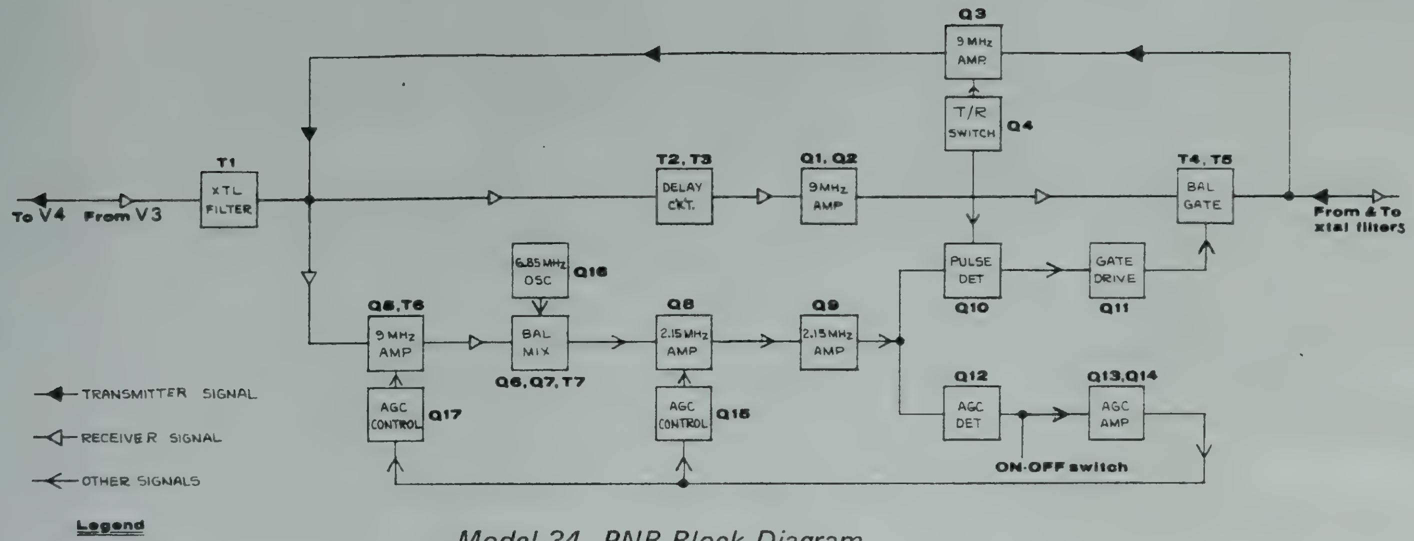
ALIGNMENT.

It is recommended that the TR—4 series transceiver be tuned to 40 meters on receive when the following procedure is performed. Refer to the Model 34—PNB Alignment Locations illustration to locate the alignment points.

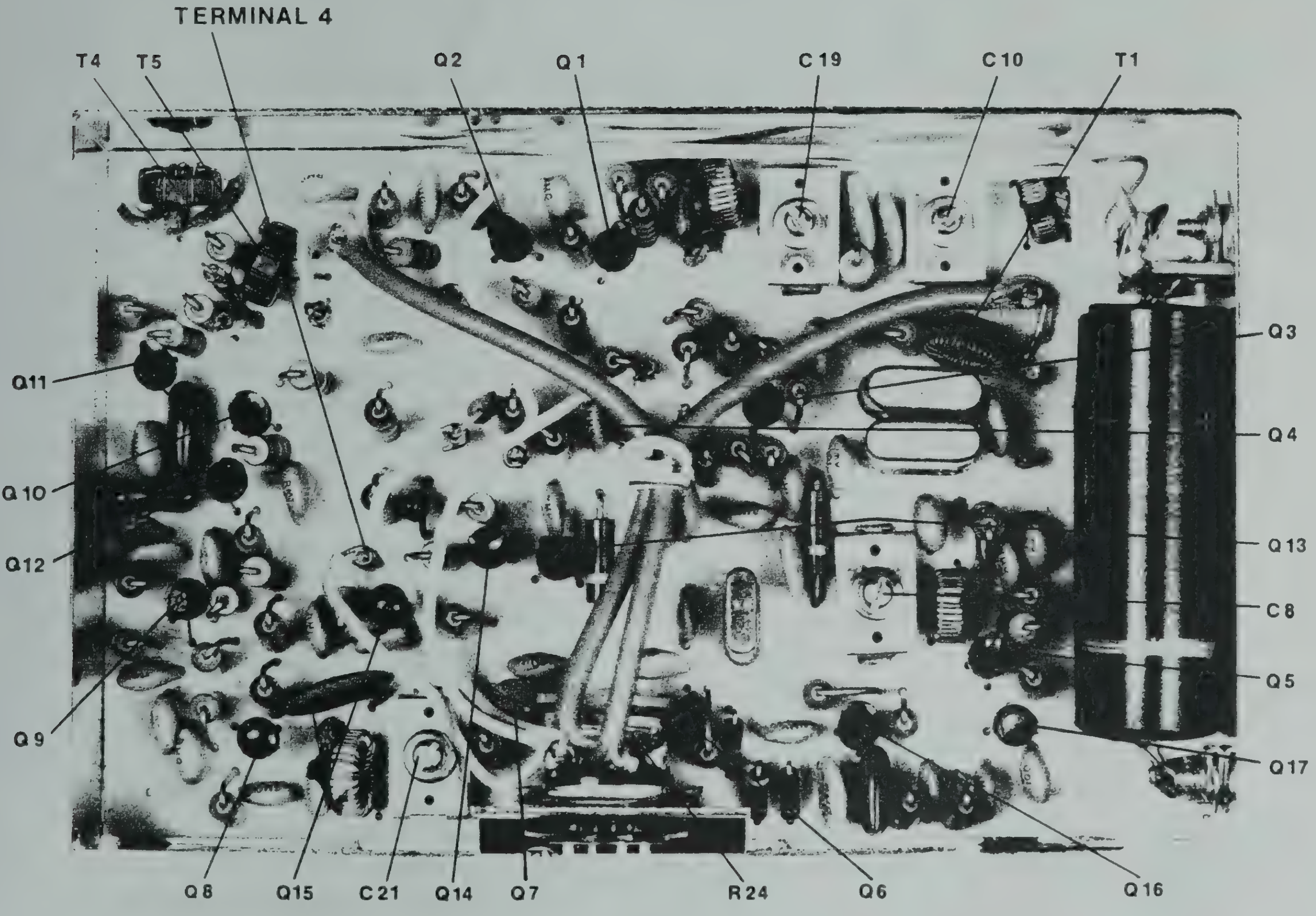
a. With the noise blanker turned on, adjust capacitor trimmers C10 and C19 for maximum S meter reading on calibrator signal.

b. With the calibrator turned off, connect a VTVM (set to measure DC voltage) between terminal 4 of the 34—PNB board and ground (terminal 4 being plus). Adjust R24 for maximum positive voltage.

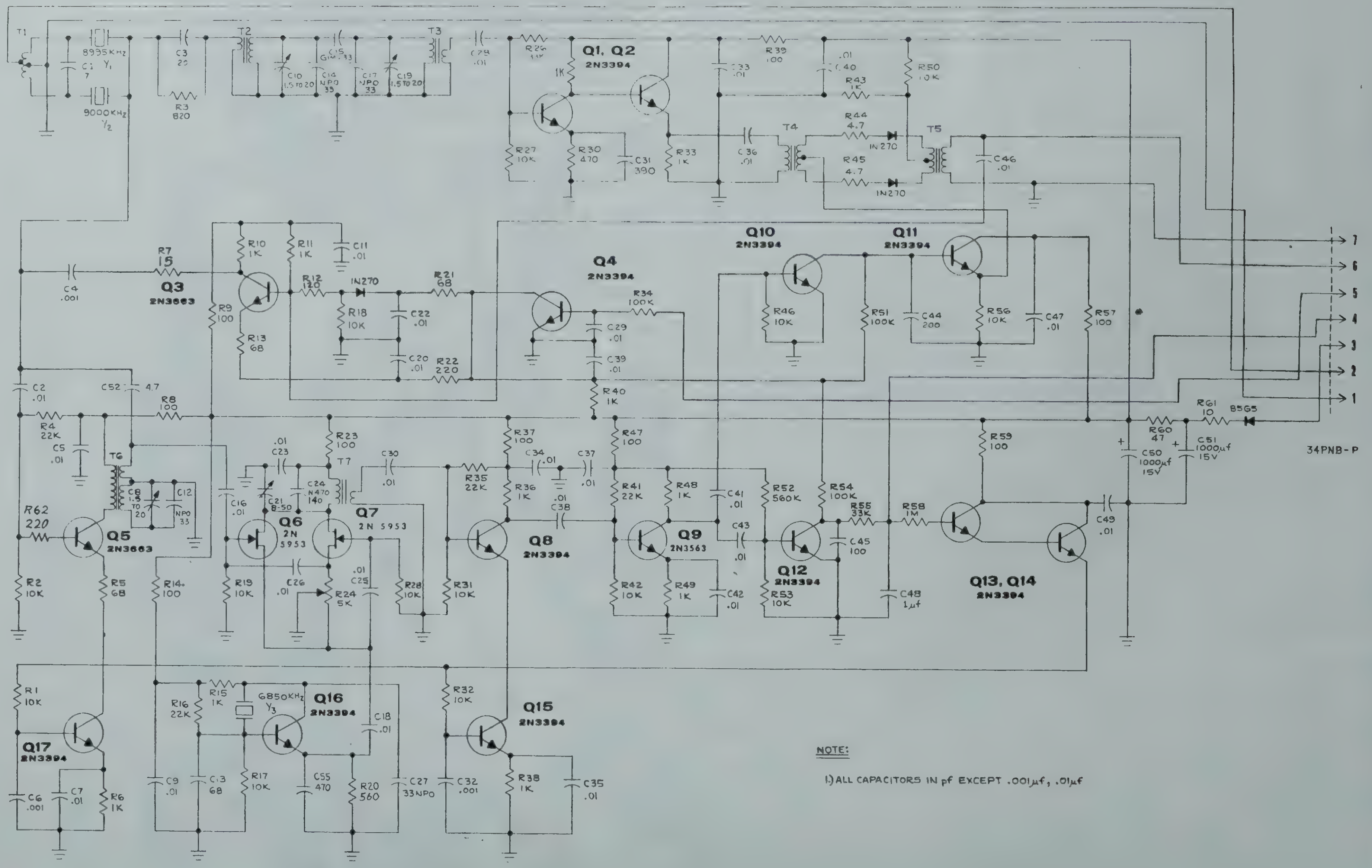
c. Turn the calibrator on and adjust the two remaining trimmers C21 and C8 for minimum positive voltage.


Q3
9 MHz AMP
T/R SWITCH
Q4
T1
XTL FILTER
To V4
From V3
T2, T3
DELAY CKT.
Q1, Q2
9MHz AMP
T4, T5
BAL GATE
From & To xtal filters
6.85 MHz OSC
Q16
Q5, T6
9 MHz AMP
BAL MIX
Q6, Q7, T7
Q8
2.15 MHz AMP
Q9
2.15 MHz AMP
PULSE DET
Q10
GATE DRIVE
Q11
Q12
AGC DET
Q13, Q14
AGC AMP
AGC CONTROL
Q17
AGC CONTROL
Q15
ON-OFF switch
TRANSMITTER SIGNAL
RECEIVER SIGNAL
OTHER SIGNALS
Legend

Model 34–PNB Block Diagram


TERMINAL 4
T4
T5
Q2
Q1
C19
C10
T1
Q3
Q11
Q4
Q10
Q12
Q13
C8
Q5
Q9
Q17
Q8
Q15
C21
Q14
Q7
R24
Q6
Q16

Model 34–PNB Alignment Locations


T1
8995KHz
C1
7
Y1
9000KHz
Y2
C3
25
R3
820
T2
C10
1.5TO20
C15
GIM.33
C14
NPO
35
C17
NPO
33
C19
1.5TO20
T3
C79
.01
R26
1K
Q1, Q2
2N3394
1K
R27
10K
R30
470
C31
390
R33
1K
C33
.01
R39
100
.01
C40
R43
1K
R50
10K
C36
.01
T4
R44
4.7
IN270
R45
4.7
IN270
T5
C46
.01
R7
15
C4
.001
Q3
2N3663
R9
100
R10
1K
R11
1K
C11
.01
R12
120
IN270
R18
10K
R13
68
C22
.01
C20
.01
R21
68
R22
220
Q4
2N3394
R34
100K
C29
.01
C39
.01
R40
1K
Q10
2N3394
R46
10K
R51
100K
Q11
2N3394
C44
200
R56
10K
C47
.01
R57
100
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
C2
.01
C52
4.7
R8
100
R4
22K
C5
.01
T6
C8
1.5
TO
20
C12
NPO
33
R62
220
Q5
2N3663
R2
10K
R5
68
R14
100
C16
.01
C23
.01
C21
8-50
C24
N470
140
R23
100
T7
Q6
2N
5953
Q7
2N 5953
C26
.01
R24
5K
C25
.01
R19
10K
R28
10K
C30
.01
R31
10K
R35
22K
R37
100
C34
.01
R36
1K
.01
C38
C37
.01
Q8
2N3394
R47
100
R41
22K
R48
1K
Q9
2N3563
R42
10K
R49
1K
C41
.01
C43
.01
C42
.01
R52
560K
R54
100K
R55
33K
C45
100
Q12
2N3394
R53
10K
C48
1µf
R58
1M
R59
100
Q13, Q14
2N3394
C49
.01
R60
47
C50
1000µf
15V
R61
10
85G5
C51
1000µf
15V
34PNB-P
R1
10K
Q17
2N3394
C6
.001
C7
.01
R6
1K
R16
22K
R15
1K
6850KHz
Y3
Q16
2N3394
C9
.01
C13
68
R17
10K
C55
470
R20
560
C18
.01
C27
33NPO
R32
10K
Q15
2N3394
C32
.001
R38
1K
C35
.01

NOTE:

1.) ALL CAPACITORS IN pf EXCEPT .001µf, .01µf

Model 34–PNB Schematic Diagram

TR-3/TR-4/TR-4C/TR-4Cw TUNING ALTERATIONS

The tune up procedure for the TR series transceivers must be altered from the instruction manual in order to meet section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concerns the purity of emissions.

Tune up on 80, 40, and 15 meters must be altered by limiting the plate current to 350 milliamperes with the LOAD control. Instead of adjusting the LOAD control for maximum RF output, the LOAD control should be advanced from CCW to the point at which the resonant plate current does not exceed 350 milliamperes. On 80 meters the LOAD control should remain fully CCW.

The tune up procedure in the instruction manual may be followed for operation on 20 and 10 meters.

(CCW -- counterclockwise)

T-4/T-4X/T-4XB/T-4XC TUNING ALTERATIONS

The tune up procedure for the T-4 series transmitters must be altered from the instruction manual in order to meet section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concern the purity of emissions.

Tune up on 160, 80, 40 and 20 meters must be altered by limiting the plate current to 340 milliamperes with the LOAD control. Instead of adjusting the LOAD control for maximum RF output, the LOAD control should be advanced from CCW to the point at which the resonant plate current does not exceed 340 milliamperes.

The tune up procedure in the instruction manual may be followed for operation on 15 and 10 meters.

(CCW -- counterclockwise)

L-4B

The L-4B when tuned in accordance with the instruction manual meets the requirements of section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concern the purity of emissions.

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTION SHEET

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTION SHEET

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.

DRAKE

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

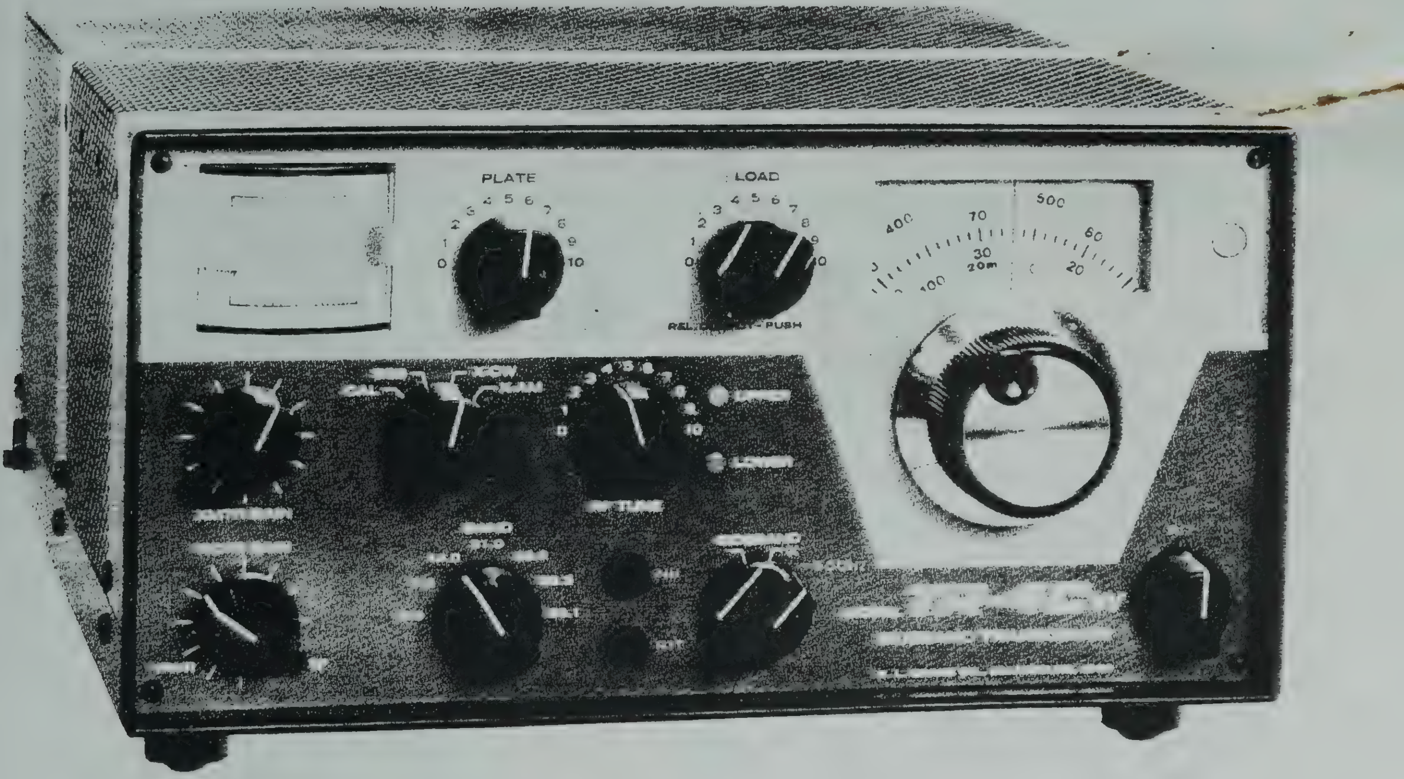


PLATE
LOAD
REL PUSH

TR-4Cw

SIDEBAND TRANSCEIVER

R. L. DRAKE COMPANY. MIAMISBURG. OHIO. U.S.A.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

CHAPTER I INTRODUCTION 1–1

1–1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION 1–1

1–2. MANUAL COVERAGE 1–1

SPECIFICATIONS 1–3

CHAPTER II INSTALLATION 2–1

2–1. UNPACKING 2–1

2–2. LOCATION 2–1

2–3. MOBILE INSTALLATION 2–1

2–4. POWER REQUIREMENTS 2–1

2–5. MOUNTING 2–1

2–6. ANTENNA 2–1

2–7. SPEAKER 2–1

2–8. MICROPHONE 2–1

2–9. STATIONARY INSTALLATION 2–2

2–10. POWER REQUIREMENTS 2–2

2–11. VIEWING ANGLE 2–2

2–12. ACCESSORIES 2–2

CHAPTER III OPERATION 3–1

3–1. GENERAL 3–1

3–2. MODE SWITCH 3–1

3–3. BLANKER SWITCH 3–1

3–4. VFO DIAL 3–1

3–5. TUNING PROCEDURE 3–1

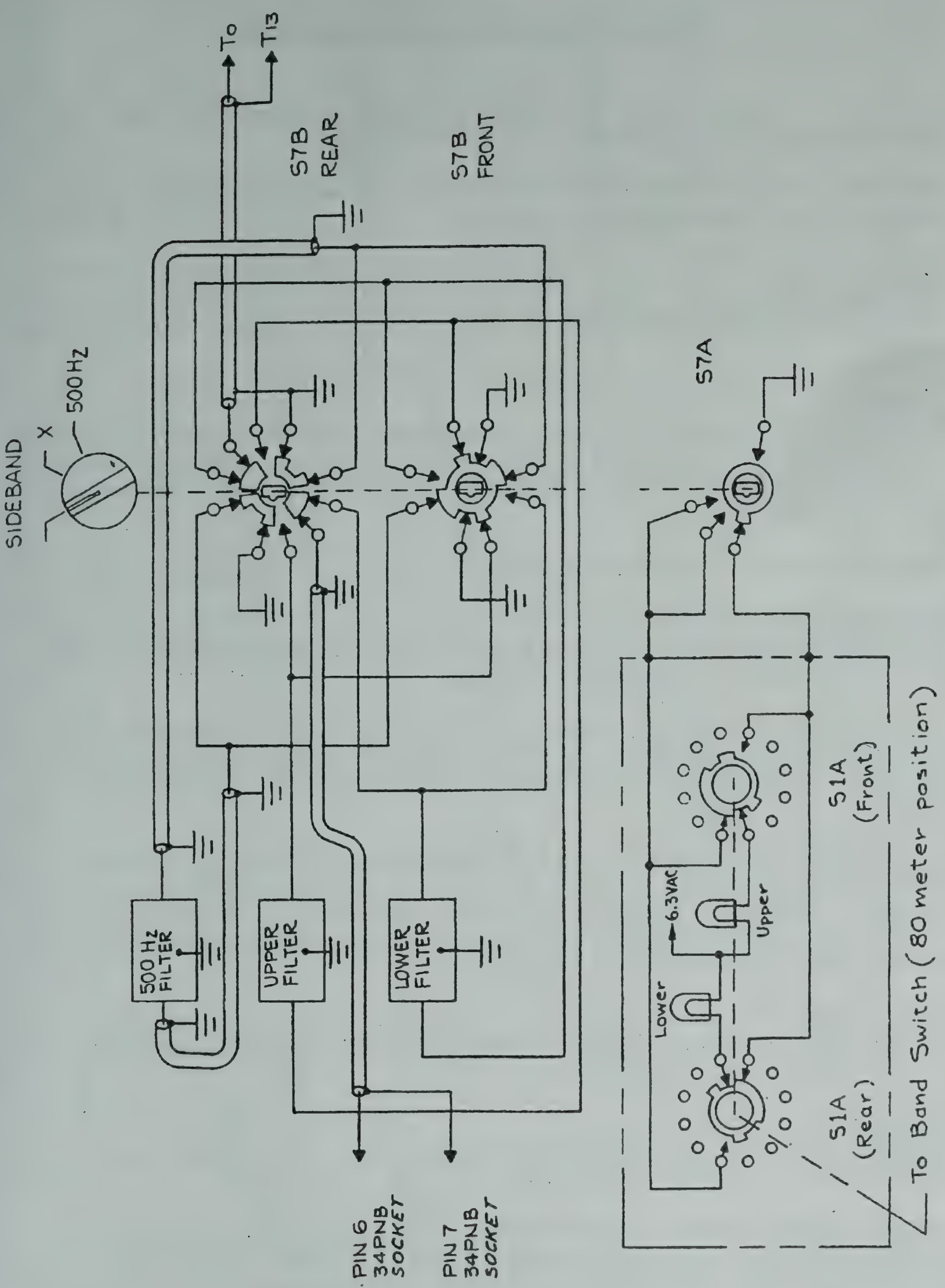
3–6. BIAS ADJUSTMENT 3–1

FRONT PANEL CONTROLS 3–3

OTHER CONTROLS 3–4

3–7. TUNE UP 3–5

3–8. SSB OPERATION 3–5


SIDEBAND
X
500 Hz
To
T13
S7B
REAR
S7B
FRONT
S7A
500 Hz
FILTER
UPPER
FILTER
LOWER
FILTER
PIN 6
34PNB
SOCKET
PIN 7
34PNB
SOCKET
6.3VAC
Upper
Lower
S1A
(Front)
S1A
(Rear)
To Band Switch (80 meter position)

TR-4Cw Schematic Diagram

DRAKE

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

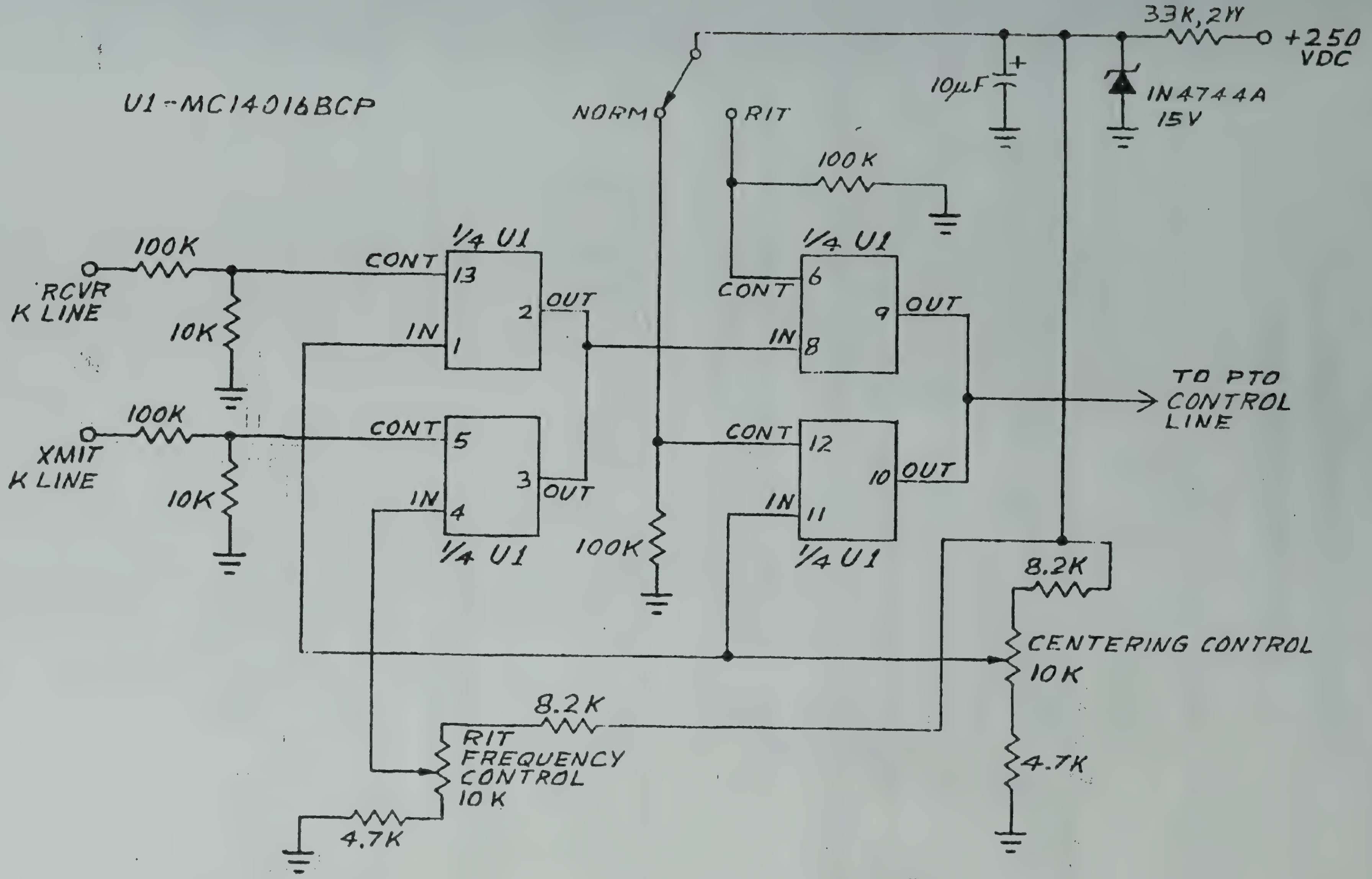
The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.


U1-MC14016BCP
33K, 2W
+250 VDC
10µF
1N4744A 15V
NORM
RIT
100K
1/4 U1
CONT
IN
OUT
13
1
2
5
4
3
6
8
9
12
11
10
RCVR K LINE
XMIT K LINE
100K
10K
TO PTO CONTROL LINE
8.2K
CENTERING CONTROL 10K
4.7K
RIT FREQUENCY CONTROL 10K

RIT Schematic Diagram

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS

COVERING MODELS WITH RIT

The addition of Receiver Incremental Tuning to the TR-4Cw allows the receive frequency to be varied approximately ±3 kHz (2 kHz min., 4 kHz max.) relative to the indicated dial frequency.

OPERATION

The RIT function is activated by depressing the RIT push button switch. When disabled, the RIT frequency control has no effect, and the received frequency is as indicated on the dial. The TR-4Cw transmit frequency is always as indicated on the dial.

If equipped with the accessory 34-PNB Noise Blanker, the Noise Blanker is activated by depressing the NB push button switch. For further information regarding the operation of the Noise Blanker, refer to section 3-3.

Use of RIT can be very useful for both CW and SSB operation. When working a station who is drifting in frequency, the drift can be compensated for without "walking" across the band.

ZERO ADJUSTMENT

The RIT printed circuit board is located on the partition enclosing the PA compartment on the bottom of the transceiver.

The trim pot located on this board is used to "center" the front panel RIT frequency control. With the front panel frequency control set at 12 o'clock, tune in the calibrator signal at any convenient 100 kHz point until a beat note is heard. The trim pot should be adjusted until there is little or no change in the beat note frequency when turning the RIT control on and off via the RIT push button. This adjustment is factory set, and centering should be within 200-300 Hz.

CHAPTER I

INTRODUCTION

1-1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

The TR--4C is a 300 Watt HF single sideband transceiver which covers the 80 through 10 meter amateur bands. AM and CW modes are also included. The TR--4C requires either an R. L. Drake AC–4, 120 V AC power supply, or an R. L. Drake DC–4, 12 V DC power supply. The TR--4C features a high-stability linear permeability tuned VFO and two 8 pole crystal lattice filters for sideband selection. Available accessories include an RV--4C Remote VFO, a matching MS--4 Speaker, an FF-1 Fixed Frequency Adapter, a 34--PNB Noise Blanker, an MC–4 Mobile Console, and a TR–4C VHF Modification Kit.

1-2. MANUAL COVERAGE.

This manual provides sufficient information for operation of the TR--4C Transceiver by a licensed operator and for repair and maintenance by an experienced electronics technician. Chapter II provides installation instructions and illustrates interconnection with accessories. Chapter III describes operation procedures. Chapter IV presents theory of operation supported by a block diagram. Chapter V provides maintenance instructions and parts ordering information.

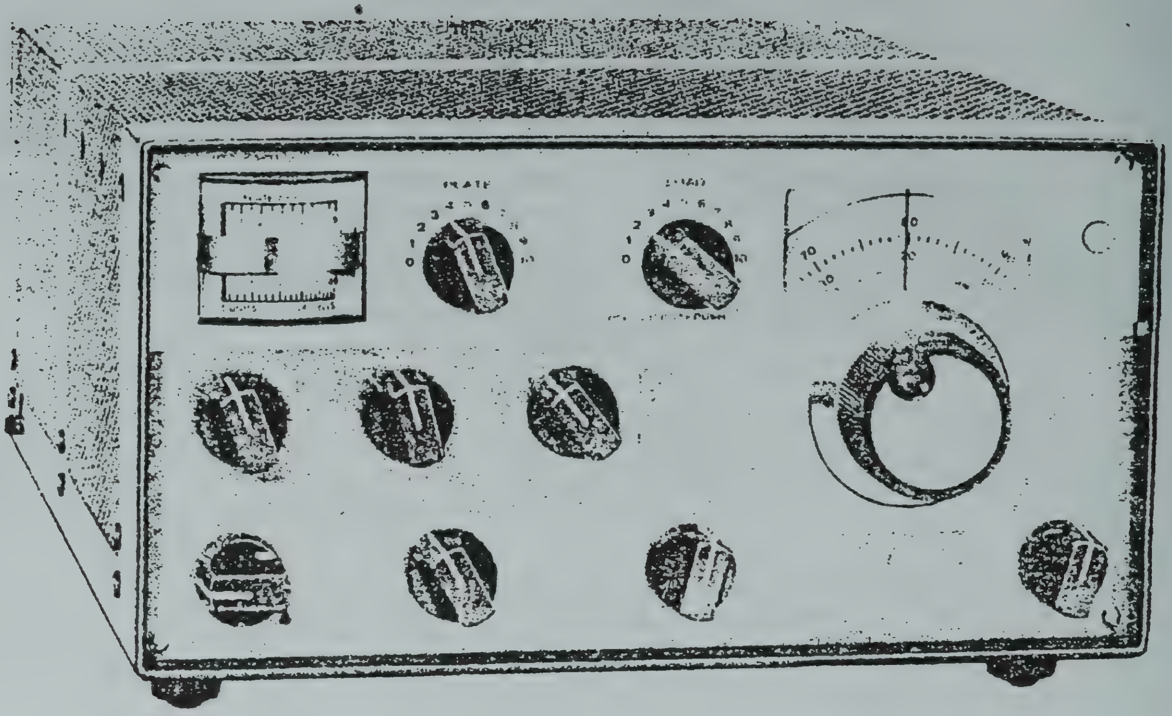


Figure 1–1. TR–4C Sideband Transceiver

SPECIFICATIONS

GENERAL:

Frequency Coverage:	3.5 to 4.1 MHz, 7.0 to 7.6 MHz, 13.9 to 14.5 MHz, 21.0 to 21.6 MHz and 28.5 to 29.1 MHz; accessory crystals are available for the 28.0 to 28.6 MHz and 29.1 to 29.7 MHz segments of the 10 meter band.
Mode of Operation:	Lower Sideband, Upper Sideband, AM and CW.
Frequency Stability:	Total drift is less than 100 Hz after warm up. Total frequency change is less than 100 Hz for a ± 10% line voltage change.
Power Supply Requirements:	+ 650 Volts DC at 300 mA average and 500 mA maximum with 10% regulation from 100 to 500 mA and a maximum ripple 1%. + 250 Volts DC at 200 mA with 10% regulation from 170 mA to 200 mA. This includes the effect of the 650 Volt supply change if both voltages are obtained from the same transformer. Maximum ripple must be less than 1/4%. –45 to –65 Volts DC adjustable filtered bias into 33 K Ohm load. 12.6 Volts AC or DC at 5.5 Amperes.
Antenna Impedance:	Nominal 52 Ohms (VSWR less than 2:1).
Dial Calibration:	Better than ± 1 kHz when calibrated at the nearest 100 kHz calibration point.
Dimensions:	5.5 in. High x 10.75 in. Wide x 14.375 in. Deep. 13.97 cm. High x 27.31 cm. Wide x 36.51 cm. Deep.
Weight:	16 lbs. (7.26 kg.)

RECEIVER:

Sensitivity:	Less than 0.5 uV for 10 dB $\frac{S+N}{N}$
AGC:	Less than 3 dB variation for 60 dB change in input signal.
Selectivity:	2.1 kHz at –6 dB and 3.4 kHz at –60 dB.
IF Frequency:	9 MHz.
Audio Output:	3 Watts with less than 10% distortion.
Output Impedance:	4 Ohms.

TRANSMITTER:

Power Input:	300 Watts PEP SSB, 260 Watts CW and 260 Watts PEP AM.
Output Impedance:	Nominal 52 Ohms.
Average Distortion Products:	The odd order products are down 30 dB below PEP.
Microphone Input:	High Impedance.

CHAPTER II
INSTALLATION

2-1. UNPACKING.

Carefully remove the unit from the shipping carton and examine it for evidence of damage. If any damage is discovered, immediately notify the transportation company that delivered the unit. Be sure to keep the shipping carton and packing material as the transportation company will want to examine them if there is a damage claim. Keep the carton and packing material even if no shipping damage occurs. Having the original carton available makes packing the unit much easier if it should ever be necessary to store it or return it to the factory for service.

NOTE

> Fill out the enclosed registration card and return it to the factory immediately to insure registration and validation of the warranty.

2-2. LOCATION.

The location of the TR–4C is not critical. However, care should be taken to insure that adequate clearance is provided to insure free circulation of air around the unit and to allow access to the side controls and connectors. Do not cover the top of the cabinet with books, papers or other equipment as overheating may result.

2-3. MOBILE INSTALLATION.

2-4. POWER REQUIREMENTS. Refer to figure 2-2 for rear chassis connector identification. The TR–4C may be installed in any vehicle with a 12 volt dc negative ground system. An R. L. Drake Model DC–4 Power Supply is required for a mobile installation. The recommended location for the DC–4 is on the passenger side of the firewall. Refer to figure 2-3 for the electrical connections required.

2-5. MOUNTING. Mount the TR–4C in a convenient location below the dash with an R. L. Drake Model MMK–3 Mobile Mounting Kit. Refer to figure 2-4 for various mounting options. Be sure to allow adequate clearance for air circulation and cable connections. Turn the TR–4C off. Connect the power cable between the TR–4C and the DC–4. Coil up any excess cable and tape it in place out of sight. Connect the black wire from the power supply to a convenient ground. Route the red wire from the power supply through the firewall and connect it to the positive battery terminal or the starter solenoid. The fuse holder should be installed as close to the solenoid as possible. Shorten both of these wires as much as possible.

2-6. ANTENNA. Install a mobile antenna as recommended by the antenna manufacturer. Connect a coaxial cable from the antenna to the SO–239 connector at the rear of the TR–4C.

2-7. SPEAKER. *DO NOT* connect the TR–4C to the speaker of the car radio. Install a separate speaker for use with the TR–4C. The R. L. Drake Model MC–4 Mobile Console is recommended for this type of installation. It includes a speaker and a wattmeter and is designed to mount over or under the TR–4C.

2-8. MICROPHONE. Use a microphone with a flat frequency response. The microphone should have a cardioid pattern to reduce pickup from the back and sides. Connect the microphone as illustrated in figure 2-1 to insure proper performance.

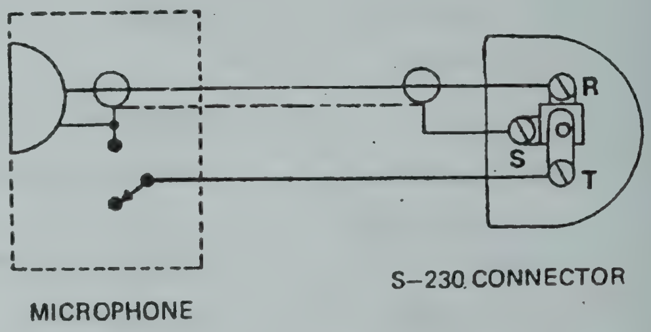


Figure 2–1. Microphone Connections

2-9. STATIONARY INSTALLATION.

2-10. POWER REQUIREMENTS. An R. L. Drake Model AC–4 Power Supply rated at 120 volts ac, 50/60 Hz, is required for stationary installations. The AC–4 is designed to fit inside the MS–4 speaker cabinet.

2-11. VIEWING ANGLE. Refer to figure 2-5 for illustrations of viewing angle options. See Chapter V for bottom cover removal.

2-12. ACCESSORIES. Refer to figures 2-6 through 2-9 for the electrical connections required to operate the TR–4C with the various recommended accessories.

NOTE

If the old RV–3 is to be used it must be modified as follows: Install a 22 K, 2 Watt resistor from pin 1 of the tube (0A2) to the terminal of the FUNCTION switch to which the orange wire is attached.

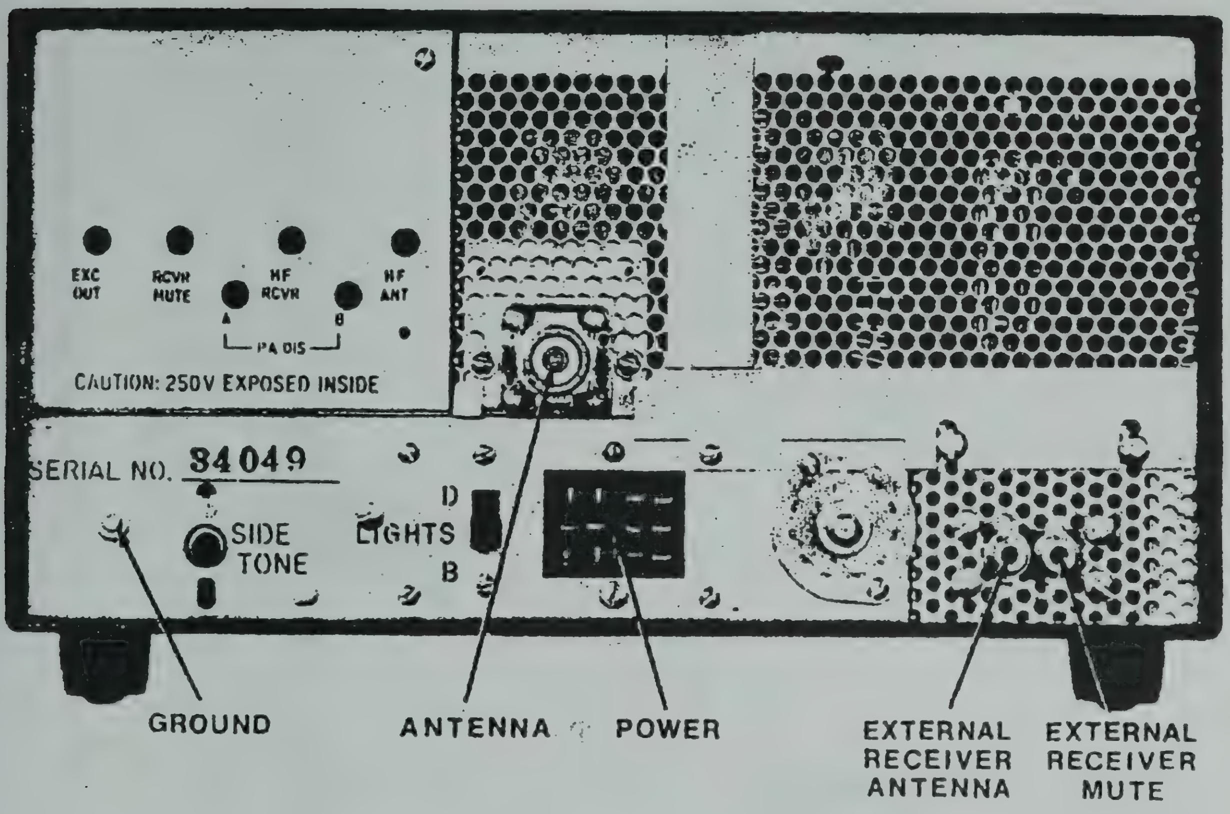

EXC OUT
RCVR MUTE
HF RCVR
HF ANT
A
B
PA DIS
CAUTION: 250V EXPOSED INSIDE
SERIAL NO. 34049
SIDE TONE
D
LIGHTS
B
GROUND
ANTENNA
POWER
EXTERNAL RECEIVER ANTENNA
EXTERNAL RECEIVER MUTE

Figure 2–2. Rear Chassis Connectors

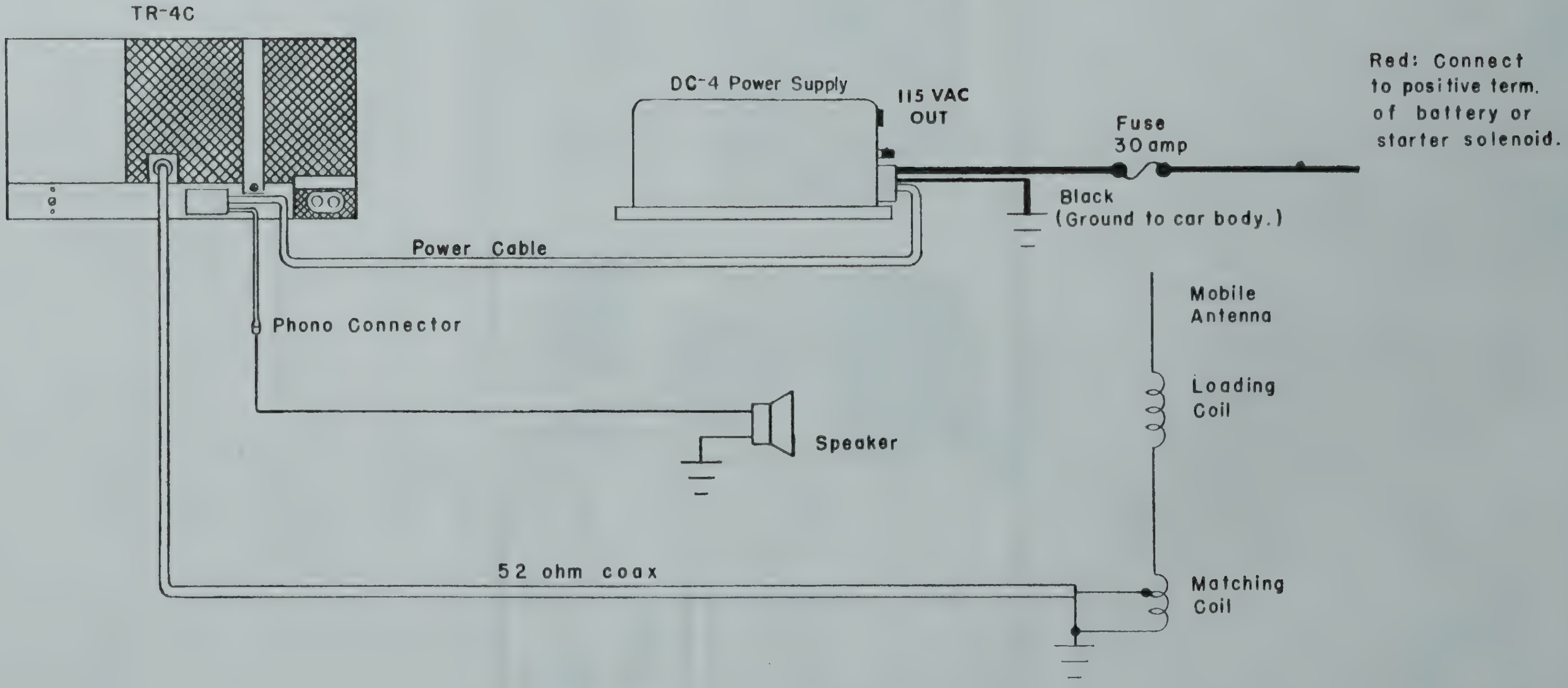
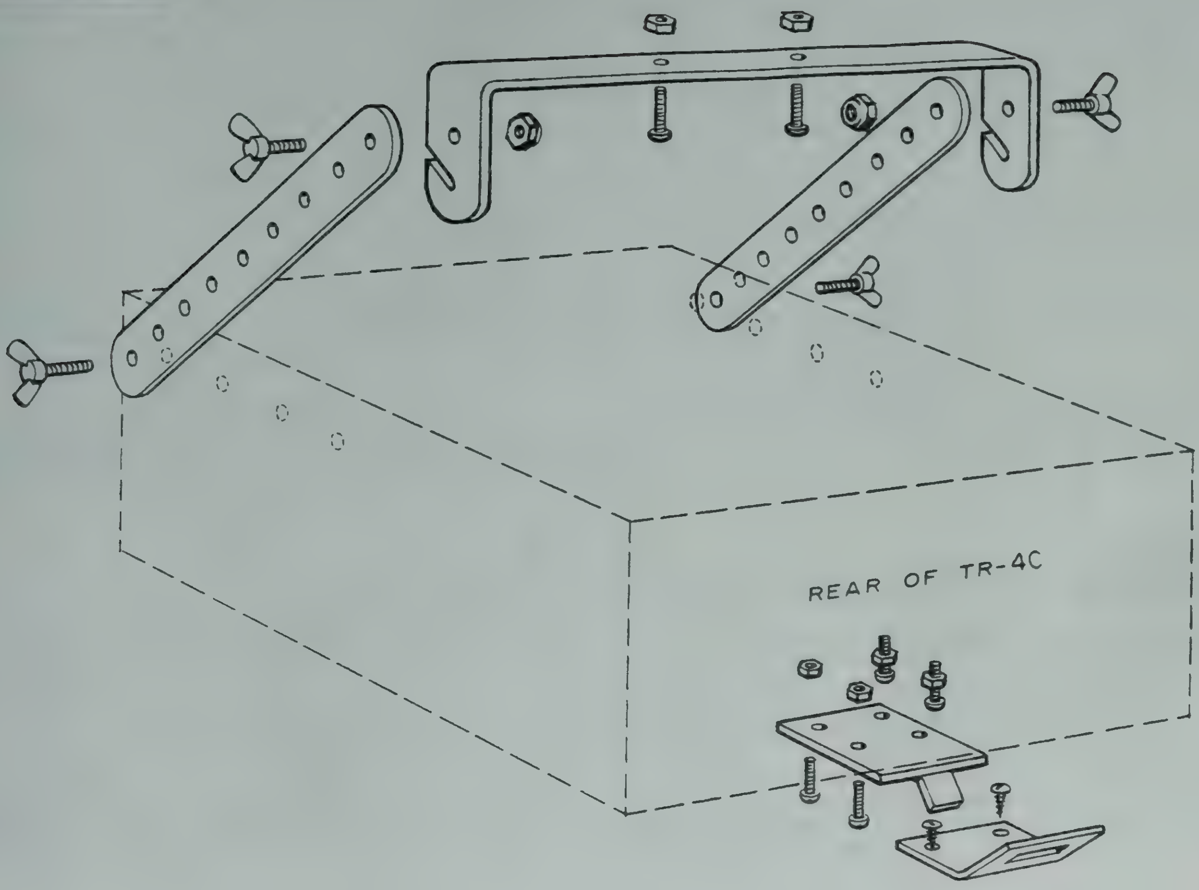
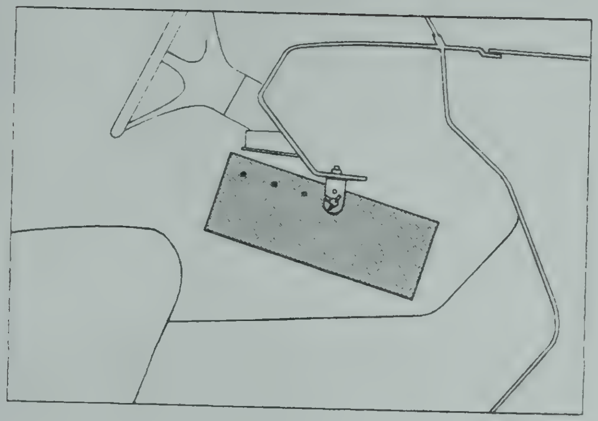
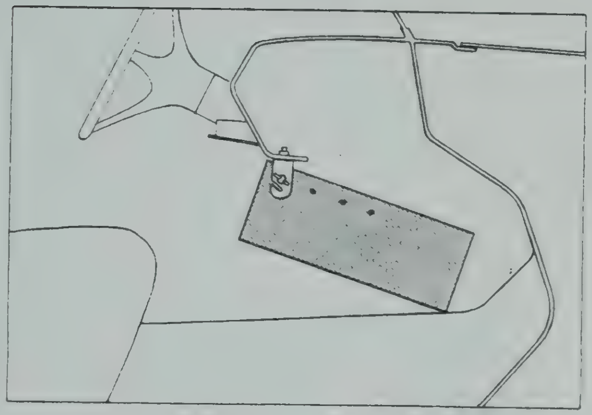

TR-4C
DC-4 Power Supply
115 VAC OUT
Fuse 30 amp
Red: Connect to positive term. of battery or starter solenoid.
Black (Ground to car body.)
Power Cable
Phono Connector
Speaker
Mobile Antenna
Loading Coil
Matching Coil
52 ohm coax

Figure 2–3. Electrical Connections Required for Mobile Installation

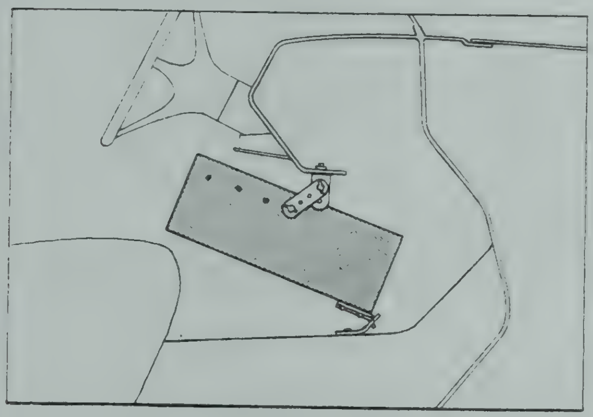

REAR OF TR-4C



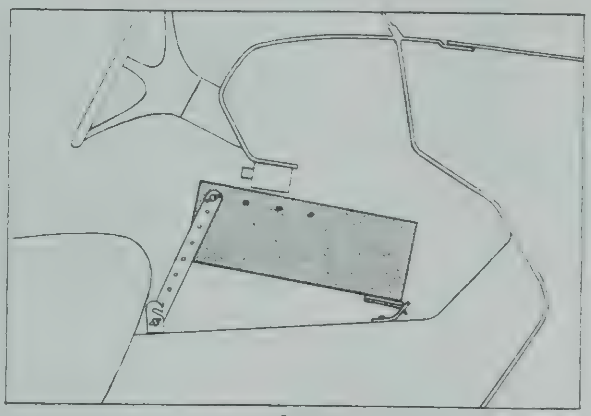
OPTION A



OPTION B



OPTION C



OPTION D

Figure 2–4. Mobile Installation Mounting Options

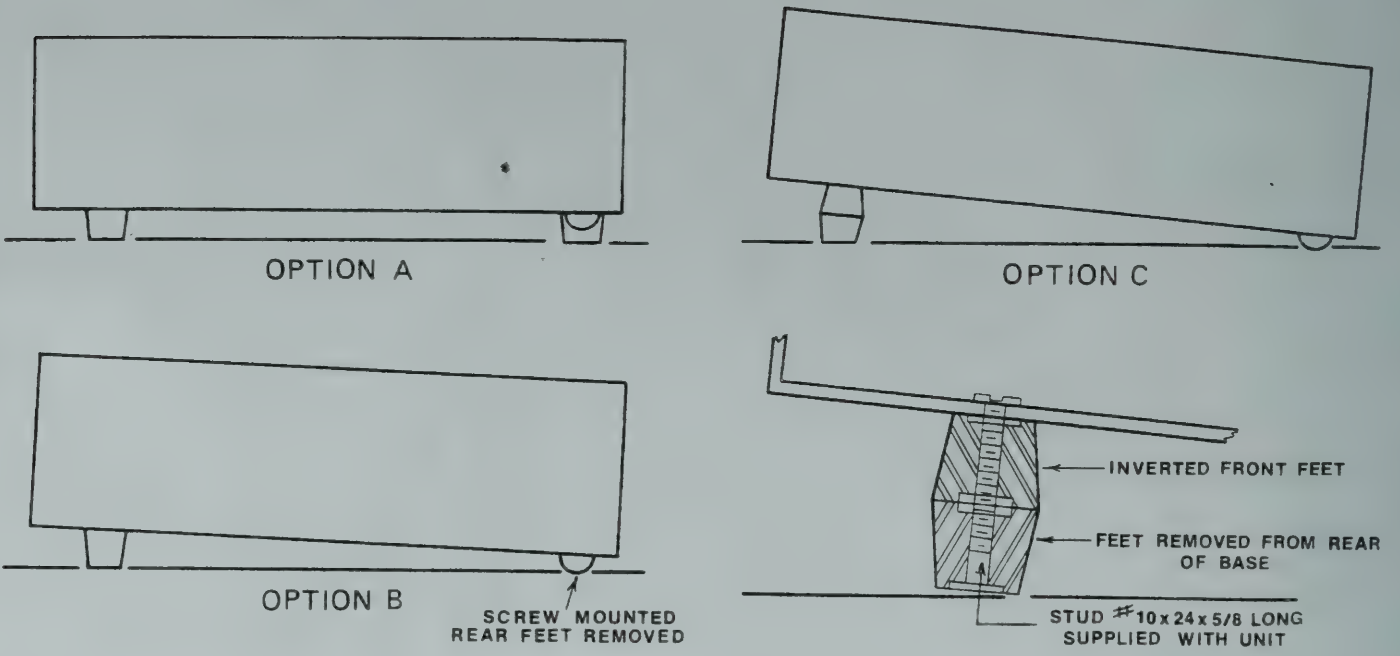

OPTION A
OPTION C
OPTION B
SCREW MOUNTED REAR FEET REMOVED
INVERTED FRONT FEET
FEET REMOVED FROM REAR OF BASE
STUD #10 x 24 x 5/8 LONG SUPPLIED WITH UNIT

Figure 2–5. Viewing Angle Options in a Stationary Installation

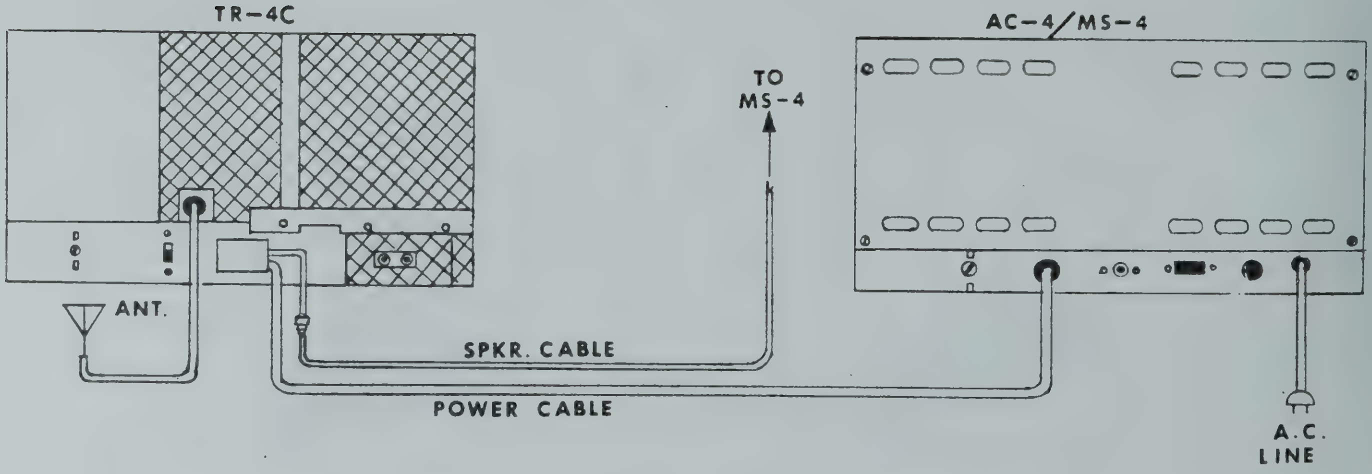
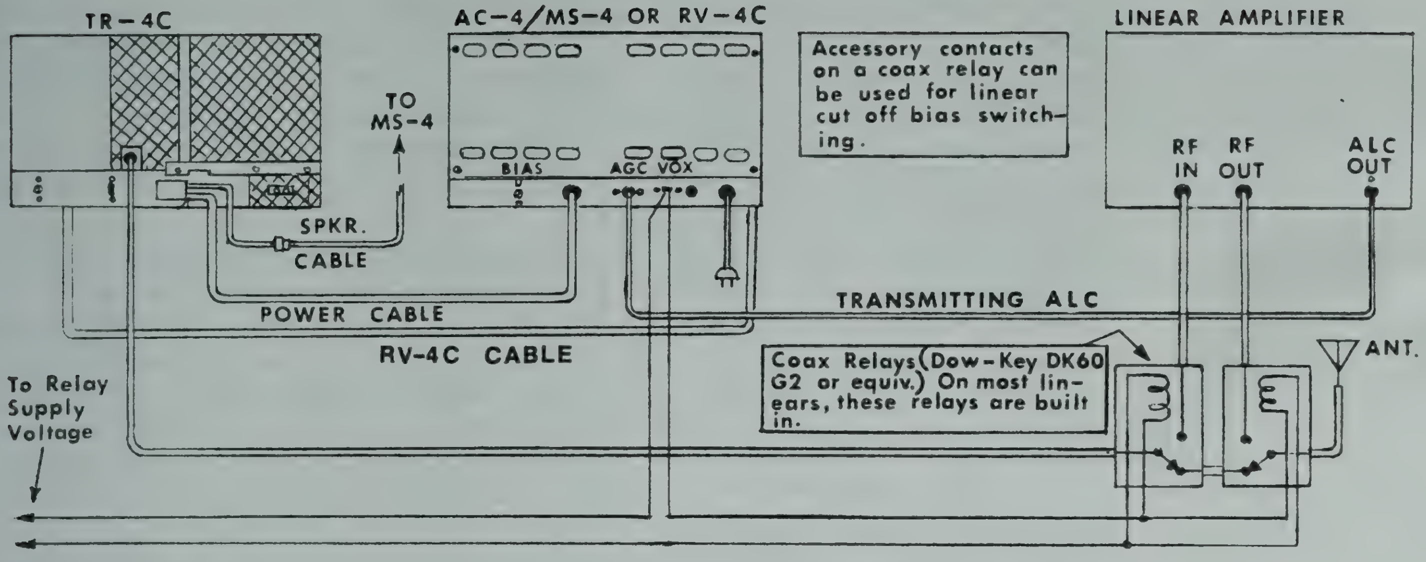

TR–4C
AC–4/MS–4
TO MS–4
ANT.
SPKR. CABLE
POWER CABLE
A.C. LINE

Figure 2–6. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply and MS–4 Speaker


TR-4C
AC-4/MS-4 OR RV-4C
TO MS-4
BIAS
AGC
VOX
SPKR. CABLE
POWER CABLE
RV-4C CABLE
TRANSMITTING ALC
LINEAR AMPLIFIER
RF IN
RF OUT
ALC OUT
ANT.
To Relay Supply Voltage

Accessory contacts on a coax relay can be used for linear cut off bias switching.

Coax Relays (Dow-Key DK60 G2 or equiv.) On most linears, these relays are built in.

Figure 2–7. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply, RV–4C Remote VFO and a Linear Amplifier

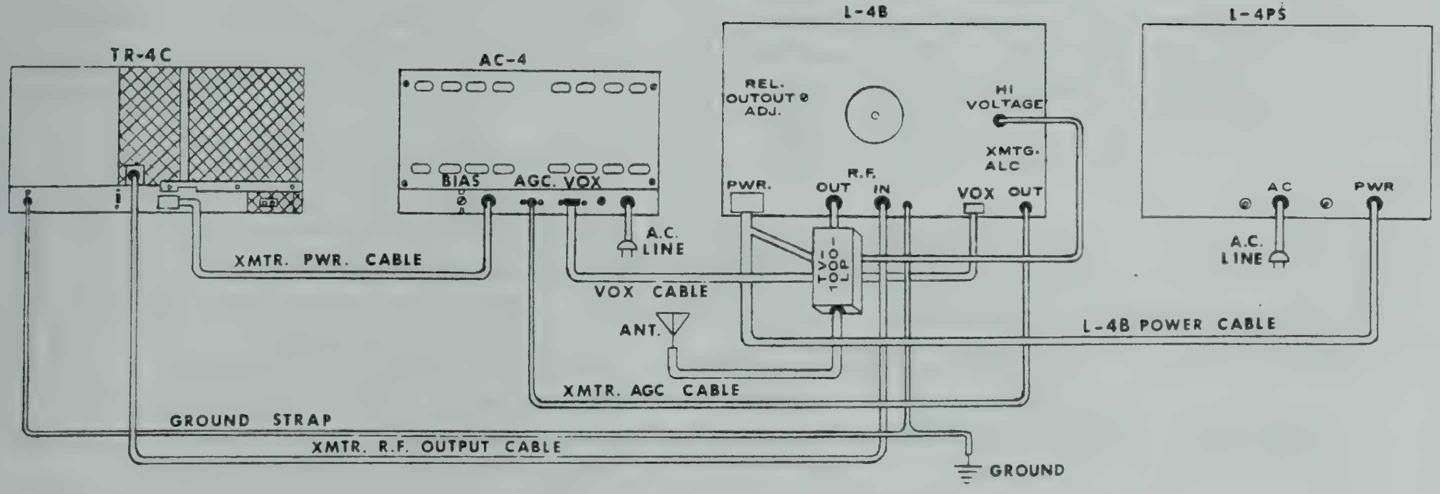
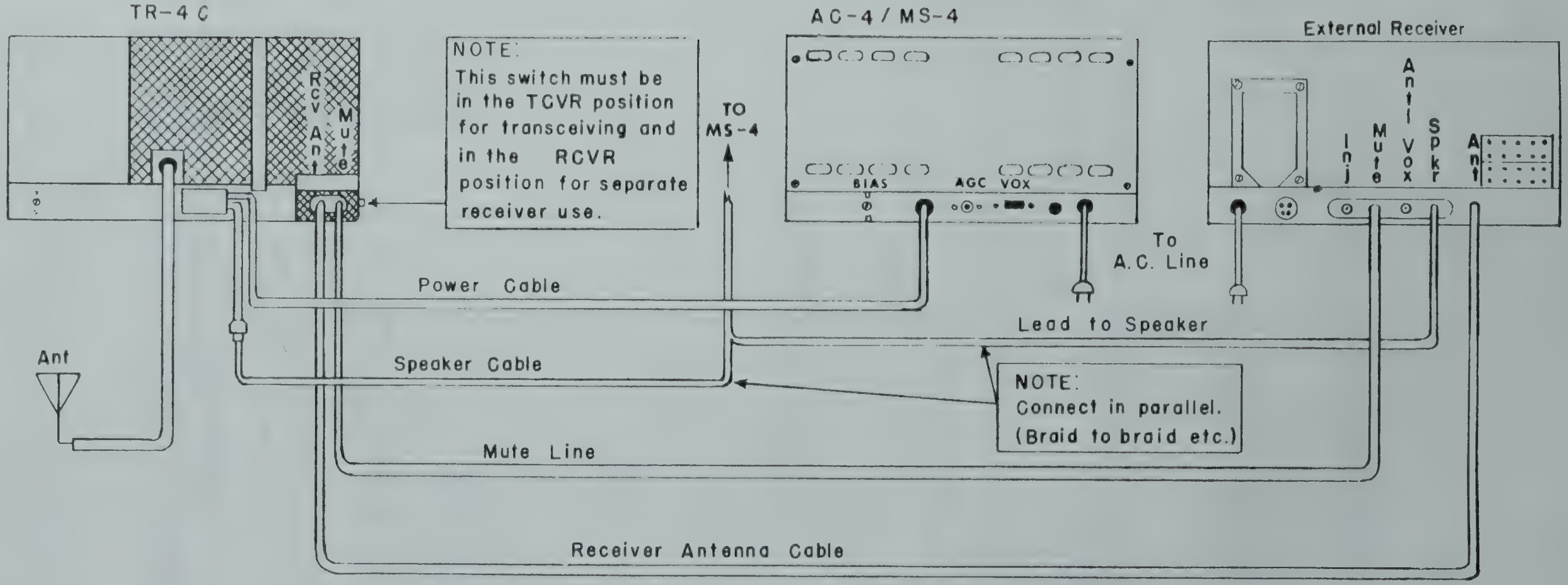

TR-4C
AC-4
BIAS
AGC. VOX
A.C. LINE
XMTR. PWR. CABLE
VOX CABLE
ANT.
XMTR. AGC CABLE
GROUND STRAP
XMTR. R.F. OUTPUT CABLE
GROUND
L-4B
REL. OUTOUT Ø ADJ.
HI VOLTAGE
XMTG. ALC
PWR.
R.F. OUT IN
VOX OUT
L-4B POWER CABLE
L-4PS
AC
PWR
A.C. LINE

Figure 2–8. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply and the L–4B Linear Amplifier


TR-4 C
Rcv Ant
Mute
Ant
AC-4 / MS-4
BIAS
AGC
VOX
External Receiver
Inj
Mute
Anti Vox
Spkr
Ant
TO MS-4
To A.C. Line
Power Cable
Speaker Cable
Lead to Speaker
Mute Line
Receiver Antenna Cable

NOTE:
This switch must be in the TCVR position for transceiving and in the RCVR position for separate receiver use.

NOTE:
Connect in parallel.
(Braid to braid etc.)

Figure 2–9. Connecting an External Receiver

CHAPTER III
OPERATION

3-1. GENERAL.

Figure 3-1 illustrates and describes all front panel controls and indicators on the TR–4C Transceiver. Controls and connectors located on the rear and sides of the unit are described under "other controls" below. Rear chassis connectors are identified in figure 2-2.

3-2. MODE SWITCH. In the SSB position, the receiver portion functions until the transmitter is energized either by talking into the microphone or actuating the microphone push-to-talk switch. The transmitter then emits an upper or lower sideband signal depending on the setting of the SIDEBAND switch. In the X-CW position, the receiver portion functions until the key is closed. The TR–4C then goes into the transmit mode, a CW sidetone is energized and the carrier is shifted approximately 1 kHz from the received frequency. The unit will remain in transmit during CW keying and will return to receive when keying is stopped briefly. NOTE: The SIDEBAND switch must be in the X position when the Mode switch is on X-CW or X-AM. It should also be noted that if the relays fail to close occasionally when the key is used, advance the VOX gain (screwdriver adjust on the right side of the chassis) until positive relay action is obtained. In the X-AM position, a controlled carrier screen modulator is incorporated for AM transmission and a diode detector is used for AM reception. Transmit and receive switching is accomplished by VOX or push-to-talk as on SSB.

3-3. BLANKER SWITCH. The noise blanker may be left on except when there is a strong signal within 5 kHz of the received signal. A strong signal which falls within the 10 kHz wide crystal filter in the noise blanker, and outside the 2.1 kHz crystal filter in the TR–4C, will operate the noise blanker gate circuit causing distortion products. This limitation in the noise blanker is caused by the necessity of having a bandwidth in the blanker wide enough to minimize stretching of noise pulses before blanking. Usually this limitation is no problem under normal operating conditions.

3-4. VFO DIAL. This dial consists of 2 transparent discs which display concentric scales and which rotate at different speeds. There are 2 scales on each disc. The upper scale on each disc is used for all bands except 20 meters where the lower scale is used. Zero to 100 kHz is indicated on one disc and hundreds of kHz is indicated on the other. The frequency of the operating signal is the sum of the frequencies indicated by the BAND switch and the VFO dial, for example:

BAND switch frequency	7.000 MHz
100 kHz dial	.200
1 kHz dial	.072
Operating frequency	7.272 MHz

This dial may be calibrated over a short range by the following procedure:

a. Set the Mode switch to CAL.
b. Tune the TR–4C to zero beat with the nearest 100 kHz calibrator signal.
c. Hold the tuning knob stationary and rotate the knob skirt until the dial displays the correct frequency.

3-5. TUNING PROCEDURE.

CAUTION

Under no circumstances should operation of the TR–4C be attempted until it is connected to a proper antenna or a dummy load. Always allow a two minute warm up period after the TR–4C is turned on before transmitting.

3-6. BIAS ADJUSTMENT. Before any type of operation is attempted, it will be necessary to set the PA bias to the correct value. Proceed as follows:

a. Turn on the TR–4C with the RCVR GAIN control.
b. Rotate the XMTR GAIN control fully counterclockwise.

(continued on page 3–5)

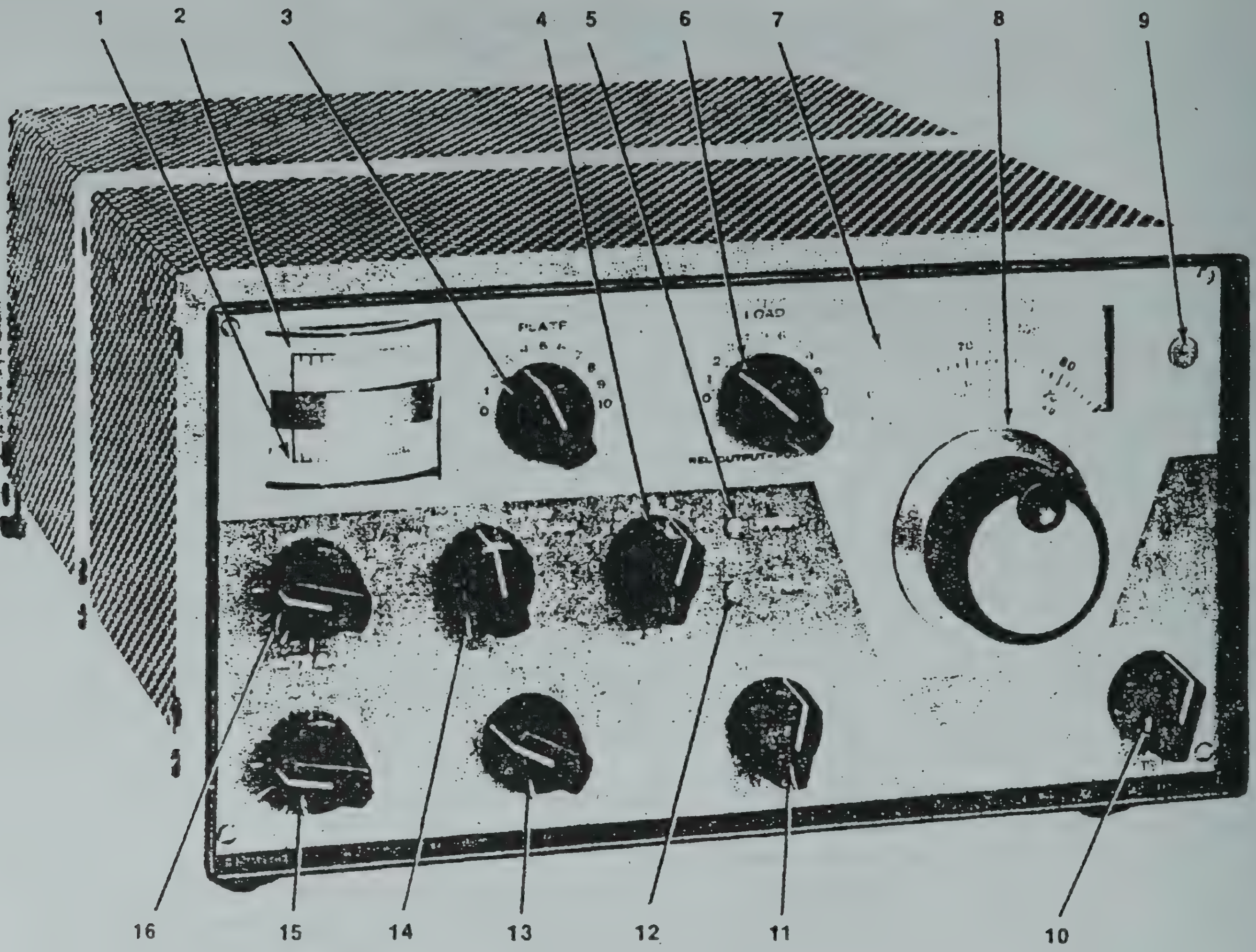

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
PLATE
LOAD
16
15
14
13
12
11
10

Figure 3–1. Front Panel Controls

FRONT PANEL CONTROLS

1. S meter: Indicates relative level of received signals. Indicates transmitter AGC when transmitting.
2. Plate meter: Indicates plate current in the final amplifier. Indicates relative RF power when LOAD control (6) is pushed in.
3. PLATE control: Tunes power amplifier pi-network circuit for resonance.
4. RF TUNE control: Peak tunes the receiver RF amplifier, the transmitter driver grid and plate tuned circuits.
5. UPPER sideband indicator lamp: Glows when upper sideband is selected.
6. LOAD control: Matches the TR–4C to the impedance of the antenna. Push in to display relative RF power on plate meter (2).
7. VFO dial: Displays portion of operating frequency from zero to 600 kHz. Reading must be added to BAND switch frequency setting for complete operating frequency.
8. VFO control: Adjusts frequency setting of dial (7).
9. VFO indicator lamp: Glows only when TR–4C VFO is operating.
10. BLANKER switch: Provides on/off control for R. L. Drake's Model 34–PNB Noise Blanker (an accessory).
11. SIDEBAND switch: Selects upper or lower sideband and lights appropriate indicator lamp (5 or 12).
12. LOWER sideband indicator lamp: Glows when lower sideband is selected.
13. BAND switch: Selects the desired amateur band.
14. Mode switch: Selects the desired mode of operation. In CAL position, it switches on the 100 kHz crystal calibrator (operable in transmit or receiver mode).
15. RCVR GAIN control: Dual control. Knob controls the receiver audio level, and provides a power on/off control at the extreme counterclockwise position. Lever controls the maximum RF gain of the receiver.
16. XMTR GAIN control: Adjusts the microphone gain on AM and SSB. In CW mode it adjusts the RF drive.

OTHER CONTROLS

Right Side (not illustrated).

PHONE jack: Provides a connection for headphones or external speaker.

MIC jack: Provides a connection for microphone. Mates with connector S-230 furnished with the TR—4C.

VOX control: Adjusts the gain of the VOX amplifier and the antenna relay release time on CW.

ANTIVOX control: Adjusts the gain of the ANTIVOX amplifier.

ZERO control: Adjusts the no-signal display of the S meter to S1.

KEY jack: Provides a connection for CW key. With key connected, transmitter is disabled for all modes of operation and receiver is disabled for AM unless the key is closed.

Left Side (not illustrated).

RCVR/TCVR switch: Selects either the TR—4C Receiver or external receiver.

Rear Chassis (Refer to figure 2-2).

Ground terminal: Provides a connection for earth ground.

SIDE TONE control: Adjusts the level of the CW sidetone with respect to the received signal. For no sidetone, rotate fully counterclockwise.

LIGHTS switch: Changes intensity of dial lamps to dim (D) or bright (B).

Antenna connector: Provides a connection for the station antenna (SO-239).

Power connector: Provides a connection for either AC—4 or DC—4 Power Supply.

External Receiver Antenna jack: Provides a connection for an external receiver.

External Receiver Mute jack: Provides a connection for muting an external receiver. It may be used with any receiver which requires a DC path to ground for receiving and an open circuit for muting. All R. L. Drake receivers have this feature.

NOTE

Rear chassis markings *above* the CAUTION notice identify external cable connectors when TR--4C VHF Modification Kit is used.

c. Turn the SIDEBAND switch to its counterclockwise position.
d. Turn the Mode switch to X-CW.
e. Adjust the Power Supply (AC–4 or DC–4) bias control for a reading of 0.1 Amperes on the plate current meter.

3-7. TUNE UP. Do not allow plate current to exceed 0.1 Amperes for more than 6 seconds with the PLATE control not tuned for minimum plate current or maximum RF output.

CAUTION

> Failure to observe the warning above will result in rapid final amplifier tube deterioration due to excessive plate dissipation.

The final amplifier pi-network will match a nominal 50 ohm load. The VSWR may be as high as 2:1 on all bands except 80 meters where a lower VSWR may be required. On 80 meters an external antenna matching network may be required.

Preset the controls as follows:

a. Select the desired band with the BAND switch.
b. Select the desired operating frequency with the VFO tuning knob.
c. Rotate the XMTR GAIN control full counterclockwise.
d. Rotate the LOAD control full counterclockwise.
e. Place the SIDEBAND control in the X position.
f. Place the Mode switch in the SSB position.
g. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum noise or signal as indicated by the S meter.

Rotate the Mode switch to the X-CW position and advance the XMTR GAIN control until the plate current meter moves up scale slightly. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum plate current and quickly tune the PLATE control for a dip in plate current. After the dip is found, rotate the XMTR GAIN control clockwise until plate current no longer increases.

Depress the LOAD control and alternately adjust the PLATE and LOAD controls in small increments for maximum RF output. Release the LOAD control and adjust the PLATE control for minimum plate current. At this point the plate meter should indicate a plate current between 0.380 and 0.500 Amperes. The reading will depend on the line voltage, antenna match, tube condition, etc. Increasing the setting of the LOAD control beyond the point at which maximum RF output occurs will result in excessive plate dissipation. It should not be necessary to advance the LOAD control beyond 4.5 to obtain maximum RF output. Further advancement indicates that the VSWR of the antenna system is too high and leaving the control set beyond this point is likely to result in excessive harmonic radiation. The above procedure should be completed as quickly as possible and the Mode switch should be returned to the SSB position.

When the Mode switch is in the X-CW position, the screen voltage on the final amplifier tubes is reduced to prevent overheating. When the switch is in the SSB position, this voltage is increased so that an input power of 300 watts can be obtained.

3-8. SSB OPERATION.

In the following discussion, it is assumed that the TR–4C has already been tuned up on the desired band as described in paragraph 3-7. Preset the controls as follows:

SIDEBAND	–On desired sideband as shown by indicator lights.
Mode	–On SSB.
XMTR GAIN	–Fully counterclockwise.
RF gain (lever)	–Fully clockwise.
RCVR GAIN (knob)	–Fully counterclockwise (do not turn off power).
VOX gain	–Fully clockwise.
ANTIVOX	–Fully counterclockwise.

While talking into the microphone in a normal voice, increase the XMTR GAIN control until the S meter starts kicking up scale above its resting value. With no modulation, the S meter will rest up scale on transmit. This indicates that the transmitter AGC is starting to operate and the transmitter has maximum output. Continue talking and reduce the VOX gain until a point is reached where further reduction results in a too frequent relay drop out. Increase the AF GAIN until received signals are of the desired level. This may cause the transceiver to cycle back and forth between transmit and receive. Adjust the ANTIVOX control until the cycling stops. If the push-to-talk switch on the microphone is properly connected as described under Installa-

tion, it may be depressed at any time, thus overriding the VOX system. If VOX operation is not desired, turn the VOX gain control fully counterclockwise.

On SSB, the TR–4C transmits on exactly the same frequency on which it receives. Therefore, be sure that you have the signals tuned in so that the voices sound normal before you answer another station's CQ, or break another QSO. Otherwise, you will not be transmitting exactly on frequency. If a key is used, it must either be closed or unplugged from the KEY jack for SSB and AM operation.

3-9. CW OPERATION.

To operate CW, connect a key to the KEY jack. If an electronic keyer is used, connect it for grid block keying. Leave the key in the open condition. The TR–4C uses shifted carrier CW. With this system, it is possible to transmit approximately on the received station's frequency without being zero beat while receiving. The transmitter BFO is shifted from the received signal frequency by approximately 1 kHz. The VFO dial reads the correct frequency of a received signal when the signal is tuned for zero beat.

To receive CW signals, place the Mode switch in the X-CW position and the SIDEBAND switch in the X position. Tune in a CW signal for an audio pitch of about 1 kHz and adjust the audio gain control knob for a normal listening level.

To transmit, depress the key, and adjust the XMTR GAIN control until it is just below the point at which plate current no longer increases. Do not advance it beyond this point. Advance the SIDETONE control on the rear of the chassis until the sidetone reaches the desired volume. Adjusting the RCVR GAIN knob controls both the received signal and sidetone level.

The TR–4C uses automatic transmit/receive switching. This means that it will automatically transmit when the key is depressed and will remain in the transmit condition during keying. It will return to the receive condition when the key is released for a brief period. If this period is too long, decrease the VOX gain. Manual transmit/receive switching can be accomplished by connecting an external switch to the push-to-talk circuit of the MIC jack.

3-10. AM OPERATION.

For AM operation, the Mode switch should be in the X-AM position and the SIDEBAND switch should be in the X position. If a key is used, it should be left closed or unplugged. Tune in AM signals for most pleasing audio. This will not necessarily coincide with maximum S meter reading. The same procedure should be followed in setting the various gain controls on AM as on SSB, except that the XMTR GAIN control should be adjusted for plate current peaks of 0.2 to 0.25 Amperes when talking into the microphone in a normal voice. Care should be taken to stay within these limits since the transmitter AGC does not operate on AM.

3-11. OPERATION NEAR BAND EDGES.

When operating near the edge of a band, be sure to check the dial calibration as described under tuning procedure. When working SSB be sure to use the sideband that will be inside the band. On AM and CW, the transmitted carrier will be 1 kHz higher or lower than the indicated dial frequency.

3-12. OPERATION WITH A LINEAR AMPLIFIER.

Since the TR–4C Transceiver is conservatively rated at 300 watts PEP input, it is doubtful if it would be worthwhile to use a linear amplifier with a power rating of less than 1000 to 2000 watts PEP input. A triode type grounded grid linear amplifier with a 1000 to 2000 watt PEP rating will present a satisfactory load to the TR–4C.

If the linear amplifier is of the grounded cathode type with high impedance input, it will be necessary to install a resistive pad between the TR–4C and the linear amplifier that will present the proper impedance to the TR–4C. Such a pad must be made of non-inductive resistors and must have adequate power handling capacity. Antenna switching should be accomplished as shown in figure 2-7. Most linear amplifiers have these relays built-in.

To properly operate the TR–4C with a linear amplifier proceed as follows:

a. With the TR–4C connected to the linear amplifier tune the RF TUNE control as described in paragraph 3-7 g.
b. Set the LOAD control to the setting indicated on the chart below, for the band desired, when using a linear amplifier with a 50 ohm input.

BAND	50 Ohm LOAD Setting
3.5 MHz	2
7.0 MHz	3
14.0 MHz	2
21.0 MHz	3
28.5 MHz	2

c. Tune the PLATE control for minimum plate current.
d. Switch the Mode switch to the desired mode of operation.
e. Advance the XMTR GAIN control until the desired amount of input to the linear amplifier is obtained.

Note that when the TR–4C is loaded much below maximum RF output the AGC does not function properly and flat topping in the TR–4C may result. Care should be taken to keep the XMTR GAIN below the point where this occurs. This can be accomplished by making sure that the average peak plate current does not exceed one half of the plate current obtained on tune up.

If your linear amplifier has AGC output, connect it to the TR–4C as shown in figure 2-7. If the TR–4C is properly tuned, this should prevent flat topping on SSB regardless of the XMTR GAIN control setting. However, it will not prevent overdrive on AM since the AGC does not function in this mode.

3-13. NOVICE OPERATION.

If used on the novice bands, maximum legal input power is 250 Watts which occurs when the Plate Meter reads .385 Ampere. To realize the most useful output under these conditions, readjustment of the Bias control on the Power Supply is suggested. Follow the Bias Adjustment procedure in paragraph 3-6, except set bias control on AC–4 for .025 Ampere plate current (one fourth of the normal setting). If the transceiver is used on both novice band and by another operator on SSB or AM, the bias must be readjusted to .1 Ampere before voice operation is attempted.

To load the transmitter for novice operation, preset controls as described in paragraph 3-6. Turn the MODE switch to X–CW and advance XMTR GAIN for a very slight increase in plate current. Tune RF TUNE for a peak in plate current, being careful not to exceed .385 Ampere, and quickly tune PLATE control for a dip in plate current. Turn XMTR GAIN control fully clockwise. Adjust LOAD control clockwise and then redip the PLATE control. This procedure should be done repeatedly in small increments. Stop advancing LOAD control when plate current reaches .385 Ampere with the PLATE dipped, or when output power no longer increases, whichever occurs first. Reduce XMTR GAIN until plate current just starts to drop. The transmitter is now ready for operation.

CHAPTER IV
THEORY OF OPERATION

4-1. GENERAL.

The TR–4C is a 300 Watt HF single sideband transceiver which covers the 80 through 10 meter amateur bands. AM and CW modes are also included. The TR–4C requires either an R. L. Drake AC–4, 120 V AC power supply, or an R. L. Drake DC–4, 12 V DC power supply. The TR–4C features a high-stability linear permeability tuned VFO and two 8 pole crystal lattice filters for sideband selection. Some of the circuits are common to both the transmit and receive functions. Refer to the block diagram figure 4-1 and the schematic diagram figure 5-5 as required to supplement the following discussion.

4-2. RECEIVER CIRCUITRY.

A signal entering the antenna terminal passes through the antenna switching contacts of the relay and is applied to the grid of the RF amplifier V7 through the selectivity of the L/C network formed by T9, T10 and a section of the RF TUNE capacitor C37. After being amplified, it is passed through an additional L/C network consisting of T7, T8 and the remaining section of C37, to the grid of the mixer V3B. At this point it is combined with a signal from the premixer system of the required frequency to yield a 9.0 MHz IF. The premixer system consists of a 4.9-5.5 MHz solid state permeability tuned VFO, a buffer Q2, a switchable overtone crystal oscillator V1A, the premixer pentode V1B and a cathode follower V3A.

The VFO signal output is applied to the grid of the premixer pentode through the buffer Q2 and its associated circuitry. For 80 and 20 meter operation, the VFO signal bypasses the premixer and is connected through the cathode follower to the mixer. On 40, 15 and 10 meters a signal from the crystal oscillator heterodynes with the VFO in the premixer, V1B, to produce the desired injection frequency. On 40 meters, for example, a 21.5 MHz overtone crystal and the appropriate coil L1 are switched into the crystal oscillator circuit. The output from the oscillator is coupled into the premixer pentode where it heterodynes with the 4.9-5.5 MHz VFO to produce an output frequency of 16.0-16.6 MHz. This output is coupled through the 16.0-16.6 MHz bandpass coupler, T3, and to the cathode follower, V3A. On 15 meters, a 35.5 MHz crystal is used with a 30.0-30.6 MHz coupler, T2, and on the three 10 meter ranges, 42.5, 43.0 and 43.6 MHz crystals are used with a 37.0-38.7 MHz coupler, T1.

The 9.0 MHz output of the mixer, V3B, passes through the impedance matching transformer T6 into the upper or lower sideband crystal filter. The setting of the SIDEBAND knob determines which crystal filter is used. From the crystal filter the signal passes through the impedance matching transformer, T13, and is amplified by the 9 MHz receiver IF amplifier system, V11 and V12 and the IF transformers T11 and T12. The output of T12 is applied to the AGC amplifier, V13A, to the product detector, V16, and to the diode detector, V2.

The AGC amplifier V13A is biased beyond cutoff to provide an AGC delay. When sufficient RF voltage from T12 is applied to its grid, plate current flows during part of the cycle. This causes amplified negative voltage to appear across its plate load resistor R63, thus charging C115. This negative control voltage is applied to the grids of V7, V11 and V12. C115 discharges through R63 with a time constant of approximately one second. Rotating the RF Gain control counterclockwise applies increasingly more negative bias to the AGC controlled grids, thus limiting their maximum gain.

The product detector tube, V16, consists of a 9 MHz crystal oscillator formed by the cathode, grid 1 and grid 2. A product detector is formed by the cathode, grid 3, and the plate. The IF signal is applied to grid 3 where it heterodynes with the BFO voltage in the tube. The resulting audio signal is of sufficient amplitude to drive the audio preamplifier transistor, Q5, which drives the audio output tube, V17.

The IF signal from T12 is also applied to V2 which functions as a diode detector and an audio amplifier in the AM receive mode. The output of this stage is also fed to the Mode switch and is connected to V17 through the Audio Gain control when the Mode switch is in the X-AM position. The output of V17 is applied through the audio output transformer to the phone jack, J5, and to pin 12 of the power connector. Also, output from the plate of V17 is applied to the anti vox rectifier, D6, through the ANTIVOX control.

A 100 kHz crystal calibrator, V5, is switched on when the Mode switch is in the CAL position. Its output is coupled to the grid of the RF amplifier V7.

The S meter in the TR–4C operates in a bridge circuit with the plates of a receiver IF amplifier, V11, and the transmitter IF amplifier, V15 in one leg of the bridge and plate of the audio output tube V17 in the other leg. Receiver AGC voltage applied to V11 on receive and transmit causes these tubes to draw less current, thus unbalancing the bridge, which causes the S meter to read up scale. The bridge is balanced on receive by the ZERO control. On transmit, the meter may rest up scale with no modulation.

4-3. TRANSMITTER CIRCUITRY.

Audio input from the microphone is applied to one section of the microphone amplifier V18 where it is amplified and applied to the remaining section of this tube through one section of the XMTR GAIN control. Output from the cathode of the second triode of V18 is applied to the balanced modulator through the Mode switch for SSB operation. Output from the plate is applied to the grid of the AM screen modulator, V14, and to the grid of the first VOX amplifier triode, V19A, through the VOX control. The output from V19A is rectified by the VOX rectifier, D5, and the resulting positive DC voltage is applied to the grid of the relay control triode, V19B, causing it to conduct and to close the transmit/receive relay.

Audio voltage from V17 is rectified by the anti vox rectifier, D6, which supplies negative voltage to the grid of V19B, and preventing it from conducting and closing the relay when the microphone picks up audio from the speaker.

Cut off bias for the relay tube is obtained from a voltage divider. When the microphone push-to-talk switch is activated the cut off bias is grounded, causing V19B to conduct and close the relay.

RF from the 9.0 MHz crystal oscillator portion of the product detector tube V16 is applied to the balanced diode modulator through the carrier balance control. On SSB the audio from V18 is also applied to the balanced modulator and the result is a double sideband suppressed carrier signal which is applied to the transmitter IF amplifier. The amplified output is coupled through T13 to the upper or lower crystal filter where the undesired sideband is filtered out. The resulting SSB signal is coupled through T6 to the transmitter mixer, V4, where it is combined with a premixer signal of the proper frequency to give output on the desired amateur band.

Output from V4 passes through the L/C circuit, T7, T8 and C37, and is applied to the grid of the driver tube, V6. Here it is amplified and applied to the grids of V8, V9, and V10 through the L/C network, T9, T10 and the other half of C37.

Three parellel power amplifier tubes boost the signal to a power level suitable for transmission. The output impedance of the power amplifier tubes is matched to a 52 ohm load by means of the pi network circuit composed of L8, L9, C94 and C95.

At the first trace of flat topping in the final amplifier tubes, a small amount of grid current will be drawn. This produces a voltage drop across R47. The small negative going voltage thus obtained is applied through R46 to the cathode of V13B where it is amplified. The amplified negative voltage is applied to the grid of V15, thus reducing the level of the driving signal.

When the Mode switch is placed in the X-CW position, V2 becomes an audio phase shift oscillator which is grid-block keyed along with the transmitter mixer, V4, and the driver, V6. The audio output from V2 is applied to the grid of the

product detector tube V16, through the SIDETONE control, to provide audio output from the speaker for CW monitoring. Audio output from V2 is also applied to the grid of the VOX amplifier tube, V19A, which causes relays K1 and K2 to close. The relays turn on the transmitter, cause the 9.0 MHz oscillator to be shifted to 9.001 MHz and apply a variable source of DC, controlled by half of the XMTR GAIN control, to the balanced modulator. The DC voltage which unbalances the modulator increases the carrier to a suitable level. The resulting 9.001 MHz signal from the balanced modulator is amplified by V15 and coupled into the crystal filter. The SIDEBAND control must be in the "X" position to allow the signal to pass. A screen resistor is switched into the final amplifier screen circuit to prevent excessive screen current in the X-CW position of the Mode switch.

When the Mode switch is placed in the X-AM position the AM screen modulator V14 is inserted in series with the final amplifier screen supply and a constant voltage is applied to the balanced modulator. Relay K2 shifts the 9 MHz oscillator to 9.001 on transmit just as it does on X-CW. Vox and PTT functions are the same on AM as on SSB.

When relay K1 is closed, either by the VOX circuit or the push-to-talk switch, the cathode of V3B, V7, V11 and V12 are isolated from ground which disables the receiver. The cathodes of V4, V6, V8, V9, V10 and V15 are connected to ground which actuates the transmitter. Also, the antenna is switched from the receiver input to the final amplifier tank circuit. If the TCVR/RCVR switch is in the RCVR position, the RCVR MUTE jack is grounded through RFC 11 and RFC 7 and the antenna is connected to the RCVR ANT jack instead of T9 in the receive condition of the relays.

Pushing in the LOAD control disconnects the plate current meter from the final amplifier cathode circuit and connects it to the diode D9 and its associated circuitry. This network samples the RF output voltage at the antenna connection, rectifies it, and applies it across the meter.

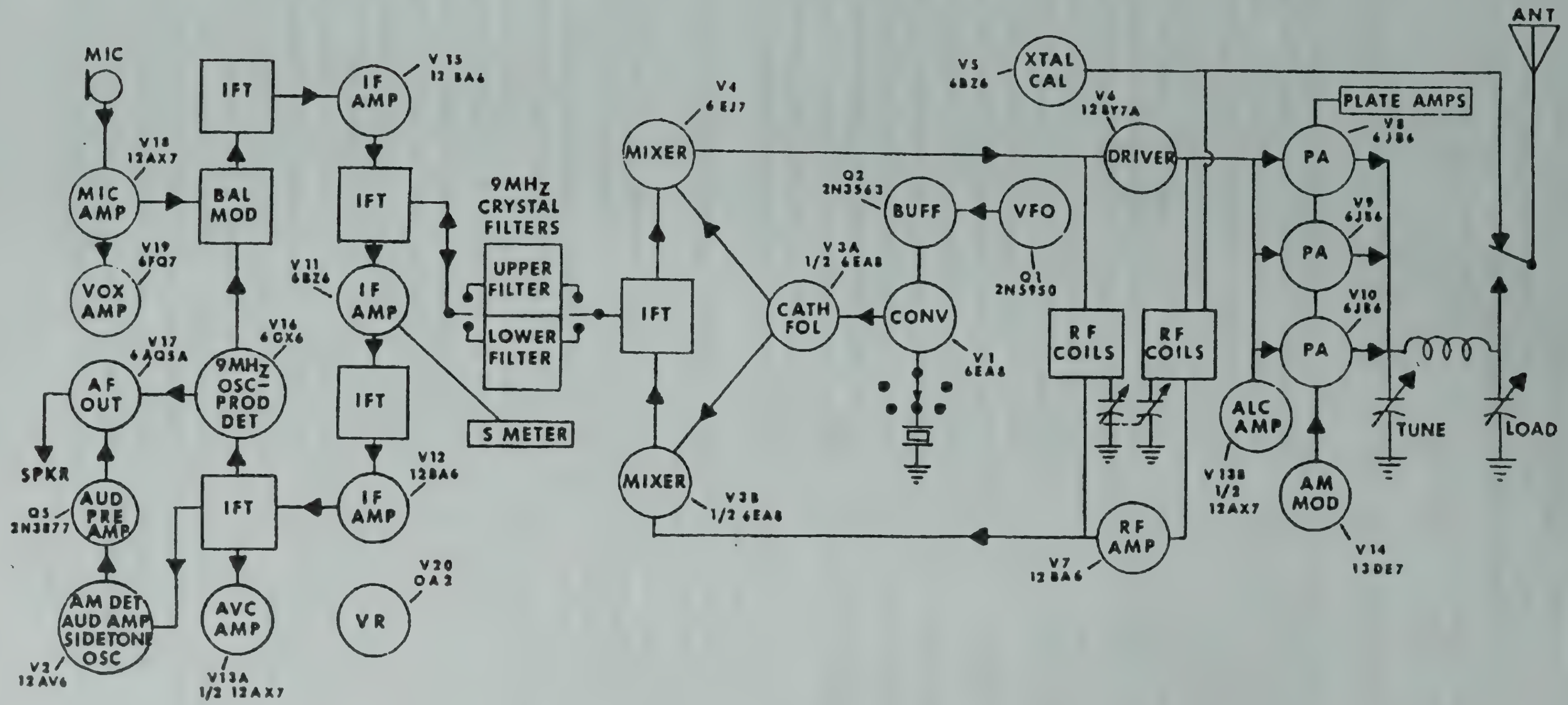

MIC
MIC AMP
V18 12AX7
VOX AMP
V19 6FQ7
AF OUT
V17 6AQ5A
SPKR
AUD PRE AMP
Q3 2N3877
AM DET AUD AMP SIDETONE OSC
V2 12AV6
IFT
BAL MOD
9MHz OSC-PROD DET
V16 6GX6
IFT
AVC AMP
V13A 1/2 12AX7
IF AMP
V13 12BA6
IFT
IF AMP
V11 6BZ6
IFT
IF AMP
V12 12BA6
VR
V20 OA2
9MHz CRYSTAL FILTERS
UPPER FILTER
LOWER FILTER
S METER
IFT
MIXER
V4 6EJ7
MIXER
V3B 1/2 6EA8
CATH FOL
V3A 1/2 6EA8
BUFF
Q2 2N3563
VFO
Q1 2N5950
CONV
V1 6EA8
XTAL CAL
V5 6BZ6
DRIVER
V6 12BY7A
RF COILS
RF COILS
RF AMP
V7 12BA6
ALC AMP
V13B 1/2 12AX7
PLATE AMPS
PA
V8 6JB6
PA
V9 6JB6
PA
V10 6JB6
AM MOD
V14 13DE7
TUNE
LOAD
ANT

Figure 4—1. Block Diagram

CHAPTER V
MAINTENANCE

5-1. SERVICE DATA.

We will check and align your transceiver at the factory for a nominal fee if it has not been tampered with. Transportation charges are extra. Any necessary repairs will be made on a time and material basis. Please write or call the factory for authorization before returning your unit for alignment or service. Address your request for authorization to:

R. L. Drake Company
540 Richard Street
Miamisburg, Ohio 45342
ATTN: Customer Service Department

Telephone: (Area Code 513) 866-3211
(Code-A-Phone Service after
1630 Hours E.S.T.)

WARNING
Extreme caution should be exercised when the top and bottom covers are removed. High voltage which is present at several points can cause a lethal electrical shock. Repairs and adjustments should be made only by a qualified electronics technician. Disconnect the Power Supply from the TR-4C before removing covers.

5-2. TOP COVER REMOVAL.

Remove the three top screws on each side of the TR-4C and remove the cover by first pulling up on the rear and then the front of the cabinet.

5-3. BOTTOM COVER REMOVAL.

Remove the three bottom screws on each side of the TR-4C and lift the chassis out of the bottom cover.

5-4. TUBE REPLACEMENT.

In general, most trouble in electronic equipment of good design is due to tube failure. The best method of finding defective tubes is by direct substitution. It is best not to rely too heavily on tube checkers. The TR-4C has been designed so that, with the exception of V8, V9 and V10, tubes can be replaced without need for realignment. These tubes are to be replaced with a matched set of the same brand as originally supplied. If a different brand is used, alignment of T7, T8, T9 and final amplifier neutralization is recommended. Matched sets of Sylvania 6JB6's are available directly from the factory. To replace the 6JB6 tubes, it is necessary to remove only the top of the final amplifier cage. To do this, remove the sheet metal screws holding the PA cover to the cage. A disc-handle is provided on the cover to facilitate removal. To replace the PA cover, simply reverse the process. Be sure the parasitic suppressors do not short to the cage.

5-5. TROUBLE SHOOTING.

Careful consideration has been given in the design of the TR-4C to keep maintenance problems to a minimum. However, it is quite possible that some problem will arise which cannot be cured by tube substitution. If this occurs, it is suggested that the TR-4C be returned to the dealer or you may write to the Customer Service Department at the address given in paragraph 5-1. Be sure to describe the problem in detail. Include full information concerning external connections, control settings, tubes substituted, serial number, etc. Always include the serial number when requesting service information. Before returning equipment to the factory, it is necessary to get prior authorization. In case of malfunction, first check the power supply fuse, the filament fuse in the TR-4C and the number 12 fuse lamp near the relay assembly for continuity. The voltage and resistance charts in this chapter should be valuable in isolating minor problems.

However, no attempt should be made to service the TR–4C unless you are thoroughly familiar with electronic circuitry and servicing technique. Care should be taken not to disturb the lead dress in the TR–4C since several circuits are quite critical in this regard.

5-6. TEST EQUIPMENT.

Alignment of TR–4C will require the following equipment:

a. A general coverage receiver capable of receiving WWV.
b. An 11 Megohm VTVM.
c. An alignment load consisting of a 1000 Ohm non-inductive resistor in series with a .005 uF disc ceramic capacitor.
d. A 52 Ohm dummy load.

> WARNING
>
> Before receiver alignment is attempted, the plate and screen power leads of the amplifier tubes should be disconnected where they pass through the partition under the chassis. Be sure the power is disconnected before this is attempted, or serious electrical shock may result.

5-7. ALIGNMENT PROCEDURES.

5-8. CRYSTAL CALIBRATOR. To align the crystal calibrator perform the following steps:

a. Let the TR–4C warm up for 30 minutes.
b. Preset the XMTR GAIN control fully counterclockwise.
c. Set the Mode switch to CAL.
d. Tune in WWV on the general coverage receiver with the BFO off.
e. Connect a wire from the receiver antenna terminal to V5 of the TR–4C. Wrap the wire around the tube a turn or two.
f. Adjust C45, located on top of the TR–4C chassis, until the calibrator signal is zero beat with the unmodulated WWV carrier.

5-9. 9.0 MHz OSCILLATOR.

a. Let the TR–4C warm up for 30 minutes.
b. Set the Mode switch in the SSB position.
c. Turn up the Audio Gain control until noise is audible in the speaker.
d. While switching the SIDEBAND knob back and forth, adjust C130, located on top of the chassis near the rear edge, until the pitch of the noise is the same on both positions.

5-10. INJECTION CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR.

a. Set the VTVM to its lowest DC negative volt scale and set the pointer to about center scale with VTVM zero adjust control.
b. Connect the common lead of the VTVM to the TR–4C chassis and the DC lead to the test point which is connected to pin 9 of V1.
c. Set BAND switch to 7.0 MHz and adjust L1 for maximum negative DC voltage.
d. Switch to 21.0 MHz and adjust L5 for maximum as in Step c.
e. Switch to 29.1 MHz and adjust L2 for maximum as in Step c.
f. The 28.0, the 28.5 and the 29.1 MHz positions should have about the same negative voltage.

5-11. VFO ADJUSTMENT.

The permeability tuned VFO was carefully adjusted at the factory and should require no further alignment. If it does not appear to track from one end of its range to the other, it should be returned to the factory for realignment. Maximum calibration error is 1 kHz when calibrated to the nearest 100 kHz point.

5-12. INJECTION COUPLER.

a. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 7.3 MHz.
b. Connect the alignment load between pin 6 of V1B and ground and adjust T3 (top) for maximum S meter reading.
c. Connect the load from pin 9 of V3A and ground and adjust T3 (bottom) for maximum S meter reading.
d. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 21.300 MHz and repeat the procedure for T2. .
e. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 29.000 MHz and repeat the above procedure for T1. *Note:* On T1, adjust the bottom slug when the load is on pin 6 of V1B and the top slug when the load is on pin 9 on V3A.

Table 5–1. Resistance Chart

REF DES	Tube Type	MEASURED AT PIN								
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
V1	6EA8	9.5 K	2.5 Meg	20 K	0	Fil	9.6 K	220	220	150 K
V2	12AV6	3.3 Meg	Inf.	Fil	0	150 K	150 K	350 K	—	—
V3	6EA8	8.0 K	150 K	250 K	Fil	0	11 K	2.2 K	1 K	34 K
V4	6EJ7	25 K	660 K	23 K	Fil	0	0	11 K	9.5 K	0
V5	6BZ6	1 Meg	1 K	Fil	0	350 K	125 K	1 K	—	—
V6	12BY7A	25 K	67 K	0	0	0	Fil	8.5 K	25 K	0
V7	12BA6	2.8 Meg	0	Fil	0	11 K	10K	100	—	—
V8	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V9	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V10	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V11	6BZ6	2.5 Meg	150	0	Fil	10 K	13 K	0		
V12	12BA6	2.5 Meg	0	Fil	0	10 K	13 K	68		
V13	12AX7	1 Meg	22 K	45 K	0	0	2.2 Meg	55 K	48 K	Fil
V14	13DE7	8 K	2.5 Meg	2.5 Meg	Fil	0	2.2 Meg	22 Meg	0	Inf.
V15	12BA6	2 Meg	0	0	Fil	10 K	13 K	25 K	—	—
V16	6GX6	2.2 Meg	1 K	0	Fil	250 K	9.2 K	22 K	—	
V17	6AQ5	500 K	270	0	Fil	8.7 K	8 K	500 K		
V18	12AX7	350 K	6.8 Meg	0	0	Fil	350 K	500 K	3.3 K	N. C.
V19	6FQ7	12 K	4.5 Meg	0	Fil	0	100 K	620 K	820	1.6 Meg
V20	OA2	7.8 K	0	Inf.	0	7.8 K	Inf.	0		

REF DES	Transistor Type	MEASURED AT:		
		Emitter	Base	Collector
Q1	2N5950	Located in PTO		
Q2	2N3563	Located in PTO		
Q3	AT5059	0	5.6 K	43 K
Q4	2N3394	0	750	1.1 K
Q5	2N3877	1 K	56 K	6.8 K

NOTE:
All measurements were made with respect to ground with the power supply disconnected from the TR-4C. The BAND switch was on 7.0 MHz, the Mode switch was on CAL and the RCVR GAIN and XMTR GAIN controls were fully clockwise. The VOX, ANTI VOX and SIDETONE controls were fully clockwise and the ZERO control was set at the balance point. The accessory 34-PNB jumper plug was in the noise blanker jack.

Table 5–2. Voltage Chart

REF DES	Tube Type	MEASURED AT PIN								
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
V1	6EA8	122	–2	125	0	6.3*	250 245	2.6	2.6	–1.3
V2	12AV6	0 –1.6	13.0 0	12.6*	0	0 0.9	0 0.9	255 122		
V3	6EA8	155 150	0	98 150	6.3*	0	260 250	3.5 150	17 15.5	17 15.2
V4	6EJ7	155 2.8	0	NC	6.3*	0	0	270 230	175 145	
V5	6BZ6	–42 0	0.9 23	12.6*	6.3*	70 140	58 144	0.9 23		
V6	12BY7A	155 3.3	0	NC	0	0	6.3*	265 240	262 165	0
V7	12BA6	–.14	0	12.6*	0	235 230	98 110	1.25 150		
V8	6JB6	262 250	–60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	–60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V9	6JB6	262 250	–60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	–60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V10	6JB6	262 250	–60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	–60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V11	6BZ6	–.16	1.6 150	0	6.3*	235	125 150	0		
V12	12BA6	–.16	0	12.6*	0	240	105 150	1.1 150		
V13	12AX7	–.1 0	–61 –61	–59 –59	0	0	–.16	–61 –61	–59 –58	6.3*
V14	13DE7	260 250	11.4 11.2	11.4 11.2	12.6*	0	11.4 11.2	–1.0 –1.0	0	64 53
V15	12BA6	0	0	0	12.6*	248 140	155 144	155 1.3		
V16	6GX6	–6.0 –5.6	4.0	0	6.3*	140 140	140	0		
V17	6AQ5	0	7.2 6.8	0	6.3*	240 230	155 150	NC		
V18	12AX7	88 87	–.75	0	0	12.6*	130 125	0	1.23 1.1	NC
V19	6FQ7	240 165	–9.5 0	0	6.3*	0	67 87	0	1.5 1.27	TP
V20	OA2	146	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	0		

Table 5–2. Voltage Chart (continued)

REF DES	Transistor Type	MEASURED AT:		
		Emitter	Base	Collector
Q1	2N5950	Located in PTO		
Q2	2N3563	Located in PTO		
Q3	AT5059	0	0	61
Q4	2N3394	0	11.2	0
Q5	2N3877	2.3	2.8	48

NOTE:
All measurements were made with an 11 Megohm VTVM and were taken from ground. RF TUNE, PLATE and LOAD controls were set as described in paragraph 3-7. BAND switch was on 7.0 MHz, VFO dial was at 7.250 MHz and SIDEBAND was on X. Receive measurements were made with the Mode switch in the CAL position and the transmit measurements were made with the Mode switch in the X-CW position, with the following exception:

On V14, both receive and transmit measurements were made with the Mode switch in the X-AM position and with PTT line grounded.

The AC–4 Power Supply was used. Where two voltages are shown, the top is for receive and the bottom is for transmit. An "*" indicates AC voltage. The accessory 34–PNB jumper plug was in the noise blanker jack.

5-13. RECEIVER IF.

a. Peak the RF TUNE control on noise at 3.8 MHz.
b. Adjust T11 top and bottom and T12 top and bottom for maximum noise from the speaker.

5-14. BALANCED MODULATOR AND CARRIER BALANCE.

a. Disconnect the power supply and reconnect the screen and plate supply leads to the final amplifier tubes.
b. Reconnect power supply.
c. Connect dummy load to the antenna jack.
d. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum receiver gain.
e. Adjust bias per paragraph 3-6. With XMIT GAIN fully counterclockwise, place the Mode switch in X--CW position and SIDEBAND switch in X position.
f. If the plate current exceeds 0.15 Ampere, adjust the RF TUNE for 0.15 Ampere maximum.
g. If plate current is less than 0.15 Amperes, adjust Carrier Balance pot until plate current reaches 0.15 Amperes.
h. Peak T14 for maximum plate current. Detune the RF TUNE control to prevent plate current from exceeding 0.15 Amperes.
i. Alternately adjust the Carrier Balance control and C127 for minimum plate current. There should be no difference in plate current between the two positions of the SIDEBAND switch.

5-15. FILTER MATCHING TRANSFORMER.

a. Adjust the S meter ZERO pot for zero S meter deflection (S-1).
b. With the SIDEBAND switch in USB, tune in the calibrator signal at 3.8 MHz for maximum S meter reading.
c. Adjust the RF TUNE control until the S meter reads S-9.
d. Turn the VFO control clockwise to increase the audio frequency until the S meter drops to S-5.
e. Adjust T6 and T13 for maximum S meter reading.
f. Repeat Steps b. through e.
g. Center the 9.0 MHz oscillator as described in paragraph 5-9.

5-16. MIXER AND RF ALIGNMENT.

a. Tune up the TR–4C at 3.8 MHz for maximum power output into a dummy load. Set the RF TUNE control on 5. Adjust the XMTR GAIN control for 0.2 Amperes plate current as indicated by the plate meter. Adjust T7 bottom and T9 bottom for maximum plate current.
b. Tune up the TR–4C at 7.3 MHz and repeat a. above, with the RF TUNE control on 6, by adjusting T8 top and T10 top.
c. Set RF TUNE control on 5. Tune up the TR–4C at 14.3 MHz and repeat a. above by adjusting T7 top and T9 top.
d. Tune up the TR–4C at 29.7 MHz (crystal not supplied). With the RF TUNE control at 9¾ repeat a. above by adjusting T8 bottom and T10 bottom.
e. Set RF TUNE control on 5. Tune up the TR–4C at 21.3 MHz and repeat a. above by adjusting L6 and L7.

5-17. PA NEUTRALIZATION.

a. Attach an RF output indicator between the TR–4C and the dummy load. If no external output indicator is available, the TR–4C's own RF output indicator may be used.
b. Tune up the TR–4C on 29.0 MHz for maximum power output into a dummy load.
c. Reduce plate current to 0.2 Amperes with the XMTR GAIN control.
d. While tuning the PLATE control back and forth through resonance, adjust C76, using an insulated screwdriver, until the plate current dip and maximum RF output occur simultaneously. An insulated screwdriver is required because the rotor of C76 is connected to + 250 Volts DC.

5-18. TRANSMITTER IF NEUTRALIZATION.

a. With microphone plugged into TR–4C, turn the VOX gain fully counterclockwise and turn XMTR GAIN fully clockwise. Place the Mode switch in the SSB position.
b. While talking into the microphone, increase the RCVR GAIN control setting until speech can be heard from the speaker.
c. Adjust C168 for minimum output from speaker.
d. If over one turn of adjustment is required, it will be necessary to realign T14, C127 and the Carrier Balance control.

5-19. S METER ADJUSTMENT.

With the RF GAIN control fully counterclockwise adjust R187 for an S meter reading of 60 dB over S-9.

Table 5–3. Tube and Semiconductor Complement

REF DES	Component Type	FUNCTION	
		Transmitter	Receiver
V1	6EA8	Pre-Mixer/Xtal Oscillator	Pre-Mixer/Xtal Oscillator
V2	12AV6	Sidetone Oscillator	Diode Det/1st AF Amplifier
V3	6EA8	Cathode Fol.	Mixer/Cathode Fol.
V4	6EJ7	Mixer	—
V5	6BZ6	—	Crystal Calibrator
V6	12BY7	Driver	—
V7	12BA6	—	RF Amplifier

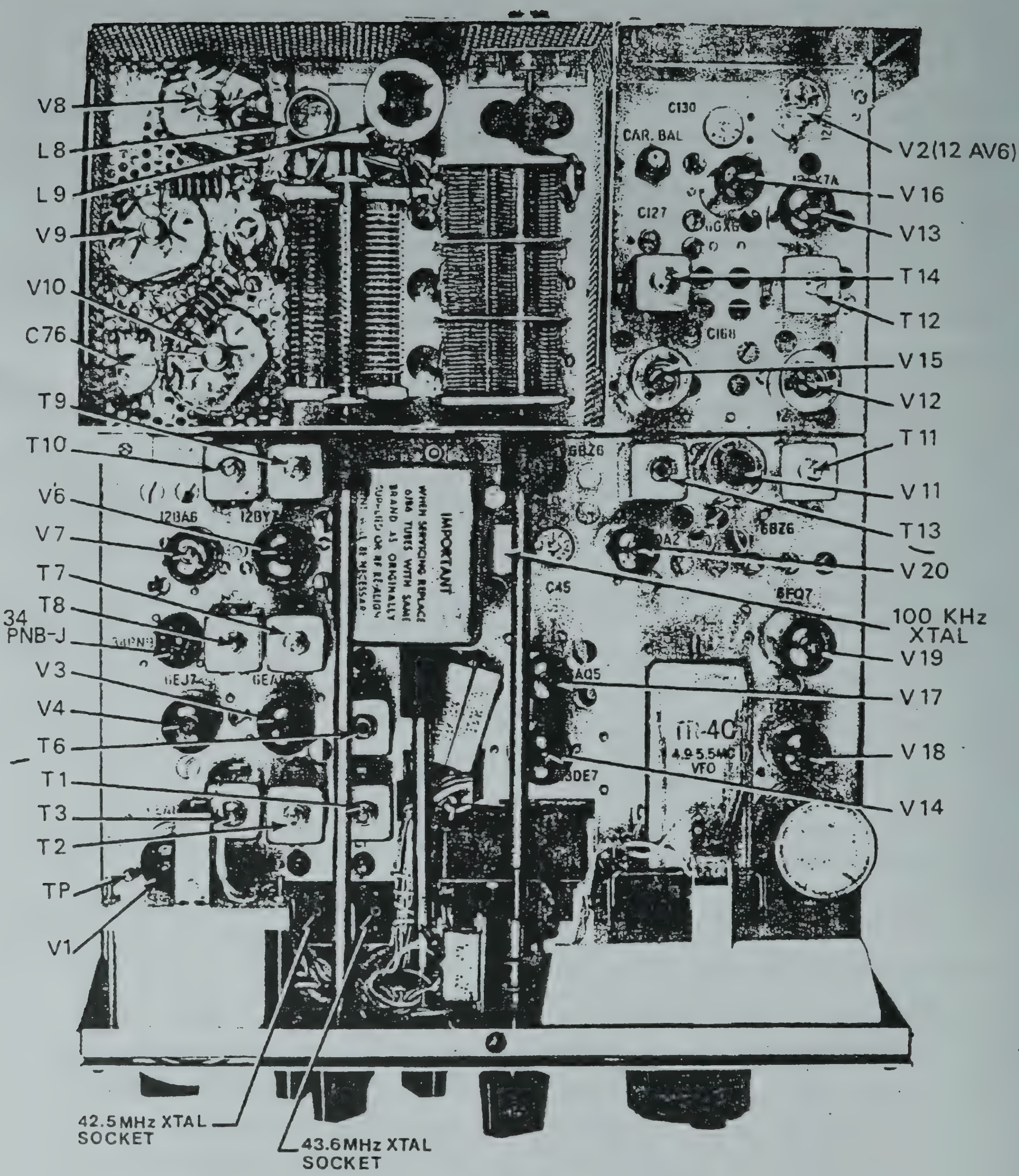

V8
L8
L9
V9
V10
C76
T9
T10
V6
V7
T7
T8
34 PNB-J
V3
V4
T6
T1
T3
T2
TP
V1
42.5MHz XTAL SOCKET
43.6MHz XTAL SOCKET
V2(12 AV6)
V16
V13
T14
T12
V15
V12
T11
V11
T13
V20
100 KHz XTAL
V19
V17
V18
V14
C130
CAR. BAL
C127
C168
C45
TR-40
4.9-5.5MC VFO
IMPORTANT

Figure 5–1. Alignment Locations, Top View

Table 5–3. (Continued)

REF DES	Component Type	FUNCTION	
		Transmitter	Receiver
V8, V9, V10	(3) 6JB6 Matched	Power Amps.	—
V11	6BZ6	—	IF Amplifier
V12	12BA6	—	IF Amplifier
V13	12AX7	AGC	AGC
V14	13DE7	AM Screen Modulator	—
V15	12BA6	IF Amplifier	—
V16	6GX6	9 MHz Xtal Oscillator	BFO/Product Detector
V17	6AQ5A	Anti Vox	Audio Output
V18	12AX7	Mike Amplifier	—
V19	6FQ7	VoxAmp/Relay	—
V20	OA2	Voltage Regulator	Voltage Regulator
Q1	2N5950	VFO	VFO
Q2	2N3563	VFO Buffer	VFO Buffer
Q3	AT5059	Neon Driver	Neon Driver
Q4	2N3394	VFO Shut Off	VFO Shut Off
Q5	2N3877	—	Audio Pre-Amp
D1	1N541	Balanced Modulator	
D2	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D3	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D4	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D5	1N4148	Vox Detector	—
D6	1N4148	Anti Vox Detector	—
D7	1N4148	Vox Relay Speed Up	—
D8	1N714	Voltage Regulator	Voltage Regulator
D9	1N4148	Output Power Detector	—
D10	1N4148	Anti Vox Detector	—
D11	1N4148	Output Power Detector	—
D12	1N4148	Meter Control	—
D13	1N4148	Transient Suppressor	Transient Suppressor
D14	1N4148	AGC Isolation	—

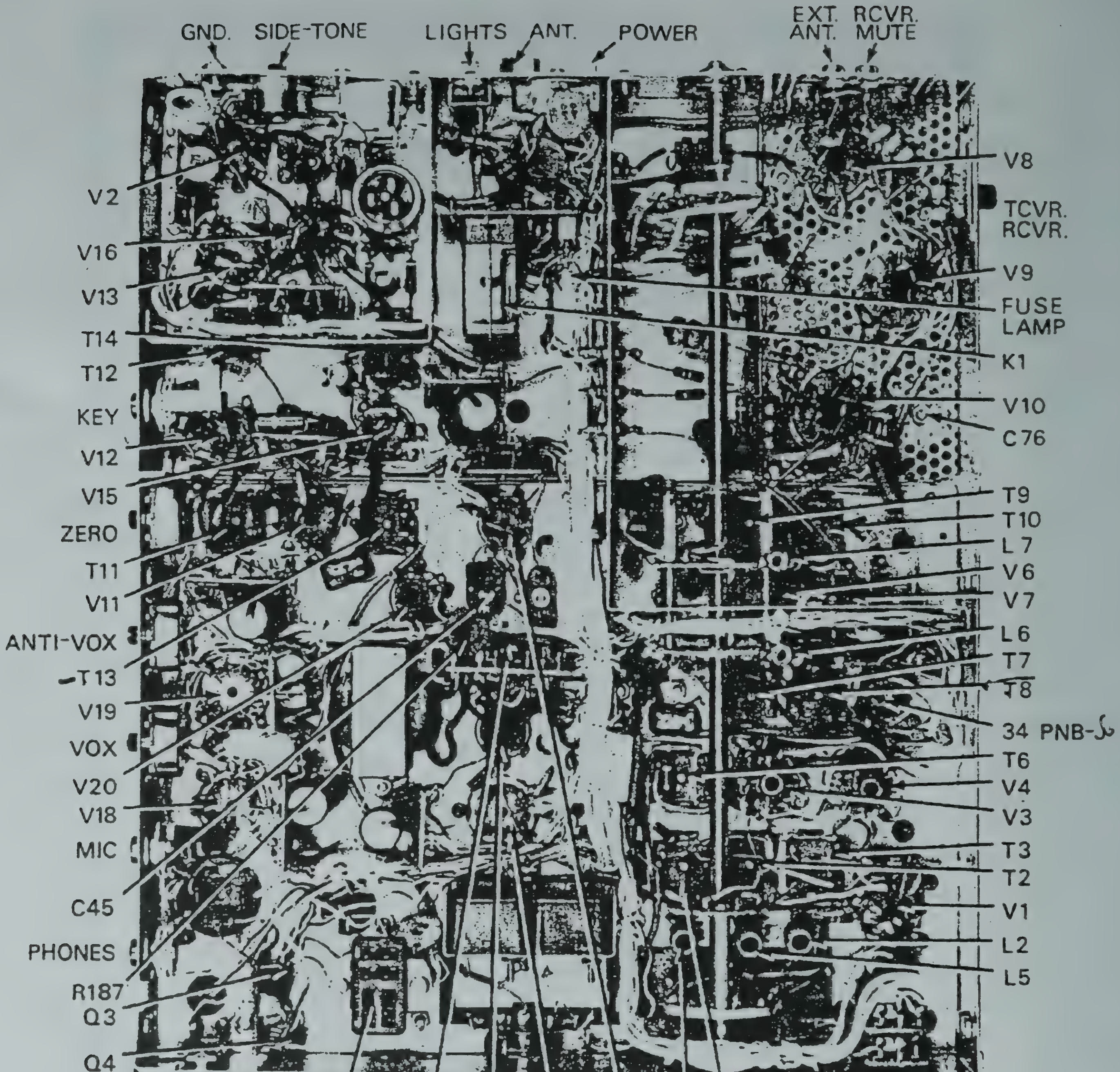
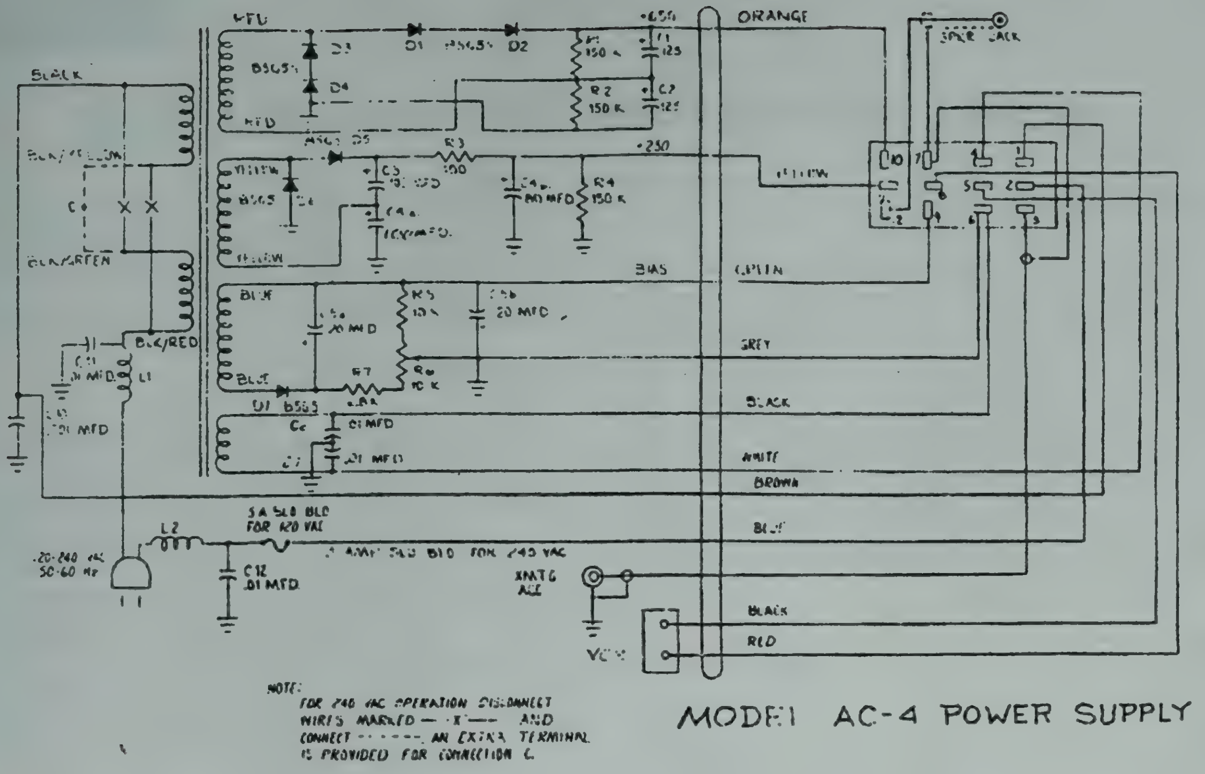
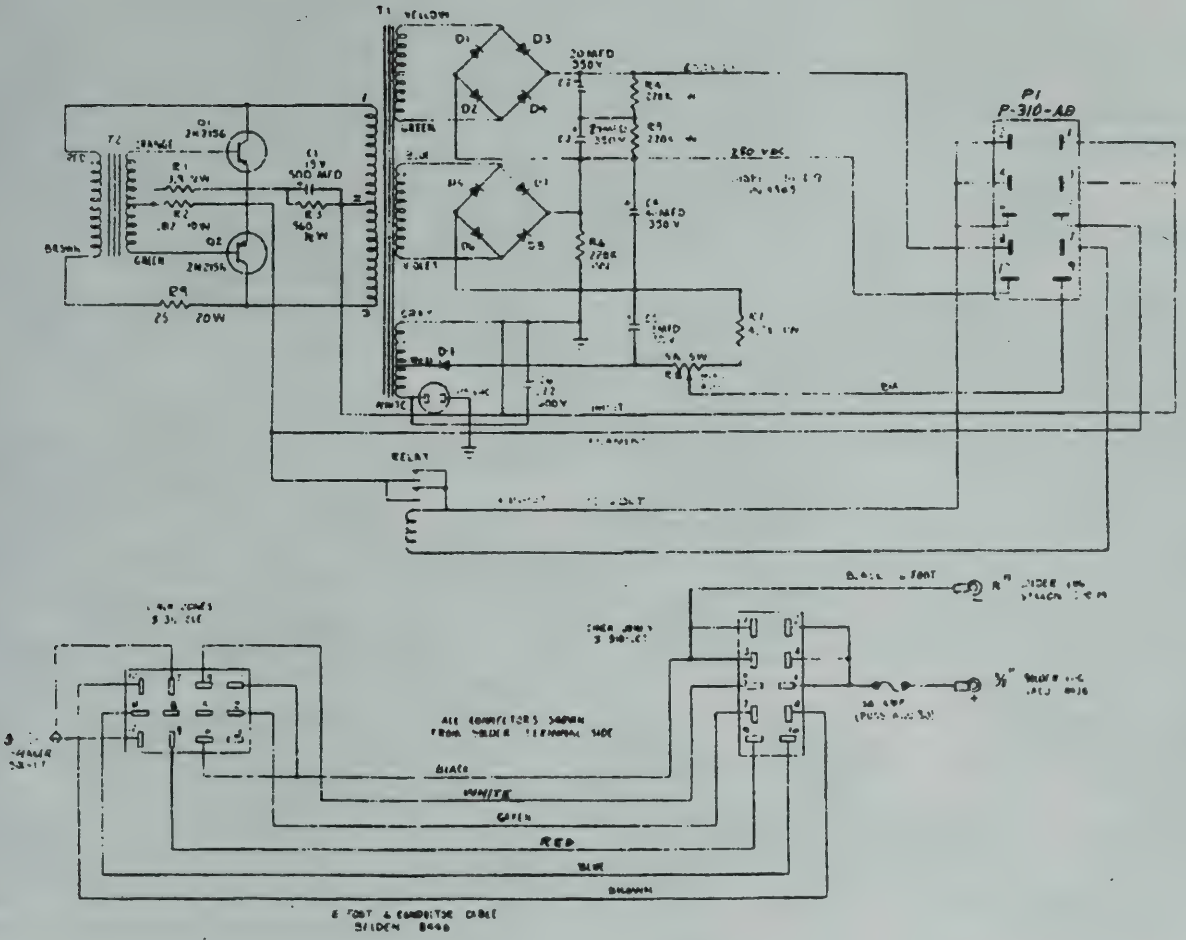

GND.
SIDE-TONE
LIGHTS
ANT.
POWER
EXT. ANT.
RCVR. MUTE
V2
V16
V13
T14
T12
KEY
V12
V15
ZERO
T11
V11
ANTI-VOX
T13
V19
VOX
V20
V18
MIC
C45
PHONES
R187
Q3
Q4
V8
TCVR. RCVR.
V9
FUSE LAMP
K1
V10
C76
T9
T10
L7
V6
V7
L6
T7
T8
34 PNB-
T6
V4
V3
T3
T2
V1
L2
L5
J2
Q5
V17
V14
V5
L1
T1

Figure 5–2. Alignment Locations, Bottom View


RED
+650
ORANGE
SPKR JACK
D1
BSG5
D2
D3
D4
R1 150 K
C1 125
R2 150 K
C2 125
BLACK
BLK/YELLOW
BLK/GREEN
BLK/RED
D5
R3 100
+250
YELLOW
C3
C4
R4 150 K
BIAS
GREEN
BLUE
R5 10 K
20 MFD
R6 10 K
R7
GREY
C11 .01 MFD
L1
C10 .01 MFD
D7 BSG5
.01 MFD
C7 .01 MFD
BLACK
WHITE
BROWN
L2
5A SLO BLO FOR 120 VAC
3 AMP SLO BLO FOR 240 VAC
120-240 VAC 50-60 Hz
C12 .01 MFD
BLUE
XMTG ACC
BLACK
RED
VOX
NOTE:
FOR 240 VAC OPERATION DISCONNECT WIRES MARKED —X— AND CONNECT - - - - - - AN EXTRA TERMINAL IS PROVIDED FOR CONNECTION C.

MODEL AC-4 POWER SUPPLY

Figure 5–3. AC–4 Power Supply Schematic


T1
YELLOW
D1
D3
D2
D4
20 MFD 350V
R4 270K
R5 270K
GREEN
C3
C4
350 V
P1
P-310-AB
T2
ORANGE
RED
Q1 2N3156
Q2 2N3156
R1
R2
R3
C1 15V 500 MFD
BROWN
GREEN
R9
25 20W
250 VDC
R6 270K
VIOLET
GREY
C5
R7
D5
D8
WHITE
RELAY
BLACK
WHITE
GREEN
RED
BLUE
BROWN
6 FOOT 6 CONDUCTOR CABLE BELDEN 8446
ALL CONNECTORS SHOWN FROM SOLDER TERMINAL SIDE
Figure 5–4. DC–4 Power Supply Schematic

MODEL 34-PNB PLUG-IN NOISE BLANKER

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

The 34—PNB Noise Blanker is a solid-state unit designed for use with the TR—4C and TR—4 Transceivers. Unlike noise clippers or limiters commonly found in communications equipment, this is an advanced noise blanker which mutes the receiver for the duration of the noise pulse. Between noise pulses full receiver gain is restored. Receiver AGC is affected only by the desired signal and not by noise. The 34—PNB is most effective on strong, periodic noise impulses such as automobile ignition noise.

INSTALLATION.

Disconnect the power connector from the TR—4C or TR—4. Remove the top half of the transceiver cabinet. Remove the 7 pin jumper plug located in front of the power amplifier cage. With the printed circuit side of the 34—PNB facing the outside of the transceiver chassis, carefully plug in the 34—PNB. After it is correctly seated in the socket, install a number 4 self-tapping screw in each corner of the 34—PNB bracket to secure it to the transceiver chassis. Replace the cabinet top. Some alignment may be necessary at the time of installation. See ALIGNMENT below.

OPERATION.

The BLANKER switch on the transceiver is used to turn the accessory 34—PNB Noise Blanker on and off. The Noise Blanker may be left on except when there is a strong signal within 5 kHz of the received signal. A strong signal which falls within the 10 kHz wide crystal filter in the Noise Blanker, and outside the 2.1 kHz wide crystal filter in the transceiver, will operate the Noise Blanker gate circuit causing distortion products. This limitation in the Noise Blanker is caused by the necessity of having a bandwidth in the blanker wide enough to minimize stretching of noise pulses before blanking. Under normal operating conditions, this limitation is no problem.

CIRCUIT DESCRIPTION.

This noise blanker system is composed of the three major networks described below. Refer to the block diagram and schematic diagram to follow this circuit description.

TRANSMITTING PATH.

The transmitting path consists of a single RC coupled 9 MHz amplifier which passes the transmitter signal through the blanker. The signal then passes through the crystal filter passband and into the transmitter mixer.

RECEIVER PATH.

The signal first passes through a crystal filter with a bandwidth wide enough to pass most of the noise frequency components but narrow enough to keep strong adjacent signals from overloading the noise blanker amplifier. The signal simultaneously enters the noise processor and the delay circuit, a reactive network which compensates for the inherent phase-shift of the noise processing section. The 9 MHz receive amplifier provides an overall system gain for the receive path. The balanced gate is an electronic series switch that opens for noise pulses but closes to allow the signal to pass.

NOISE PROCESSOR.

The signal passes through the tuned 9 MHz amplifier and into the balanced mixer. This mixer converts the 9 MHz noise pulses to 2150 kHz and prevents the high level 6.85 MHz oscillator signal from reaching the amplifier strip. The 2150 kHz noise pulses pass through the two amplifiers, the detector and into the gate driver. The driver reverse-biases the gate at the instant a 9 MHz noise pulse enters on its way to the receiver IF. The gate then is controlled by the same pulse it is blanking, enabling it to respond automatically to pulses of varying width.

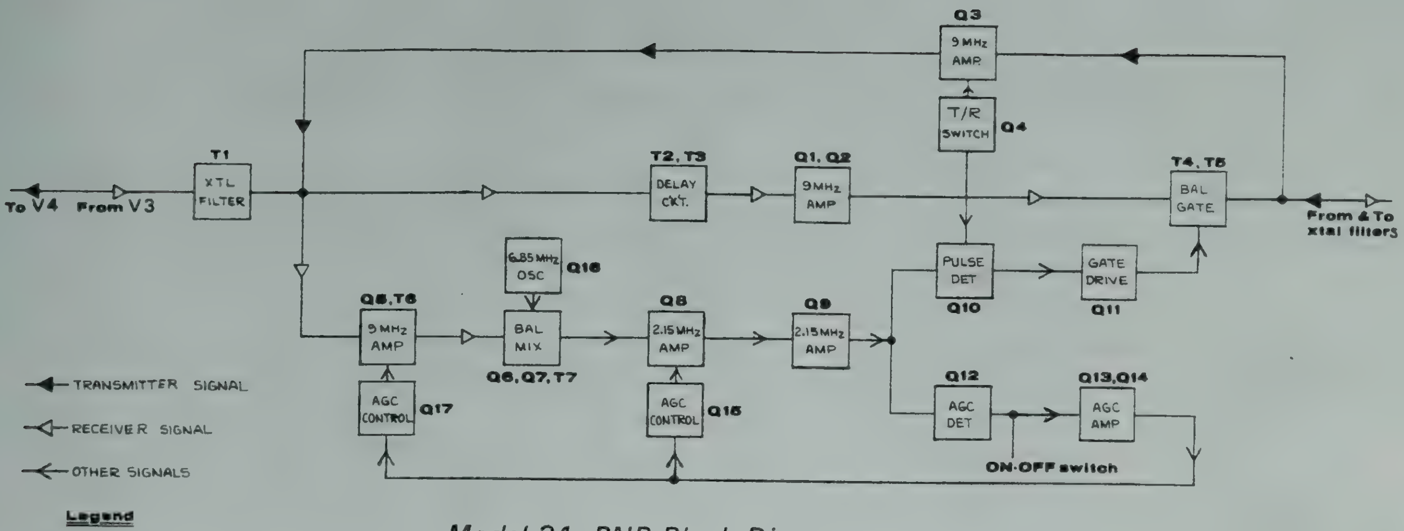
ALIGNMENT.

It is recommended that the TR—4 series transceiver be tuned to 40 meters on receive when the following procedure is performed. Refer to the Model 34—PNB Alignment Locations illustration to locate the alignment points.

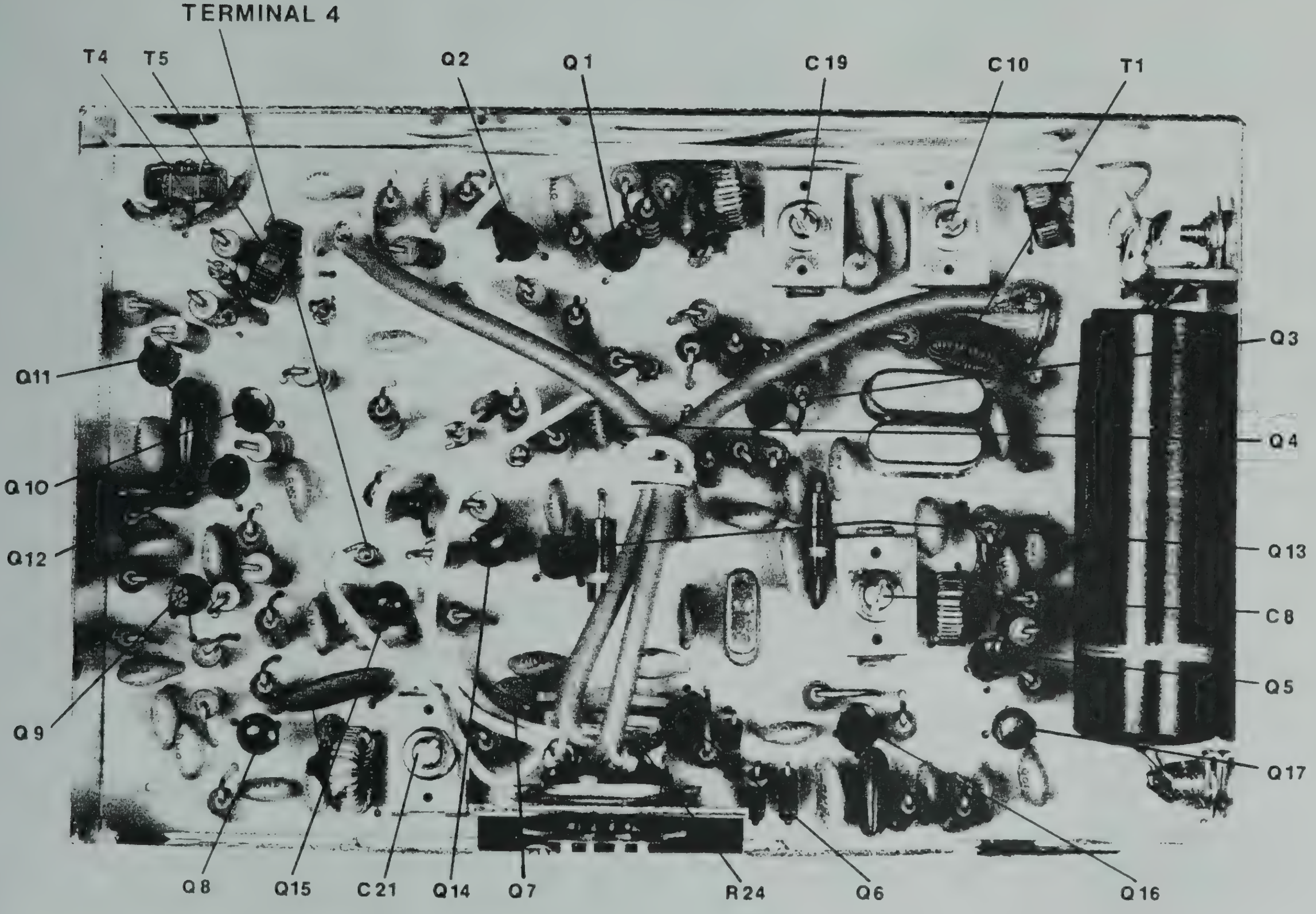
a. With the noise blanker turned on, adjust capacitor trimmers C10 and C19 for maximum S meter reading on calibrator signal.

b. With the calibrator turned off, connect a VTVM (set to measure DC voltage) between terminal 4 of the 34—PNB board and ground (terminal 4 being plus). Adjust R24 for maximum positive voltage.

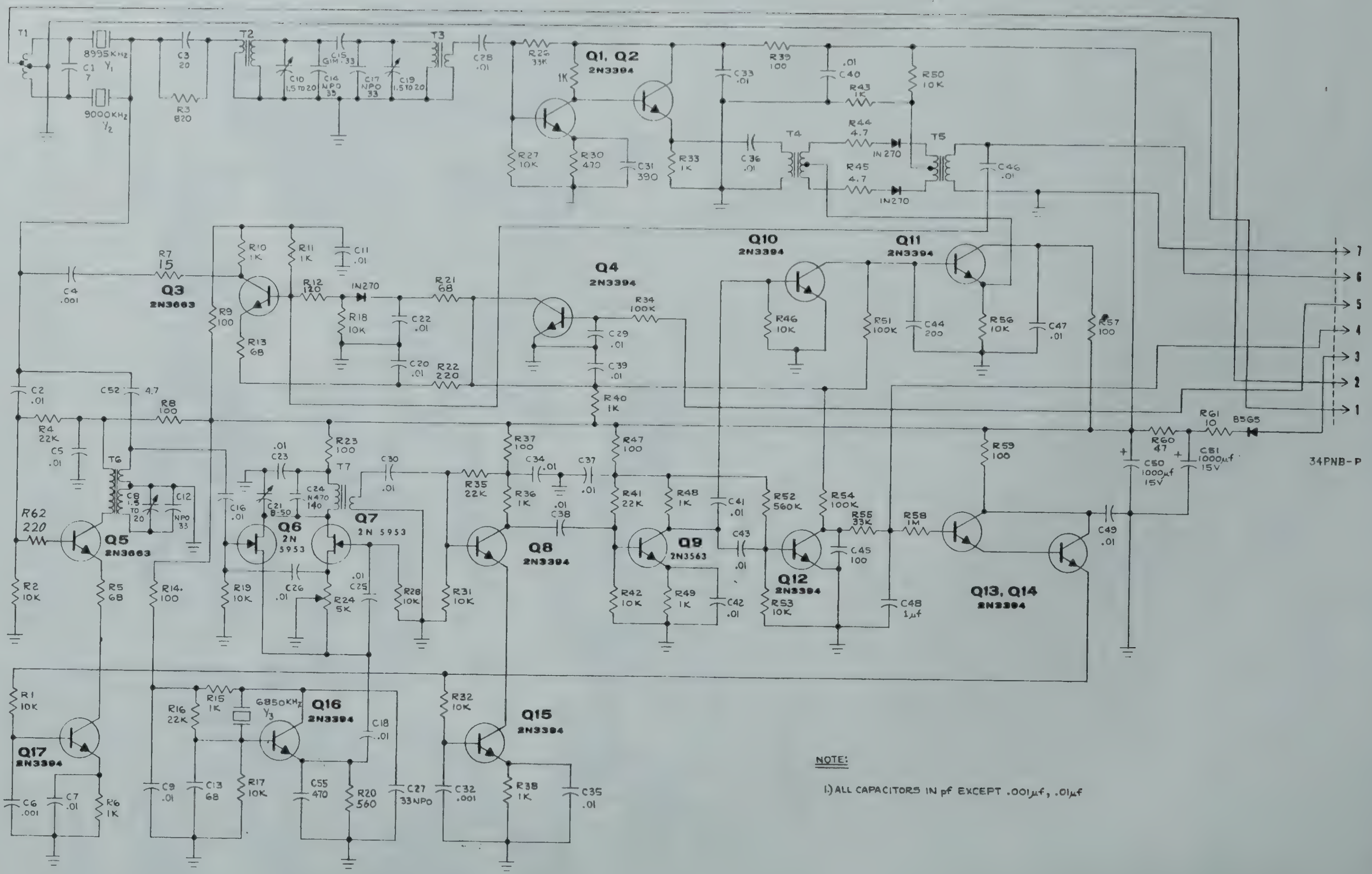
c. Turn the calibrator on and adjust the two remaining trimmers C21 and C8 for minimum positive voltage.


Q3
9 MHz AMP
T/R SWITCH
Q4
T1
XTL FILTER
To V4
From V3
T2, T3
DELAY CKT.
Q1, Q2
9 MHz AMP
T4, T5
BAL GATE
From & To xtal filters
6.85 MHz OSC
Q16
PULSE DET
Q10
GATE DRIVE
Q11
Q5, T6
9 MHz AMP
BAL MIX
Q6, Q7, T7
Q8
2.15 MHz AMP
Q9
2.15 MHz AMP
AGC CONTROL
Q17
AGC CONTROL
Q15
Q12
AGC DET
Q13, Q14
AGC AMP
ON-OFF switch
TRANSMITTER SIGNAL
RECEIVER SIGNAL
OTHER SIGNALS
Legend

Model 34–PNB Block Diagram


TERMINAL 4
T4
T5
Q2
Q1
C19
C10
T1
Q3
Q4
Q13
C8
Q5
Q17
Q11
Q10
Q12
Q9
Q8
Q15
C21
Q14
Q7
R24
Q6
Q16

Model 34–PNB Alignment Locations


T1
C1 7
8995KHz Y1
9000KHz Y2
C3 20
R3 820
T2
C10 1.5 TO 20
C14 NPO 35
C15 GIM .33
C17 NPO 33
C19 1.5 TO 20
T3
C28 .01
R26 33K
1K
Q1, Q2 2N3394
R27 10K
R30 470
C31 390
R33 1K
C33 .01
R39 100
.01 C40
R43 1K
R50 10K
C36 .01
T4
R44 4.7
R45 4.7
IN270
T5
C46 .01
R7 15
C4 .001
Q3 2N3663
R9 100
R10 1K
R11 1K
C11 .01
R12 120
R13 68
R18 10K
C22 .01
C20 .01
R21 68
R22 220
Q4 2N3394
R34 100K
C29 .01
C39 .01
R40 1K
Q10 2N3394
R46 10K
R51 100K
Q11 2N3394
C44 200
R56 10K
C47 .01
R57 100
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
34PNB-P
C2 .01
C52 4.7
R8 100
R4 22K
C5 .01
T6
C8 1.5 TO 20
C12 NPO 33
R62 220
Q5 2N3663
R2 10K
R5 68
R14 100
C16 .01
.01 C23
C21 8-50
C24 N470 140
Q6 2N 5953
Q7 2N 5953
T7
R23 100
C26 .01
.01 C25
R24 5K
R19 10K
R28 10K
C30 .01
R35 22K
R31 10K
R37 100
R36 1K
C34 .01
C37 .01
.01 C38
Q8 2N3394
R47 100
R41 22K
R42 10K
R48 1K
Q9 2N3563
R49 1K
C41 .01
C43 .01
C42 .01
R52 560K
R53 10K
Q12 2N3394
R54 100K
R55 33K
C45 100
C48 1µf
R58 1M
R59 100
Q13, Q14 2N3394
C49 .01
C50 1000µf 15V
R60 47
C51 1000µf 15V
R61 10
B5G5
R1 10K
Q17 2N3394
C6 .001
C7 .01
R6 1K
C9 .01
R16 22K
R15 1K
6850KHz Y3
C13 68
R17 10K
Q16 2N3394
C55 470
R20 560
C18 .01
C27 33NPO
R32 10K
C32 .001
Q15 2N3394
R38 1K
C35 .01

NOTE:

1.) ALL CAPACITORS IN pf EXCEPT .001µf, .01µf

Model 34–PNB Schematic Diagram

TR-3/TR-4/TR-4C/TR-4Cw TUNING ALTERATIONS

The tune up procedure for the TR series transceivers must be altered from the instruction manual in order to meet section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concerns the purity of emissions.

Tune up on 80, 40, and 15 meters must be altered by limiting the plate current to 350 milliamperes with the LOAD control. Instead of adjusting the LOAD control for maximum RF output, the LOAD control should be advanced from CCW to the point at which the resonant plate current does not exceed 350 milliamperes. On 80 meters the LOAD control should remain fully CCW.

The tune up procedure in the instruction manual may be followed for operation on 20 and 10 meters.

(CCW -- counterclockwise)

T-4/T-4X/T-4XB/T-4XC TUNING ALTERATIONS

The tune up procedure for the T-4 series transmitters must be altered from the instruction manual in order to meet section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concern the purity of emissions.

Tune up on 160, 80, 40 and 20 meters must be altered by limiting the plate current to 340 milliamperes with the LOAD control. Instead of adjusting the LOAD control for maximum RF output, the LOAD control should be advanced from CCW to the point at which the resonant plate current does not exceed 340 milliamperes.

The tune up procedure in the instruction manual may be followed for operation on 15 and 10 meters.

(CCW -- counterclockwise)

L-4B

The L-4B when tuned in accordance with the instruction manual meets the requirements of section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concern the purity of emissions.

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTION SHEET

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTION SHEET

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

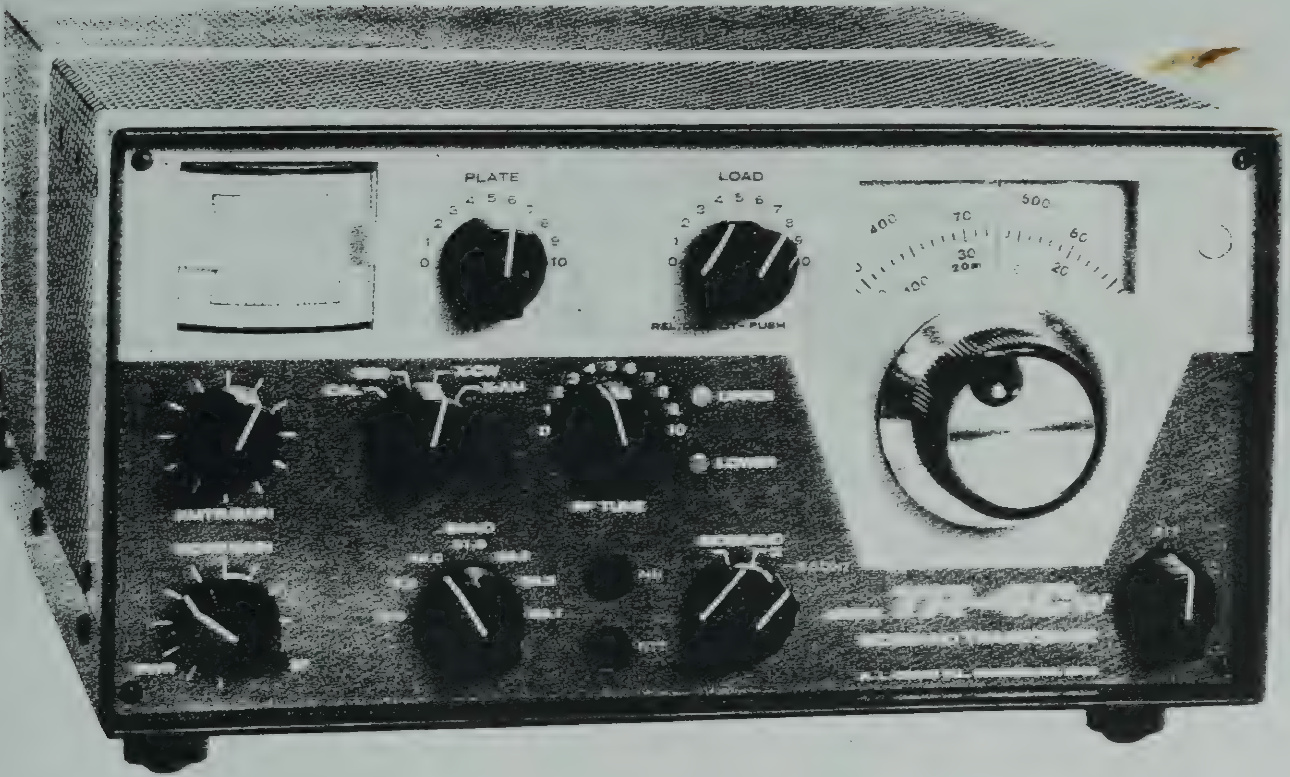
MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.

DRAKE

INSTRUCTION MANUAL



TR-4Cw

SIDEBAND TRANSCEIVER

R. L. DRAKE COMPANY, MIAMISBURG, OHIO, U.S.A.

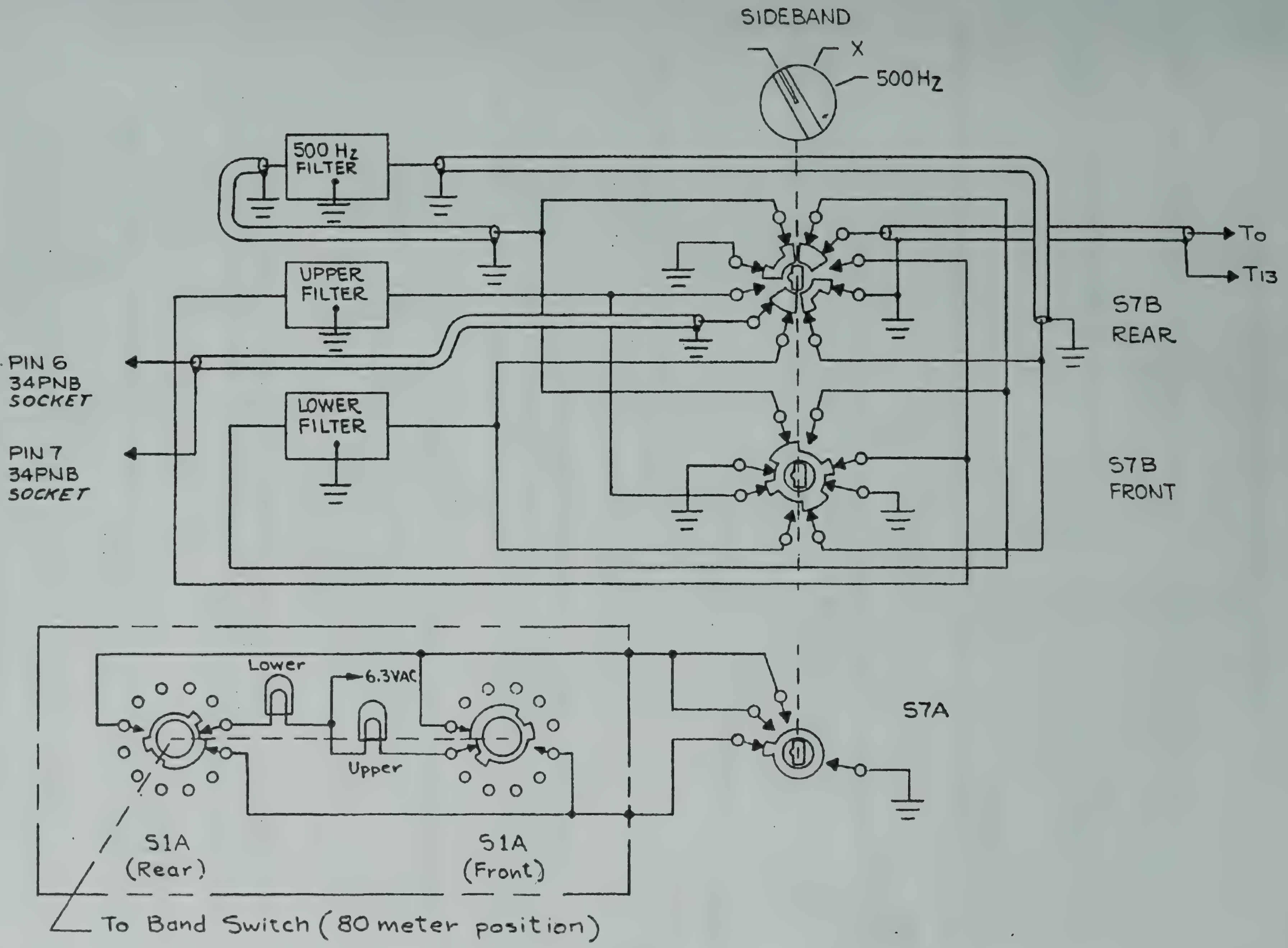
TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

CHAPTER I INTRODUCTION 1–1
1–1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION 1–1
1–2. MANUAL COVERAGE 1–1
SPECIFICATIONS 1–3

CHAPTER II INSTALLATION 2–1
2–1. UNPACKING 2–1
2–2. LOCATION 2–1
2–3. MOBILE INSTALLATION 2–1
2–4. POWER REQUIREMENTS 2–1
2–5. MOUNTING 2–1
2–6. ANTENNA 2–1
2–7. SPEAKER 2–1
2–8. MICROPHONE 2–1
2–9. STATIONARY INSTALLATION 2–2
2–10. POWER REQUIREMENTS 2–2
2–11. VIEWING ANGLE 2–2
2–12. ACCESSORIES 2–2

CHAPTER III OPERATION 3–1
3–1. GENERAL 3–1
3–2. MODE SWITCH 3–1
3–3. BLANKER SWITCH 3–1
3–4. VFO DIAL 3–1
3–5. TUNING PROCEDURE 3–1
3–6. BIAS ADJUSTMENT 3–1
FRONT PANEL CONTROLS 3–3
OTHER CONTROLS 3–4
3–7. TUNE UP 3–5
3–8. SSB OPERATION 3–5


SIDEBAND
X
500 Hz
500 Hz FILTER
UPPER FILTER
LOWER FILTER
PIN 6 34PNB SOCKET
PIN 7 34PNB SOCKET
To
T13
S7B REAR
S7B FRONT
S7A
Lower
6.3VAC
Upper
S1A (Rear)
S1A (Front)
To Band Switch (80 meter position)

TR-4Cw Schematic Diagram

DRAKE

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

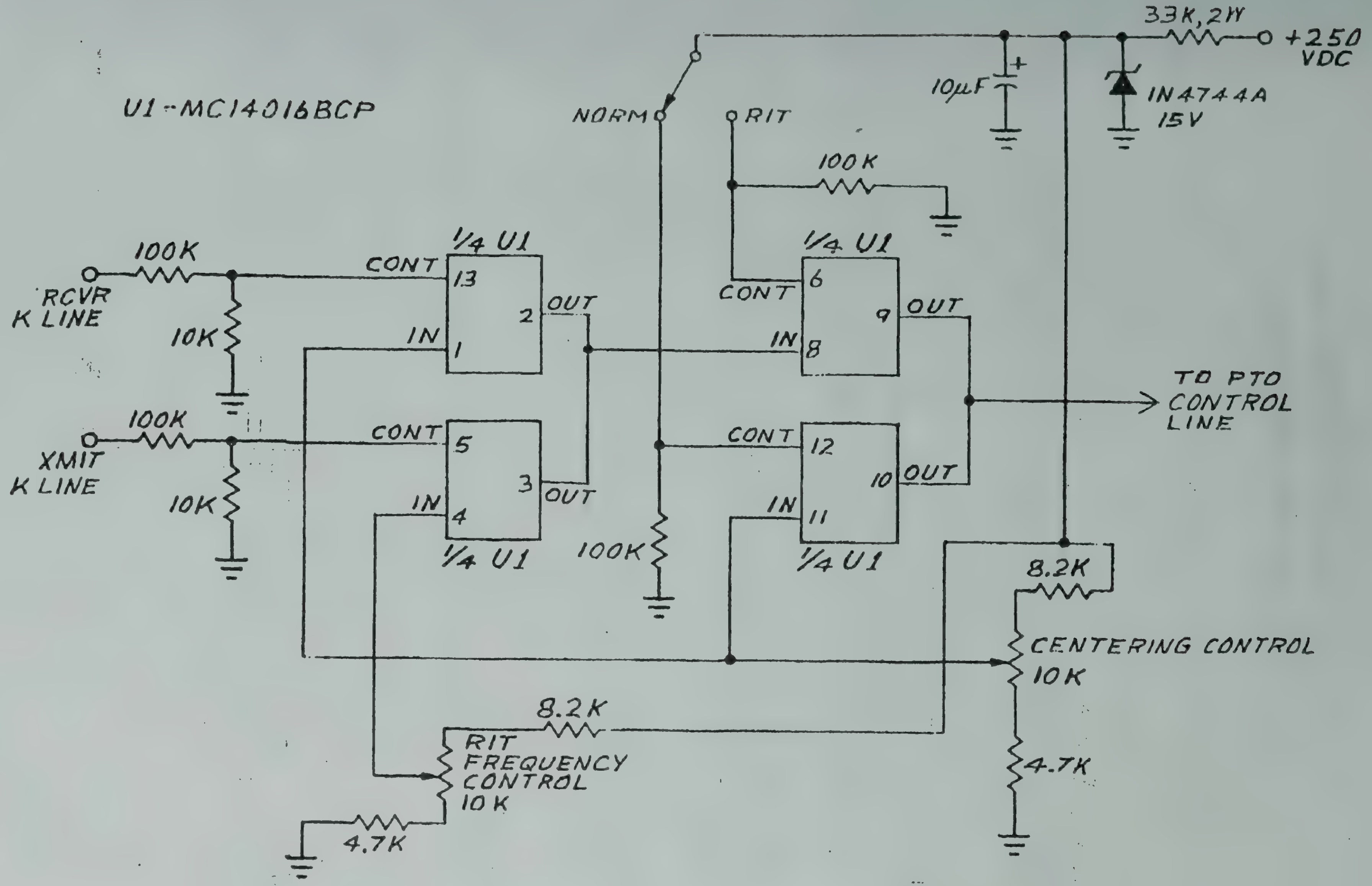
The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.


U1-MC14016BCP
33K, 2W
+250 VDC
10μF
IN4744A 15V
NORM
RIT
100K
1/4 U1
CONT
IN
OUT
13
1
2
5
4
3
6
8
9
12
11
10
RCVR K LINE
XMIT K LINE
100K
10K
100K
10K
100K
TO PTO CONTROL LINE
8.2K
CENTERING CONTROL 10K
4.7K
8.2K
RIT FREQUENCY CONTROL 10K
4.7K

RIT Schematic Diagram

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS

COVERING MODELS WITH RIT

The addition of Receiver Incremental Tuning to the TR-4Cw allows the receive frequency to be varied approximately ±3 kHz (2 kHz min., 4 kHz max.) relative to the indicated dial frequency.

OPERATION

The RIT function is activated by depressing the RIT push button switch. When disabled, the RIT frequency control has no effect, and the received frequency is as indicated on the dial. The TR-4Cw transmit frequency is always as indicated on the dial.

If equipped with the accessory 34-PNB Noise Blanker, the Noise Blanker is activated by depressing the NB push button switch. For further information regarding the operation of the Noise Blanker, refer to section 3-3.

Use of RIT can be very useful for both CW and SSB operation. When working a station who is drifting in frequency, the drift can be compensated for without "walking" across the band.

ZERO ADJUSTMENT

The RIT printed circuit board is located on the partition enclosing the PA compartment on the bottom of the transceiver.

The trim pot located on this board is used to "center" the front panel RIT frequency control. With the front panel frequency control set at 12 o'clock, tune in the calibrator signal at any convenient 100 kHz point until a beat note is heard. The trim pot should be adjusted until there is little or no change in the beat note frequency when turning the RIT control on and off via the RIT push button. This adjustment is factory set, and centering should be within 200-300 Hz.

CHAPTER I
INTRODUCTION

1-1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

The TR--4C is a 300 Watt HF single sideband transceiver which covers the 80 through 10 meter amateur bands. AM and CW modes are also included. The TR--4C requires either an R. L. Drake AC–4, 120 V AC power supply, or an R. L. Drake DC–4, 12 V DC power supply. The TR-4C features a high-stability linear permeability tuned VFO and two 8 pole crystal lattice filters for sideband selection. Available accessories include an RV--4C Remote VFO, a matching MS--4 Speaker, an FF-1 Fixed Frequency Adapter, a 34--PNB Noise Blanker, an MC–4 Mobile Console, and a TR–4C VHF Modification Kit.

1-2. MANUAL COVERAGE.

This manual provides sufficient information for operation of the TR--4C Transceiver by a licensed operator and for repair and maintenance by an experienced electronics technician. Chapter II provides installation instructions and illustrates interconnection with accessories. Chapter III describes operation procedures. Chapter IV presents theory of operation supported by a block diagram. Chapter V provides maintenance instructions and parts ordering information.

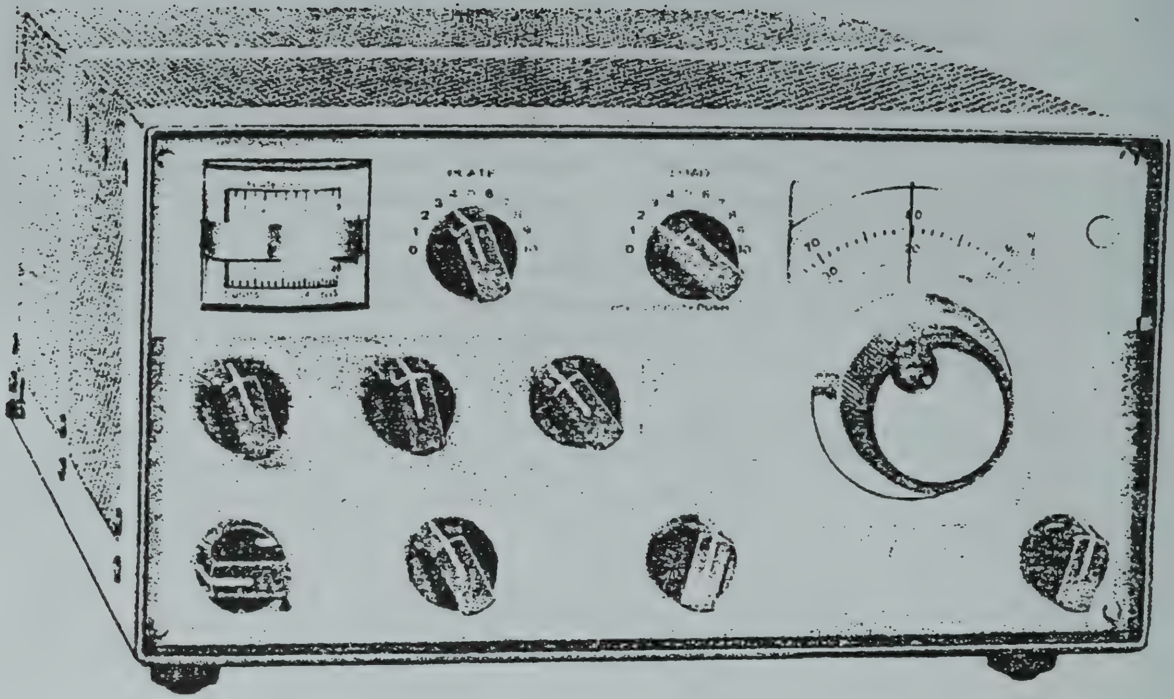


Figure 1–1. TR–4C Sideband Transceiver

SPECIFICATIONS

GENERAL:

Frequency Coverage:	3.5 to 4.1 MHz, 7.0 to 7.6 MHz, 13.9 to 14.5 MHz, 21.0 to 21.6 MHz and 28.5 to 29.1 MHz; accessory crystals are available for the 28.0 to 28.6 MHz and 29.1 to 29.7 MHz segments of the 10 meter band.
Mode of Operation:	Lower Sideband, Upper Sideband, AM and CW.
Frequency Stability:	Total drift is less than 100 Hz after warm up. Total frequency change is less than 100 Hz for a ± 10% line voltage change.
Power Supply Requirements:	+ 650 Volts DC at 300 mA average and 500 mA maximum with 10% regulation from 100 to 500 mA and a maximum ripple 1%. + 250 Volts DC at 200 mA with 10% regulation from 170 mA to 200 mA. This includes the effect of the 650 Volt supply change if both voltages are obtained from the same transformer. Maximum ripple must be less than 1/4%. –45 to –65 Volts DC adjustable filtered bias into 33 K Ohm load. 12.6 Volts AC or DC at 5.5 Amperes.
Antenna Impedance:	Nominal 52 Ohms (VSWR less than 2:1).
Dial Calibration:	Better than ± 1 kHz when calibrated at the nearest 100 kHz calibration point.
Dimensions:	5.5 in. High x 10.75 in. Wide x 14.375 in. Deep. 13.97 cm. High x 27.31 cm. Wide x 36.51 cm. Deep.
Weight:	16 lbs. (7.26 kg.)

RECEIVER:

Sensitivity:	Less than 0.5 uV for 10 dB $\frac{S+N}{N}$
AGC:	Less than 3 dB variation for 60 dB change in input signal.
Selectivity:	2.1 kHz at –6 dB and 3.4 kHz at –60 dB.
IF Frequency:	9 MHz.
Audio Output:	3 Watts with less than 10% distortion.
Output Impedance:	4 Ohms.

TRANSMITTER:

Power Input:	300 Watts PEP SSB, 260 Watts CW and 260 Watts PEP AM.
Output Impedance:	Nominal 52 Ohms.
Average Distortion Products:	The odd order products are down 30 dB below PEP.
Microphone Input:	High Impedance.

CHAPTER II
INSTALLATION

2-1. UNPACKING.

Carefully remove the unit from the shipping carton and examine it for evidence of damage. If any damage is discovered, immediately notify the transportation company that delivered the unit. Be sure to keep the shipping carton and packing material as the transportation company will want to examine them if there is a damage claim. Keep the carton and packing material even if no shipping damage occurs. Having the original carton available makes packing the unit much easier if it should ever be necessary to store it or return it to the factory for service.

> NOTE
>
> Fill out the enclosed registration card and return it to the factory immediately to insure registration and validation of the warranty.

2-2. LOCATION.

The location of the TR–4C is not critical. However, care should be taken to insure that adequate clearance is provided to insure free circulation of air around the unit and to allow access to the side controls and connectors. Do not cover the top of the cabinet with books, papers or other equipment as overheating may result.

2-3. MOBILE INSTALLATION.

2-4. POWER REQUIREMENTS. Refer to figure 2-2 for rear chassis connector identification. The TR–4C may be installed in any vehicle with a 12 volt dc negative ground system. An R. L. Drake Model DC–4 Power Supply is required for a mobile installation. The recommended location for the DC–4 is on the passenger side of the firewall. Refer to figure 2-3 for the electrical connections required.

2-5. MOUNTING. Mount the TR–4C in a convenient location below the dash with an R. L. Drake Model MMK–3 Mobile Mounting Kit. Refer to figure 2-4 for various mounting options. Be sure to allow adequate clearance for air circulation and cable connections. Turn the TR–4C off. Connect the power cable between the TR–4C and the DC–4. Coil up any excess cable and tape it in place out of sight. Connect the black wire from the power supply to a convenient ground. Route the red wire from the power supply through the firewall and connect it to the positive battery terminal or the starter solenoid. The fuse holder should be installed as close to the solenoid as possible. Shorten both of these wires as much as possible.

2-6. ANTENNA. Install a mobile antenna as recommended by the antenna manufacturer. Connect a coaxial cable from the antenna to the SO–239 connector at the rear of the TR–4C.

2-7. SPEAKER. *DO NOT* connect the TR–4C to the speaker of the car radio. Install a separate speaker for use with the TR–4C. The R. L. Drake Model MC–4 Mobile Console is recommended for this type of installation. It includes a speaker and a wattmeter and is designed to mount over or under the TR–4C.

2-8. MICROPHONE. Use a microphone with a flat frequency response. The microphone should have a cardioid pattern to reduce pickup from the back and sides. Connect the microphone as illustrated in figure 2-1 to insure proper performance.

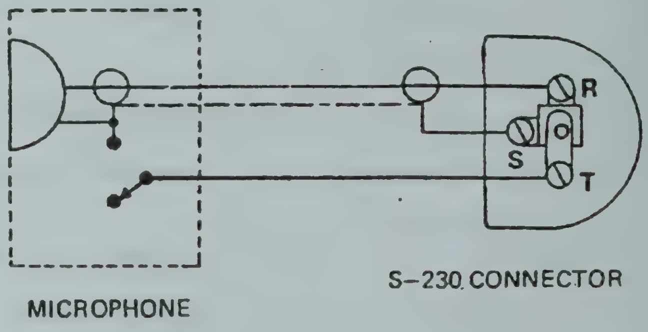


Figure 2–1. Microphone Connections

2-9. STATIONARY INSTALLATION.

2-10. POWER REQUIREMENTS. An R. L. Drake Model AC–4 Power Supply rated at 120 volts ac, 50/60 Hz, is required for stationary installations. The AC–4 is designed to fit inside the MS–4 speaker cabinet.

2-11. VIEWING ANGLE. Refer to figure 2-5 for illustrations of viewing angle options. See Chapter V for bottom cover removal.

2-12. ACCESSORIES. Refer to figures 2-6 through 2-9 for the electrical connections required to operate the TR–4C with the various recommended accessories.

NOTE

If the old RV–3 is to be used it must be modified as follows: Install a 22 K, 2 Watt resistor from pin 1 of the tube (0A2) to the terminal of the FUNCTION switch to which the orange wire is attached.

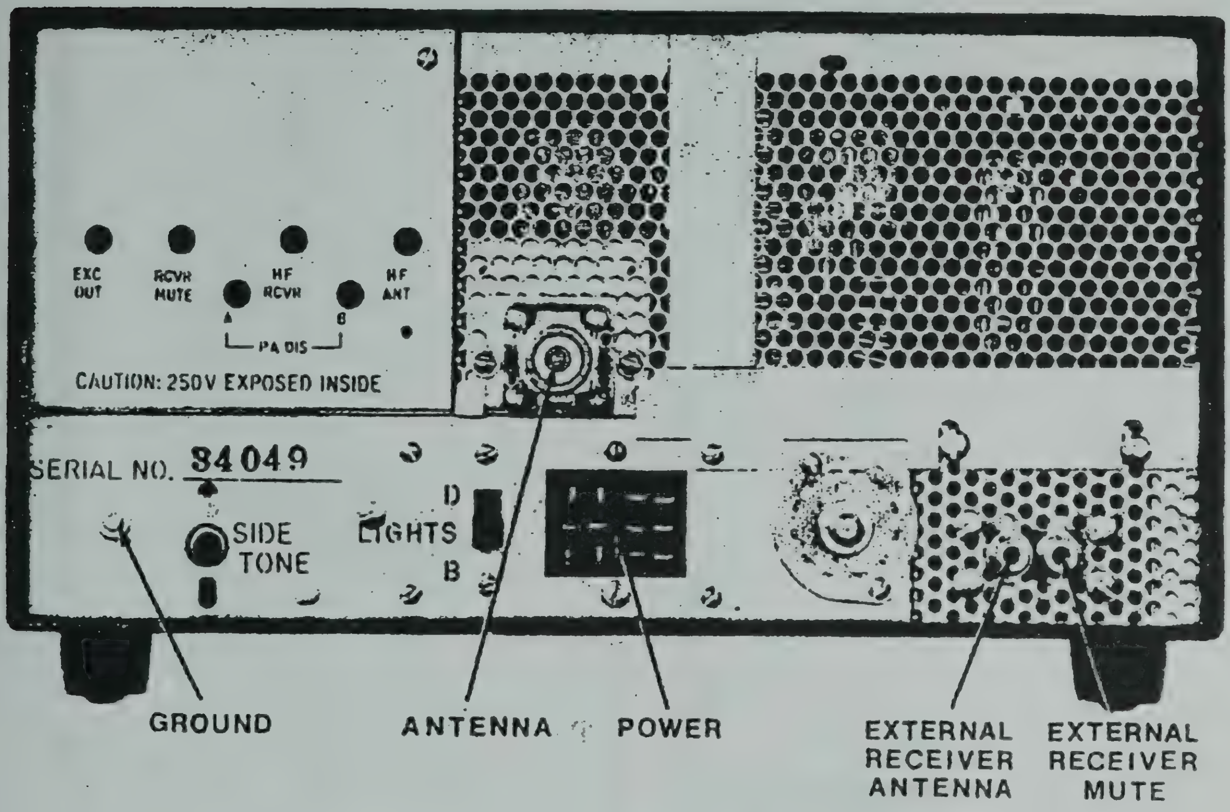

EXC OUT
RCVR MUTE
HF RCVR
HF ANT
A
B
PA DIS
CAUTION: 250V EXPOSED INSIDE
SERIAL NO. 34049
SIDE TONE
D
LIGHTS
B
GROUND
ANTENNA
POWER
EXTERNAL RECEIVER ANTENNA
EXTERNAL RECEIVER MUTE

Figure 2–2. Rear Chassis Connectors

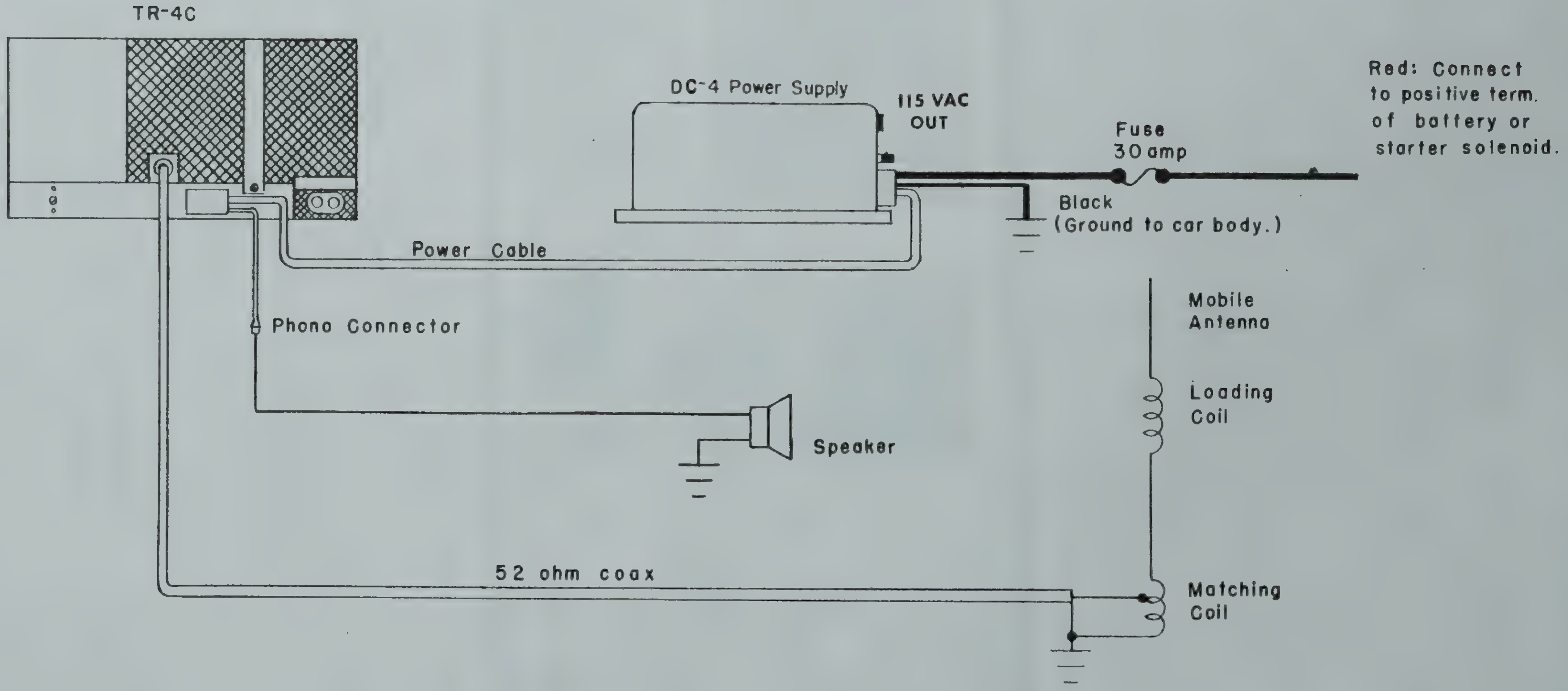
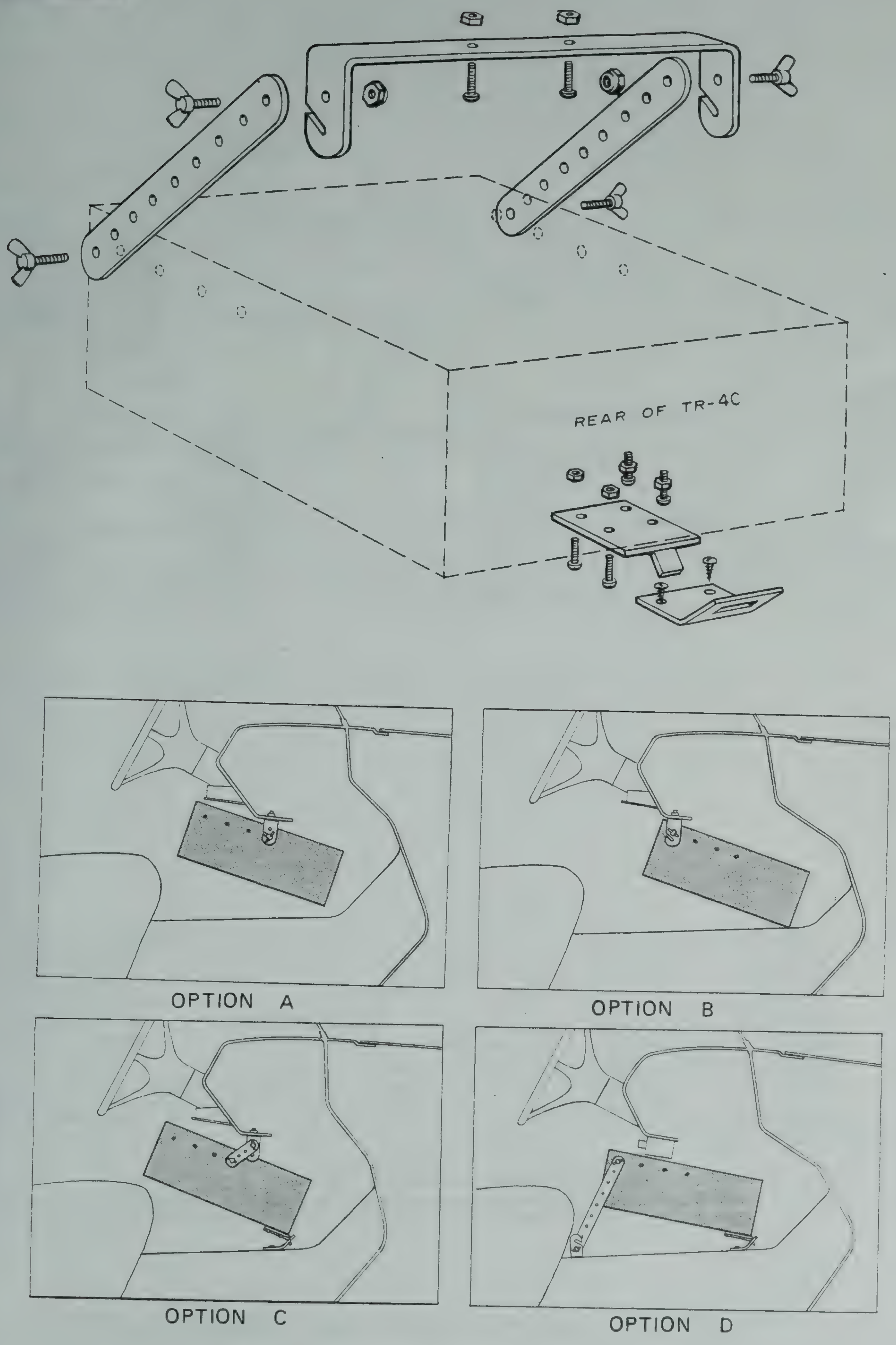

TR-4C
DC-4 Power Supply
115 VAC OUT
Fuse 30 amp
Red: Connect to positive term. of battery or starter solenoid.
Black (Ground to car body.)
Power Cable
Phono Connector
Speaker
Mobile Antenna
Loading Coil
52 ohm coax
Matching Coil

Figure 2–3. Electrical Connections Required for Mobile Installation


REAR OF TR-4C

OPTION A

OPTION B

OPTION C

OPTION D

Figure 2–4. Mobile Installation Mounting Options

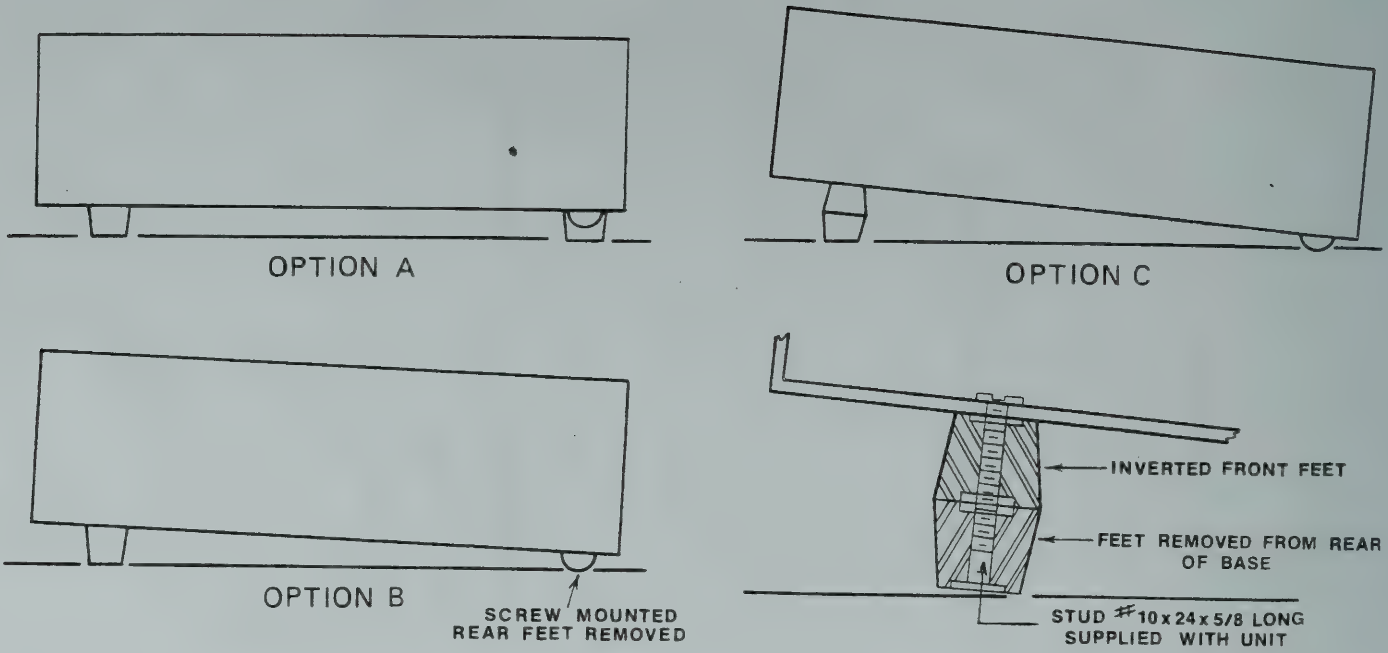

OPTION A
OPTION C
OPTION B
SCREW MOUNTED REAR FEET REMOVED
INVERTED FRONT FEET
FEET REMOVED FROM REAR OF BASE
STUD #10 x 24 x 5/8 LONG SUPPLIED WITH UNIT

Figure 2–5. Viewing Angle Options in a Stationary Installation

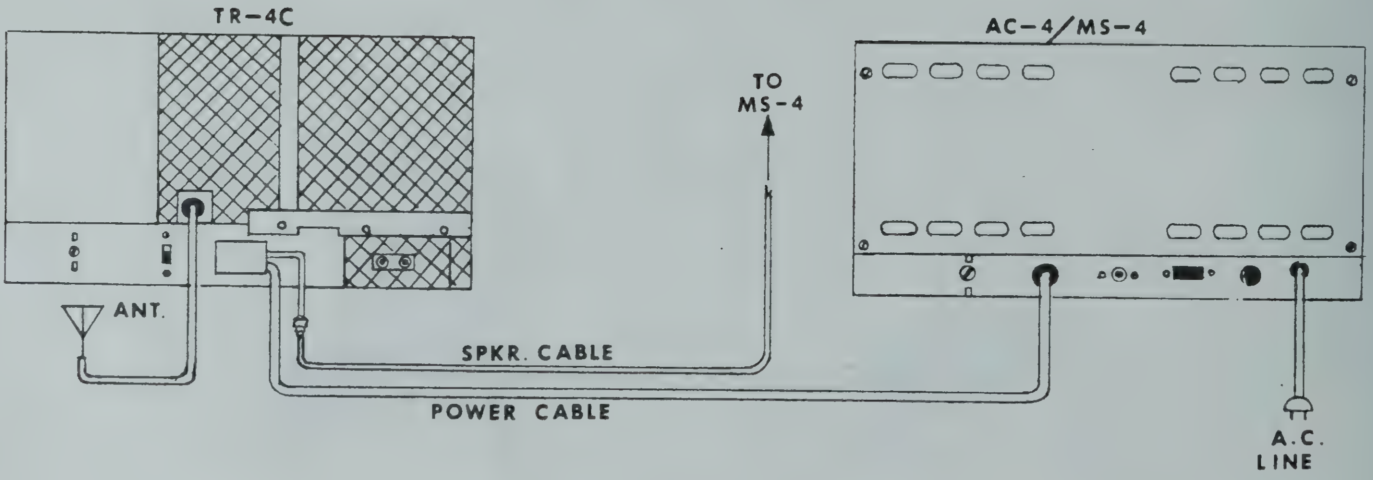

TR–4C
AC–4/MS–4
TO MS–4
ANT.
SPKR. CABLE
POWER CABLE
A.C. LINE

Figure 2–6. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply and MS–4 Speaker

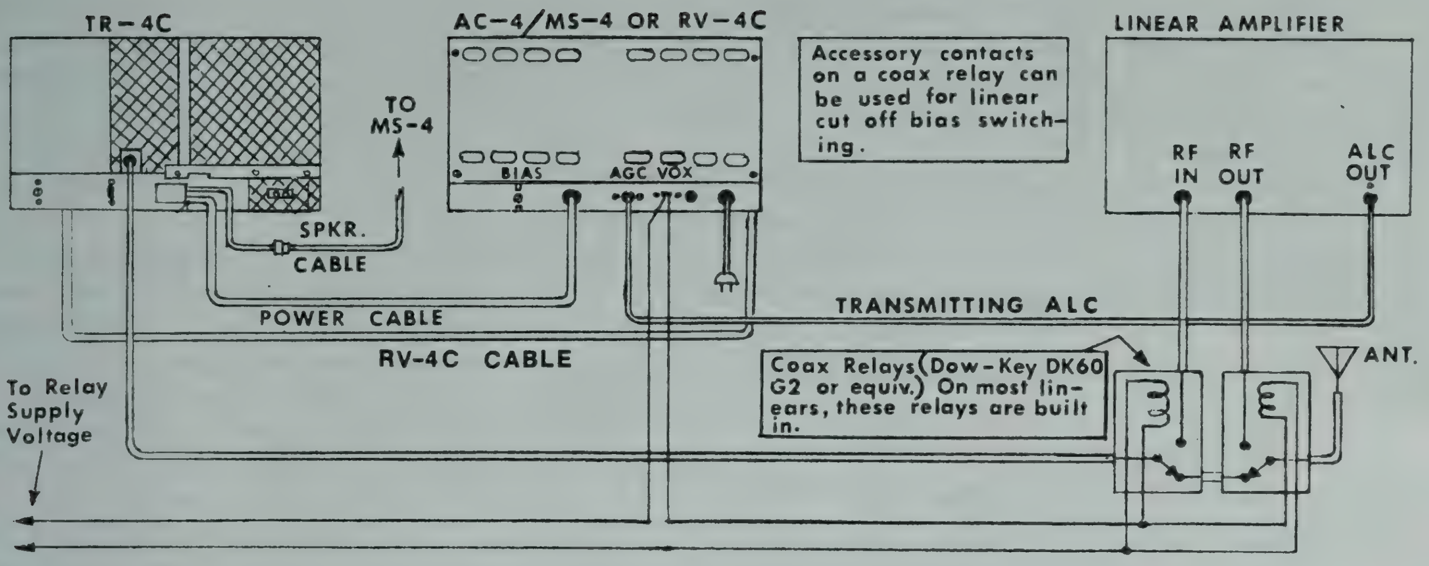

TR-4C
AC-4/MS-4 OR RV-4C
Accessory contacts on a coax relay can be used for linear cut off bias switching.
LINEAR AMPLIFIER
TO MS-4
BIAS
AGC
VOX
RF IN
RF OUT
ALC OUT
SPKR. CABLE
POWER CABLE
TRANSMITTING ALC
RV-4C CABLE
Coax Relays (Dow-Key DK60 G2 or equiv.) On most linears, these relays are built in.
ANT.
To Relay Supply Voltage

Figure 2–7. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply, RV–4C Remote VFO and a Linear Amplifier

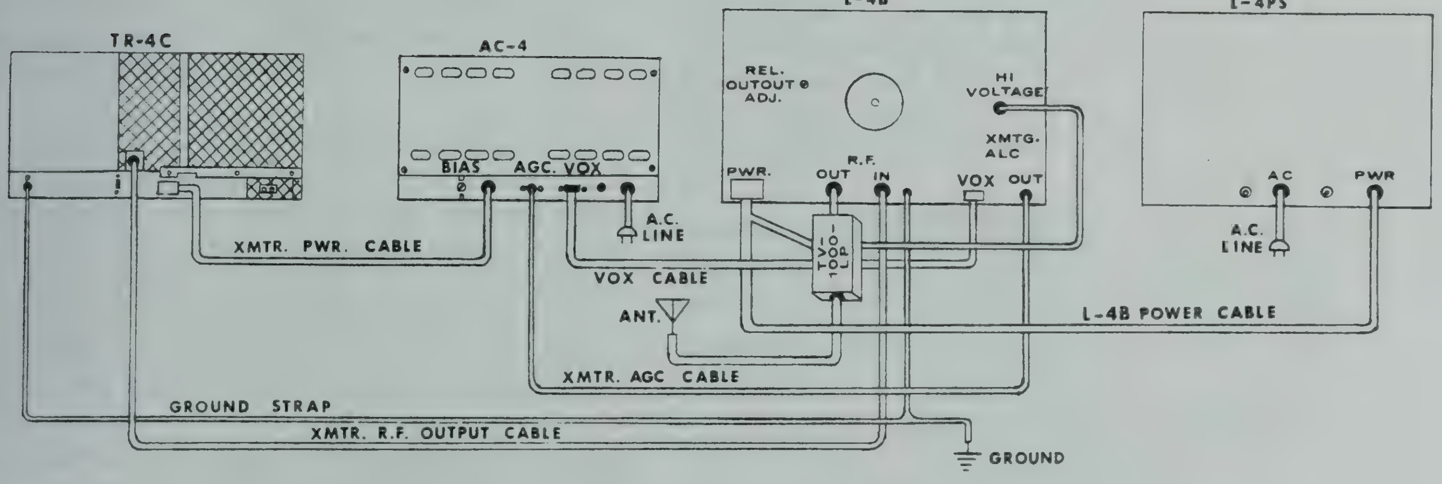
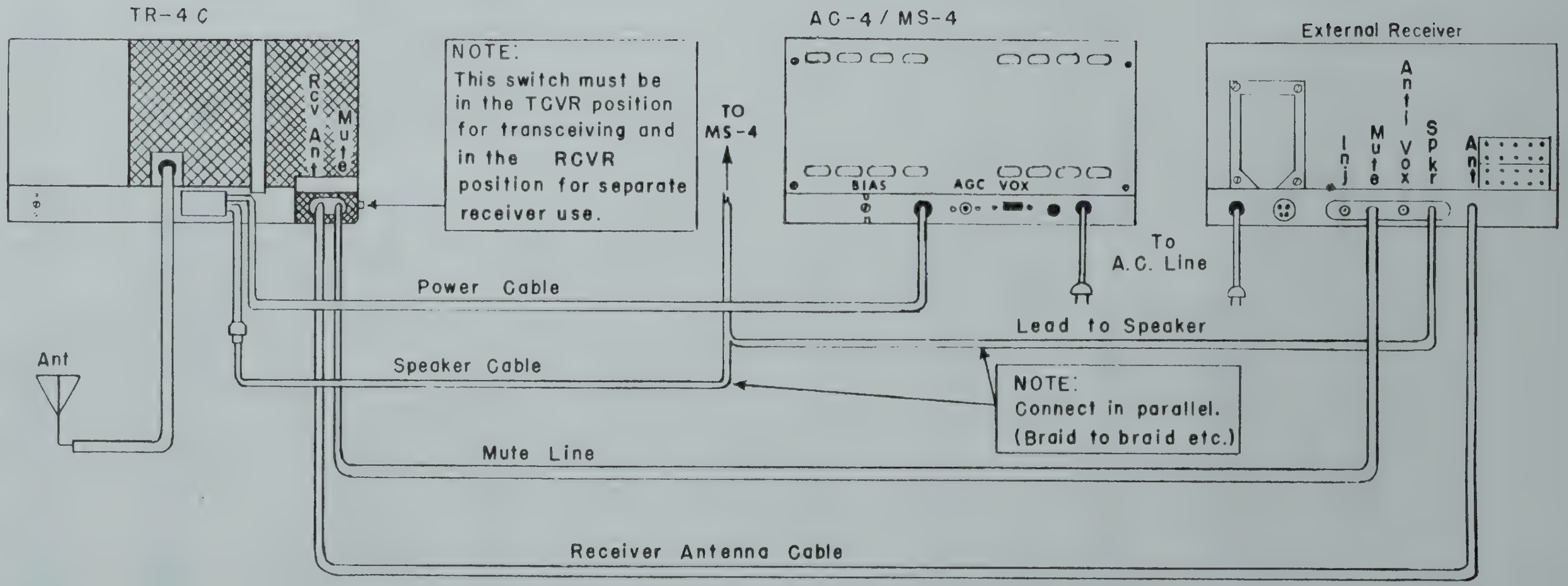

TR-4C
AC-4
L-4B
L-4PS
REL. OUTOUT ADJ.
HI VOLTAGE
XMTG. ALC
R.F.
PWR.
OUT
IN
VOX
OUT
BIAS
AGC.
VOX
A.C. LINE
AC
PWR
A.C. LINE
XMTR. PWR. CABLE
VOX CABLE
ANT.
L-4B POWER CABLE
XMTR. AGC CABLE
GROUND STRAP
XMTR. R.F. OUTPUT CABLE
GROUND

Figure 2–8. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply and the L–4B Linear Amplifier



TR-4 C
Ant
Rcv Ant
Mute
NOTE: This switch must be in the TCVR position for transceiving and in the RCVR position for separate receiver use.
TO MS-4
AC-4 / MS-4
BIAS
AGC
VOX
To A.C. Line
External Receiver
Inj
Mute
Anti Vox
Spkr
Ant
Power Cable
Lead to Speaker
Speaker Cable
NOTE: Connect in parallel. (Braid to braid etc.)
Mute Line
Receiver Antenna Cable

Figure 2–9. Connecting an External Receiver

CHAPTER III
OPERATION

3-1. GENERAL.

Figure 3-1 illustrates and describes all front panel controls and indicators on the TR–4C Transceiver. Controls and connectors located on the rear and sides of the unit are described under "other controls" below. Rear chassis connectors are identified in figure 2-2.

3-2. MODE SWITCH. In the SSB position, the receiver portion functions until the transmitter is energized either by talking into the microphone or actuating the microphone push-to-talk switch. The transmitter then emits an upper or lower sideband signal depending on the setting of the SIDEBAND switch. In the X-CW position, the receiver portion functions until the key is closed. The TR–4C then goes into the transmit mode, a CW sidetone is energized and the carrier is shifted approximately 1 kHz from the received frequency. The unit will remain in transmit during CW keying and will return to receive when keying is stopped briefly. NOTE: The SIDEBAND switch must be in the X position when the Mode switch is on X-CW or X-AM. It should also be noted that if the relays fail to close occasionally when the key is used, advance the VOX gain (screwdriver adjust on the right side of the chassis) until positive relay action is obtained. In the X-AM position, a controlled carrier screen modulator is incorporated for AM transmission and a diode detector is used for AM reception. Transmit and receive switching is accomplished by VOX or push-to-talk as on SSB.

3-3. BLANKER SWITCH. The noise blanker may be left on except when there is a strong signal within 5 kHz of the received signal. A strong signal which falls within the 10 kHz wide crystal filter in the noise blanker, and outside the 2.1 kHz crystal filter in the TR–4C, will operate the noise blanker gate circuit causing distortion products. This limitation in the noise blanker is caused by the necessity of having a bandwidth in the blanker wide enough to minimize stretching of noise pulses before blanking. Usually this limitation is no problem under normal operating conditions.

3-4. VFO DIAL. This dial consists of 2 transparent discs which display concentric scales and which rotate at different speeds. There are 2 scales on each disc. The upper scale on each disc is used for all bands except 20 meters where the lower scale is used. Zero to 100 kHz is indicated on one disc and hundreds of kHz is indicated on the other. The frequency of the operating signal is the sum of the frequencies indicated by the BAND switch and the VFO dial, for example:

BAND switch frequency	7.000 MHz
100 kHz dial	.200
1 kHz dial	.072
Operating frequency	7.272 MHz

This dial may be calibrated over a short range by the following procedure:

a. Set the Mode switch to CAL.
b. Tune the TR–4C to zero beat with the nearest 100 kHz calibrator signal.
c. Hold the tuning knob stationary and rotate the knob skirt until the dial displays the correct frequency.

3-5. TUNING PROCEDURE.

CAUTION

Under no circumstances should operation of the TR–4C be attempted until it is connected to a proper antenna or a dummy load. Always allow a two minute warm up period after the TR -4C is turned on before transmitting.

3-6. BIAS ADJUSTMENT. Before any type of operation is attempted, it will be necessary to set the PA bias to the correct value. Proceed as follows:

a. Turn on the TR–4C with the RCVR GAIN control.
b. Rotate the XMTR GAIN control fully counterclockwise.

(continued on page 3–5)

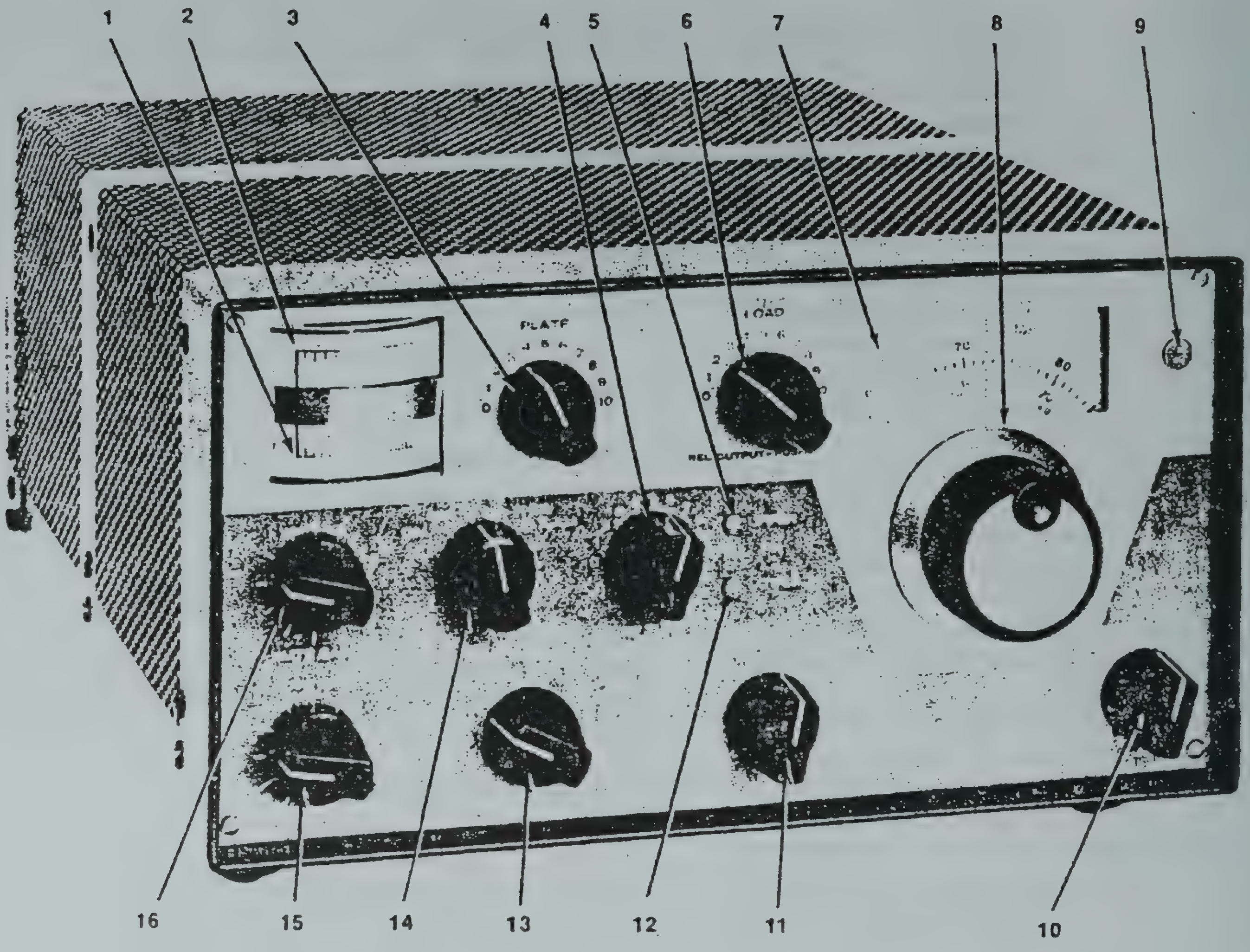

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
PLATE
LOAD
REL OUTPUT
16
15
14
13
12
11
10

Figure 3–1. Front Panel Controls

FRONT PANEL CONTROLS

1. S meter: Indicates relative level of received signals. Indicates transmitter AGC when transmitting.
2. Plate meter: Indicates plate current in the final amplifier. Indicates relative RF power when LOAD control (6) is pushed in.
3. PLATE control: Tunes power amplifier pi-network circuit for resonance.
4. RF TUNE control: Peak tunes the receiver RF amplifier, the transmitter driver grid and plate tuned circuits.
5. UPPER sideband indicator lamp: Glows when upper sideband is selected.
6. LOAD control: Matches the TR–4C to the impedance of the antenna. Push in to display relative RF power on plate meter (2).
7. VFO dial: Displays portion of operating frequency from zero to 600 kHz. Reading must be added to BAND switch frequency setting for complete operating frequency.
8. VFO control: Adjusts frequency setting of dial (7).
9. VFO indicator lamp: Glows only when TR–4C VFO is operating.
10. BLANKER switch: Provides on/off control for R. L. Drake's Model 34–PNB Noise Blanker (an accessory).
11. SIDEBAND switch: Selects upper or lower sideband and lights appropriate indicator lamp (5 or 12).
12. LOWER sideband indicator lamp: Glows when lower sideband is selected.
13. BAND switch: Selects the desired amateur band.
14. Mode switch: Selects the desired mode of operation. In CAL position, it switches on the 100 kHz crystal calibrator (operable in transmit or receiver mode).
15. RCVR GAIN control: Dual control. Knob controls the receiver audio level, and provides a power on/off control at the extreme counterclockwise position. Lever controls the maximum RF gain of the receiver.
16. XMTR GAIN control: Adjusts the microphone gain on AM and SSB. In CW mode it adjusts the RF drive.

OTHER CONTROLS

Right Side (not illustrated).

PHONE jack: Provides a connection for headphones or external speaker.

MIC jack: Provides a connection for microphone. Mates with connector S-230 furnished with the TR–4C.

VOX control: Adjusts the gain of the VOX amplifier and the antenna relay release time on CW.

ANTIVOX control: Adjusts the gain of the ANTIVOX amplifier.

ZERO control: Adjusts the no-signal display of the S meter to S1.

KEY jack: Provides a connection for CW key. With key connected, transmitter is disabled for all modes of operation and receiver is disabled for AM unless the key is closed.

Left Side (not illustrated).

RCVR/TCVR switch: Selects either the TR–4C Receiver or external receiver.

Rear Chassis (Refer to figure 2-2).

Ground terminal: Provides a connection for earth ground.

SIDE TONE control: Adjusts the level of the CW sidetone with respect to the received signal. For no sidetone, rotate fully counterclockwise.

LIGHTS switch: Changes intensity of dial lamps to dim (D) or bright (B).

Antenna connector: Provides a connection for the station antenna (SO-239).

Power connector: Provides a connection for either AC–4 or DC–4 Power Supply.

External Receiver Antenna jack: Provides a connection for an external receiver.

External Receiver Mute jack: Provides a connection for muting an external receiver. It may be used with any receiver which requires a DC path to ground for receiving and an open circuit for muting. All R. L. Drake receivers have this feature.

NOTE

Rear chassis markings *above* the CAUTION notice identify external cable connectors when TR--4C VHF Modification Kit is used.

c. Turn the SIDEBAND switch to its counterclockwise position.
d. Turn the Mode switch to X-CW.
e. Adjust the Power Supply (AC–4 or DC–4) bias control for a reading of 0.1 Amperes on the plate current meter.

3-7. TUNE UP. Do not allow plate current to exceed 0.1 Amperes for more than 6 seconds with the PLATE control not tuned for minimum plate current or maximum RF output.

CAUTION

Failure to observe the warning above will result in rapid final amplifier tube deterioration due to excessive plate dissipation.

The final amplifier pi-network will match a nominal 50 ohm load. The VSWR may be as high as 2:1 on all bands except 80 meters where a lower VSWR may be required. On 80 meters an external antenna matching network may be required.

Preset the controls as follows:

a. Select the desired band with the BAND switch.
b. Select the desired operating frequency with the VFO tuning knob.
c. Rotate the XMTR GAIN control full counterclockwise.
d. Rotate the LOAD control full counterclockwise.
e. Place the SIDEBAND control in the X position.
f. Place the Mode switch in the SSB position.
g. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum noise or signal as indicated by the S meter.

Rotate the Mode switch to the X-CW position and advance the XMTR GAIN control until the plate current meter moves up scale slightly. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum plate current and quickly tune the PLATE control for a dip in plate current. After the dip is found, rotate the XMTR GAIN control clockwise until plate current no longer increases.

Depress the LOAD control and alternately adjust the PLATE and LOAD controls in small increments for maximum RF output. Release the LOAD control and adjust the PLATE control for minimum plate current. At this point the plate meter should indicate a plate current between 0.380 and 0.500 Amperes. The reading will depend on the line voltage, antenna match, tube condition, etc. Increasing the setting of the LOAD control beyond the point at which maximum RF output occurs will result in excessive plate dissipation. It should not be necessary to advance the LOAD control beyond 4.5 to obtain maximum RF output. Further advancement indicates that the VSWR of the antenna system is too high and leaving the control set beyond this point is likely to result in excessive harmonic radiation. The above procedure should be completed as quickly as possible and the Mode switch should be returned to the SSB position.

When the Mode switch is in the X-CW position, the screen voltage on the final amplifier tubes is reduced to prevent overheating. When the switch is in the SSB position, this voltage is increased so that an input power of 300 watts can be obtained.

3-8. SSB OPERATION.

In the following discussion, it is assumed that the TR–4C has already been tuned up on the desired band as described in paragraph 3-7. Preset the controls as follows:

SIDEBAND –On desired sideband as shown by indicator lights.
Mode –On SSB.
XMTR GAIN –Fully counterclockwise.
RF gain (lever) –Fully clockwise.
RCVR GAIN (knob) –Fully counterclockwise (do not turn off power).
VOX gain –Fully clockwise.
ANTIVOX –Fully counterclockwise.

While talking into the microphone in a normal voice, increase the XMTR GAIN control until the S meter starts kicking up scale above its resting value. With no modulation, the S meter will rest up scale on transmit. This indicates that the transmitter AGC is starting to operate and the transmitter has maximum output. Continue talking and reduce the VOX gain until a point is reached where further reduction results in a too frequent relay drop out. Increase the AF GAIN until received signals are of the desired level. This may cause the transceiver to cycle back and forth between transmit and receive. Adjust the ANTIVOX control until the cycling stops. If the push-to-talk switch on the microphone is properly connected as described under Installa-

tion, it may be depressed at any time, thus overriding the VOX system. If VOX operation is not desired, turn the VOX gain control fully counterclockwise.

On SSB, the TR–4C transmits on exactly the same frequency on which it receives. Therefore, be sure that you have the signals tuned in so that the voices sound normal before you answer another station's CQ, or break another QSO. Otherwise, you will not be transmitting exactly on frequency. If a key is used, it must either be closed or unplugged from the KEY jack for SSB and AM operation.

3-9. CW OPERATION.

To operate CW, connect a key to the KEY jack. If an electronic keyer is used, connect it for grid block keying. Leave the key in the open condition. The TR–4C uses shifted carrier CW. With this system, it is possible to transmit approximately on the received station's frequency without being zero beat while receiving. The transmitter BFO is shifted from the received signal frequency by approximately 1 kHz. The VFO dial reads the correct frequency of a received signal when the signal is tuned for zero beat.

To receive CW signals, place the Mode switch in the X-CW position and the SIDEBAND switch in the X position. Tune in a CW signal for an audio pitch of about 1 kHz and adjust the audio gain control knob for a normal listening level.

To transmit, depress the key, and adjust the XMTR GAIN control until it is just below the point at which plate current no longer increases. Do not advance it beyond this point. Advance the SIDETONE control on the rear of the chassis until the sidetone reaches the desired volume. Adjusting the RCVR GAIN knob controls both the received signal and sidetone level.

The TR–4C uses automatic transmit/receive switching. This means that it will automatically transmit when the key is depressed and will remain in the transmit condition during keying. It will return to the receive condition when the key is released for a brief period. If this period is too long, decrease the VOX gain. Manual transmit/receive switching can be accomplished by connecting an external switch to the push-to-talk circuit of the MIC jack.

3-10. AM OPERATION.

For AM operation, the Mode switch should be in the X-AM position and the SIDEBAND switch should be in the X position. If a key is used, it should be left closed or unplugged. Tune in AM signals for most pleasing audio. This will not necessarily coincide with maximum S meter reading. The same procedure should be followed in setting the various gain controls on AM as on SSB, except that the XMTR GAIN control should be adjusted for plate current peaks of 0.2 to 0.25 Amperes when talking into the microphone in a normal voice. Care should be taken to stay within these limits since the transmitter AGC does not operate on AM.

3-11. OPERATION NEAR BAND EDGES.

When operating near the edge of a band, be sure to check the dial calibration as described under tuning procedure. When working SSB be sure to use the sideband that will be inside the band. On AM and CW, the transmitted carrier will be 1 kHz higher or lower than the indicated dial frequency.

3-12. OPERATION WITH A LINEAR AMPLIFIER.

Since the TR–4C Transceiver is conservatively rated at 300 watts PEP input, it is doubtful if it would be worthwhile to use a linear amplifier with a power rating of less than 1000 to 2000 watts PEP input. A triode type grounded grid linear amplifier with a 1000 to 2000 watt PEP rating will present a satisfactory load to the TR–4C.

If the linear amplifier is of the grounded cathode type with high impedance input, it will be necessary to install a resistive pad between the TR–4C and the linear amplifier that will present the proper impedance to the TR–4C. Such a pad must be made of non-inductive resistors and must have adequate power handling capacity. Antenna switching should be accomplished as shown in figure 2-7. Most linear amplifiers have these relays built-in.

To properly operate the TR–4C with a linear amplifier proceed as follows:

a. With the TR–4C connected to the linear amplifier tune the RF TUNE control as described in paragraph 3-7 g.
b. Set the LOAD control to the setting indicated on the chart below, for the band desired, when using a linear amplifier with a 50 ohm input.

BAND	50 Ohm LOAD Setting
3.5 MHz	2
7.0 MHz	3
14.0 MHz	2
21.0 MHz	3
28.5 MHz	2

c. Tune the PLATE control for minimum plate current.
d. Switch the Mode switch to the desired mode of operation.
e. Advance the XMTR GAIN control until the desired amount of input to the linear amplifier is obtained.

Note that when the TR–4C is loaded much below maximum RF output the AGC does not function properly and flat topping in the TR–4C may result. Care should be taken to keep the XMTR GAIN below the point where this occurs. This can be accomplished by making sure that the average peak plate current does not exceed one half of the plate current obtained on tune up.

If your linear amplifier has AGC output, connect it to the TR–4C as shown in figure 2-7. If the TR–4C is properly tuned, this should prevent flat topping on SSB regardless of the XMTR GAIN control setting. However, it will not prevent overdrive on AM since the AGC does not function in this mode.

3-13. NOVICE OPERATION.

If used on the novice bands, maximum legal input power is 250 Watts which occurs when the Plate Meter reads .385 Ampere. To realize the most useful output under these conditions, readjustment of the Bias control on the Power Supply is suggested. Follow the Bias Adjustment procedure in paragraph 3-6, except set bias control on AC–4 for .025 Ampere plate current (one fourth of the normal setting). If the transceiver is used on both novice band and by another operator on SSB or AM, the bias must be readjusted to .1 Ampere before voice operation is attempted.

To load the transmitter for novice operation, preset controls as described in paragraph 3-6. Turn the MODE switch to X–CW and advance XMTR GAIN for a very slight increase in plate current. Tune RF TUNE for a peak in plate current, being careful not to exceed .385 Ampere, and quickly tune PLATE control for a dip in plate current. Turn XMTR GAIN control fully clockwise. Adjust LOAD control clockwise and then redip the PLATE control. This procedure should be done repeatedly in small increments. Stop advancing LOAD control when plate current reaches .385 Ampere with the PLATE dipped, or when output power no longer increases, whichever occurs first. Reduce XMTR GAIN until plate current just starts to drop. The transmitter is now ready for operation.

CHAPTER IV
THEORY OF OPERATION

4-1. GENERAL.

The TR–4C is a 300 Watt HF single sideband transceiver which covers the 80 through 10 meter amateur bands. AM and CW modes are also included. The TR–4C requires either an R. L. Drake AC–4, 120 V AC power supply, or an R. L. Drake DC–4, 12 V DC power supply. The TR–4C features a high-stability linear permeability tuned VFO and two 8 pole crystal lattice filters for sideband selection. Some of the circuits are common to both the transmit and receive functions. Refer to the block diagram figure 4-1 and the schematic diagram figure 5-5 as required to supplement the following discussion.

4-2. RECEIVER CIRCUITRY.

A signal entering the antenna terminal passes through the antenna switching contacts of the relay and is applied to the grid of the RF amplifier V7 through the selectivity of the L/C network formed by T9, T10 and a section of the RF TUNE capacitor C37. After being amplified, it is passed through an additional L/C network consisting of T7, T8 and the remaining section of C37, to the grid of the mixer V3B. At this point it is combined with a signal from the premixer system of the required frequency to yield a 9.0 MHz IF. The premixer system consists of a 4.9-5.5 MHz solid state permeability tuned VFO, a buffer Q2, a switchable overtone crystal oscillator V1A, the premixer pentode V1B and a cathode follower V3A.

The VFO signal output is applied to the grid of the premixer pentode through the buffer Q2 and its associated circuitry. For 80 and 20 meter operation, the VFO signal bypasses the premixer and is connected through the cathode follower to the mixer. On 40, 15 and 10 meters a signal from the crystal oscillator heterodynes with the VFO in the premixer, V1B, to produce the desired injection frequency. On 40 meters, for example, a 21.5 MHz overtone crystal and the appropriate coil L1 are switched into the crystal oscillator circuit. The output from the oscillator is coupled into the premixer pentode where it heterodynes with the 4.9-5.5 MHz VFO to produce an output frequency of 16.0-16.6 MHz. This output is coupled through the 16.0-16.6 MHz bandpass coupler, T3, and to the cathode follower, V3A. On 15 meters, a 35.5 MHz crystal is used with a 30.0-30.6 MHz coupler, T2, and on the three 10 meter ranges, 42.5, 43.0 and 43.6 MHz crystals are used with a 37.0-38.7 MHz coupler, T1.

The 9.0 MHz output of the mixer, V3B, passes through the impedance matching transformer T6 into the upper or lower sideband crystal filter. The setting of the SIDEBAND knob determines which crystal filter is used. From the crystal filter the signal passes through the impedance matching transformer, T13, and is amplified by the 9 MHz receiver IF amplifier system, V11 and V12 and the IF transformers T11 and T12. The output of T12 is applied to the AGC amplifier, V13A, to the product detector, V16, and to the diode detector, V2.

The AGC amplifier V13A is biased beyond cutoff to provide an AGC delay. When sufficient RF voltage from T12 is applied to its grid, plate current flows during part of the cycle. This causes amplified negative voltage to appear across its plate load resistor R63, thus charging C115. This negative control voltage is applied to the grids of V7, V11 and V12. C115 discharges through R63 with a time constant of approximately one second. Rotating the RF Gain control counterclockwise applies increasingly more negative bias to the AGC controlled grids, thus limiting their maximum gain.

The product detector tube, V16, consists of a 9 MHz crystal oscillator formed by the cathode, grid 1 and grid 2. A product detector is formed by the cathode, grid 3, and the plate. The IF signal is applied to grid 3 where it heterodynes with the BFO voltage in the tube. The resulting audio signal is of sufficient amplitude to drive the audio preamplifier transistor, Q5, which drives the audio output tube, V17.

The IF signal from T12 is also applied to V2 which functions as a diode detector and an audio amplifier in the AM receive mode. The output of this stage is also fed to the Mode switch and is connected to V17 through the Audio Gain control when the Mode switch is in the X-AM position. The output of V17 is applied through the audio output transformer to the phone jack, J5, and to pin 12 of the power connector. Also, output from the plate of V17 is applied to the anti vox rectifier, D6, through the ANTIVOX control.

A 100 kHz crystal calibrator, V5, is switched on when the Mode switch is in the CAL position. Its output is coupled to the grid of the RF amplifier V7.

The S meter in the TR–4C operates in a bridge circuit with the plates of a receiver IF amplifier, V11, and the transmitter IF amplifier, V15 in one leg of the bridge and plate of the audio output tube V17 in the other leg. Receiver AGC voltage applied to V11 on receive and transmit causes these tubes to draw less current, thus unbalancing the bridge, which causes the S meter to read up scale. The bridge is balanced on receive by the ZERO control. On transmit, the meter may rest up scale with no modulation.

4-3. TRANSMITTER CIRCUITRY.

Audio input from the microphone is applied to one section of the microphone amplifier V18 where it is amplified and applied to the remaining section of this tube through one section of the XMTR GAIN control. Output from the cathode of the second triode of V18 is applied to the balanced modulator through the Mode switch for SSB operation. Output from the plate is applied to the grid of the AM screen modulator, V14, and to the grid of the first VOX amplifier triode, V19A, through the VOX control. The output from V19A is rectified by the VOX rectifier, D5, and the resulting positive DC voltage is applied to the grid of the relay control triode, V19B, causing it to conduct and to close the transmit/receive relay.

Audio voltage from V17 is rectified by the anti vox rectifier, D6, which supplies negative voltage to the grid of V19B, and preventing it from conducting and closing the relay when the microphone picks up audio from the speaker.

Cut off bias for the relay tube is obtained from a voltage divider. When the microphone push-to-talk switch is activated the cut off bias is grounded, causing V19B to conduct and close the relay.

RF from the 9.0 MHz crystal oscillator portion of the product detector tube V16 is applied to the balanced diode modulator through the carrier balance control. On SSB the audio from V18 is also applied to the balanced modulator and the result is a double sideband suppressed carrier signal which is applied to the transmitter IF amplifier. The amplified output is coupled through T13 to the upper or lower crystal filter where the undesired sideband is filtered out. The resulting SSB signal is coupled through T6 to the transmitter mixer, V4, where it is combined with a premixer signal of the proper frequency to give output on the desired amateur band.

Output from V4 passes through the L/C circuit, T7, T8 and C37, and is applied to the grid of the driver tube, V6. Here it is amplified and applied to the grids of V8, V9, and V10 through the L/C network, T9, T10 and the other half of C37.

Three parellel power amplifier tubes boost the signal to a power level suitable for transmission. The output impedance of the power amplifier tubes is matched to a 52 ohm load by means of the pi network circuit composed of L8, L9, C94 and C95.

At the first trace of flat topping in the final amplifier tubes, a small amount of grid current will be drawn. This produces a voltage drop across R47. The small negative going voltage thus obtained is applied through R46 to the cathode of V13B where it is amplified. The amplified negative voltage is applied to the grid of V15, thus reducing the level of the driving signal.

When the Mode switch is placed in the X-CW position, V2 becomes an audio phase shift oscillator which is grid-block keyed along with the transmitter mixer, V4, and the driver, V6. The audio output from V2 is applied to the grid of the

product detector tube V16, through the SIDETONE control, to provide audio output from the speaker for CW monitoring. Audio output from V2 is also applied to the grid of the VOX amplifier tube, V19A, which causes relays K1 and K2 to close. The relays turn on the transmitter, cause the 9.0 MHz oscillator to be shifted to 9.001 MHz and apply a variable source of DC, controlled by half of the XMTR GAIN control, to the balanced modulator. The DC voltage which unbalances the modulator increases the carrier to a suitable level. The resulting 9.001 MHz signal from the balanced modulator is amplified by V15 and coupled into the crystal filter. The SIDEBAND control must be in the "X" position to allow the signal to pass. A screen resistor is switched into the final amplifier screen circuit to prevent excessive screen current in the X-CW position of the Mode switch.

When the Mode switch is placed in the X-AM position the AM screen modulator V14 is inserted in series with the final amplifier screen supply and a constant voltage is applied to the balanced modulator. Relay K2 shifts the 9 MHz oscillator to 9.001 on transmit just as it does on X-CW. Vox and PTT functions are the same on AM as on SSB.

When relay K1 is closed, either by the VOX circuit or the push-to-talk switch, the cathode of V3B, V7, V11 and V12 are isolated from ground which disables the receiver. The cathodes of V4, V6, V8, V9, V10 and V15 are connected to ground which actuates the transmitter. Also, the antenna is switched from the receiver input to the final amplifier tank circuit. If the TCVR/RCVR switch is in the RCVR position, the RCVR MUTE jack is grounded through RFC 11 and RFC 7 and the antenna is connected to the RCVR ANT jack instead of T9 in the receive condition of the relays.

Pushing in the LOAD control disconnects the plate current meter from the final amplifier cathode circuit and connects it to the diode D9 and its associated circuitry. This network samples the RF output voltage at the antenna connection, rectifies it, and applies it across the meter.

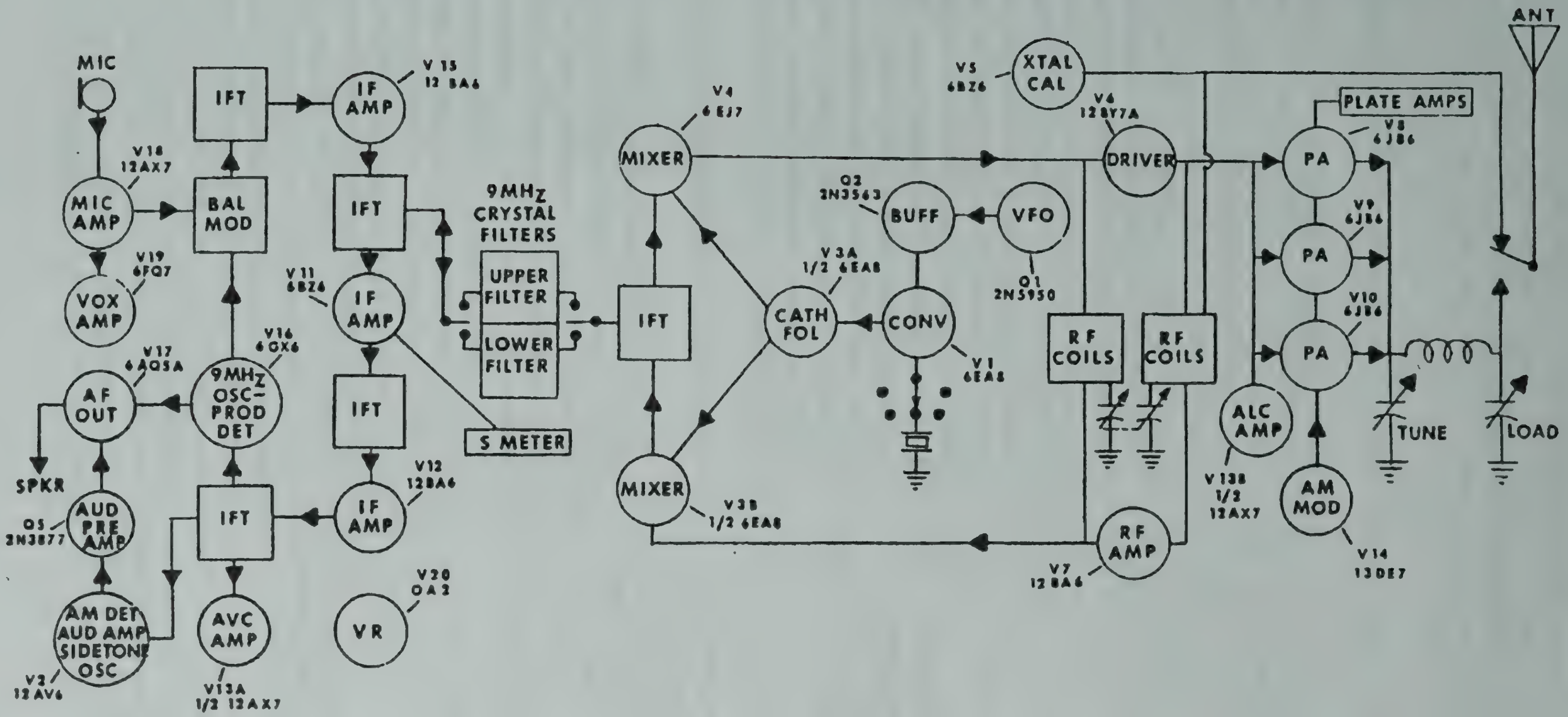

MIC
V18
12AX7
MIC AMP
V19
6FQ7
VOX AMP
V17
6AQ5A
AF OUT
SPKR
Q5
2N3877
AUD PRE AMP
AM DET
AUD AMP
SIDETONE
OSC
V2
12AV6
IFT
BAL MOD
V16
6GX6
9MHz
OSC-
PROD
DET
IFT
AVC AMP
V13A
1/2 12AX7
V15
12BA6
IF AMP
IFT
V11
6BZ6
IF AMP
IFT
V12
12BA6
IF AMP
V20
OA2
VR
9MHz
CRYSTAL
FILTERS
UPPER FILTER
LOWER FILTER
S METER
IFT
V4
6EJ7
MIXER
MIXER
V3B
1/2 6EA8
V3A
1/2 6EA8
CATH FOL
Q2
2N3563
BUFF
VFO
Q1
2N5950
CONV
V1
6EA8
V5
6BZ6
XTAL CAL
V6
12BY7A
DRIVER
RF COILS
RF COILS
RF AMP
V7
12BA6
ALC AMP
V13B
1/2
12AX7
PLATE AMPS
V8
6JB6
PA
V9
6JB6
PA
V10
6JB6
PA
AM MOD
V14
13DE7
TUNE
LOAD
ANT

Figure 4–1. Block Diagram

CHAPTER V
MAINTENANCE

5-1. SERVICE DATA.

We will check and align your transceiver at the factory for a nominal fee if it has not been tampered with. Transportation charges are extra. Any necessary repairs will be made on a time and material basis. Please write or call the factory for authorization before returning your unit for alignment or service. Address your request for authorization to:

R. L. Drake Company
540 Richard Street
Miamisburg, Ohio 45342
ATTN: Customer Service Department

Telephone: (Area Code 513) 866-3211
(Code-A-Phone Service after
1630 Hours E.S.T.)

WARNING
Extreme caution should be exercised when the top and bottom covers are removed. High voltage which is present at several points can cause a lethal electrical shock. Repairs and adjustments should be made only by a qualified electronics technician. Disconnect the Power Supply from the TR--4C before removing covers.

5-2. TOP COVER REMOVAL.

Remove the three top screws on each side of the TR--4C and remove the cover by first pulling up on the rear and then the front of the cabinet.

5-3. BOTTOM COVER REMOVAL.

Remove the three bottom screws on each side of the TR--4C and lift the chassis out of the bottom cover.

5-4. TUBE REPLACEMENT.

In general, most trouble in electronic equipment of good design is due to tube failure. The best method of finding defective tubes is by direct substitution. It is best not to rely too heavily on tube checkers. The TR--4C has been designed so that, with the exception of V8, V9 and V10, tubes can be replaced without need for realignment. These tubes are to be replaced with a matched set of the same brand as originally supplied. If a different brand is used, alignment of T7, T8, T9 and final amplifier neutralization is recommended. Matched sets of Sylvania 6JB6's are available directly from the factory. To replace the 6JB6 tubes, it is necessary to remove only the top of the final amplifier cage. To do this, remove the sheet metal screws holding the PA cover to the cage. A disc-handle is provided on the cover to facilitate removal. To replace the PA cover, simply reverse the process. Be sure the parasitic suppressors do not short to the cage.

5-5. TROUBLE SHOOTING.

Careful consideration has been given in the design of the TR--4C to keep maintenance problems to a minimum. However, it is quite possible that some problem will arise which cannot be cured by tube substitution. If this occurs, it is suggested that the TR--4C be returned to the dealer or you may write to the Customer Service Department at the address given in paragraph 5-1. Be sure to describe the problem in detail. Include full information concerning external connections, control settings, tubes substituted, serial number, etc. Always include the serial number when requesting service information. Before returning equipment to the factory, it is necessary to get prior authorization. In case of malfunction, first check the power supply fuse, the filament fuse in the TR--4C and the number 12 fuse lamp near the relay assembly for continuity. The voltage and resistance charts in this chapter should be valuable in isolating minor problems.

However, no attempt should be made to service the TR–4C unless you are thoroughly familiar with electronic circuitry and servicing technique. Care should be taken not to disturb the lead dress in the TR–4C since several circuits are quite critical in this regard.

5-6. TEST EQUIPMENT.

Alignment of TR–4C will require the following equipment:

a. A general coverage receiver capable of receiving WWV.
b. An 11 Megohm VTVM.
c. An alignment load consisting of a 1000 Ohm non-inductive resistor in series with a .005 uF disc ceramic capacitor.
d. A 52 Ohm dummy load.

WARNING

Before receiver alignment is attempted, the plate and screen power leads of the amplifier tubes should be disconnected where they pass through the partition under the chassis. Be sure the power is disconnected before this is attempted, or serious electrical shock may result.

5-7. ALIGNMENT PROCEDURES.

5-8. CRYSTAL CALIBRATOR. To align the crystal calibrator perform the following steps:

a. Let the TR–4C warm up for 30 minutes.
b. Preset the XMTR GAIN control fully counterclockwise.
c. Set the Mode switch to CAL.
d. Tune in WWV on the general coverage receiver with the BFO off.
e. Connect a wire from the receiver antenna terminal to V5 of the TR–4C. Wrap the wire around the tube a turn or two.
f. Adjust C45, located on top of the TR–4C chassis, until the calibrator signal is zero beat with the unmodulated WWV carrier.

5-9. 9.0 MHz OSCILLATOR.

a. Let the TR–4C warm up for 30 minutes.
b. Set the Mode switch in the SSB position.
c. Turn up the Audio Gain control until noise is audible in the speaker.
d. While switching the SIDEBAND knob back and forth, adjust C130, located on top of the chassis near the rear edge, until the pitch of the noise is the same on both positions.

5-10. INJECTION CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR.

a. Set the VTVM to its lowest DC negative volt scale and set the pointer to about center scale with VTVM zero adjust control.
b. Connect the common lead of the VTVM to the TR–4C chassis and the DC lead to the test point which is connected to pin 9 of V1.
c. Set BAND switch to 7.0 MHz and adjust L1 for maximum negative DC voltage.
d. Switch to 21.0 MHz and adjust L5 for maximum as in Step c.
e. Switch to 29.1 MHz and adjust L2 for maximum as in Step c.
f. The 28.0, the 28.5 and the 29.1 MHz positions should have about the same negative voltage.

5-11. VFO ADJUSTMENT.

The permeability tuned VFO was carefully adjusted at the factory and should require no further alignment. If it does not appear to track from one end of its range to the other, it should be returned to the factory for realignment. Maximum calibration error is 1 kHz when calibrated to the nearest 100 kHz point.

5-12. INJECTION COUPLER.

a. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 7.3 MHz.
b. Connect the alignment load between pin 6 of V1B and ground and adjust T3 (top) for maximum S meter reading.
c. Connect the load from pin 9 of V3A and ground and adjust T3 (bottom) for maximum S meter reading.
d. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 21.300 MHz and repeat the procedure for T2.
e. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 29.000 MHz and repeat the above procedure for T1. *Note:* On T1, adjust the bottom slug when the load is on pin 6 of V1B and the top slug when the load is on pin 9 on V3A.

Table 5–1. Resistance Chart

REF DES	Tube Type	MEASURED AT PIN 1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
V1	6EA8	9.5 K	2.5 Meg	20 K	0	Fil	9.6 K	220	220	150 K
V2	12AV6	3.3 Meg	Inf.	Fil	0	150 K	150 K	350 K	—	—
V3	6EA8	8.0 K	150 K	250 K	Fil	0	11 K	2.2 K	1 K	34 K
V4	6EJ7	25 K	660 K	23 K	Fil	0	0	11 K	9.5 K	0
V5	6BZ6	1 Meg	1 K	Fil	0	350 K	125 K	1 K		
V6	12BY7A	25 K	67 K	0	0	0	Fil	8.5 K	25 K	0
V7	12BA6	2.8 Meg	0	Fil	0	11 K	10K	100	—	—
V8	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V9	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V10	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V11	6BZ6	2.5 Meg	150	0	Fil	10 K	13 K	0		
V12	12BA6	2.5 Meg	0	Fil	0	10 K	13 K	68		
V13	12AX7	1 Meg	22 K	45 K	0	0	2.2 Meg	55 K	48 K	Fil
V14	13DE7	8 K	2.5 Meg	2.5 Meg	Fil	0	2.2 Meg	22 Meg	0	Inf.
V15	12BA6	2 Meg	0	0	Fil	10 K	13 K	25 K	—	—
V16	6GX6	2.2 Meg	1 K	0	Fil	250 K	9.2 K	22 K		
V17	6AQ5	500 K	270	0	Fil	8.7 K	8 K	500 K		
V18	12AX7	350 K	6.8 Meg	0	0	Fil	350 K	500 K	3.3 K	N. C.
V19	6FQ7	12 K	4.5 Meg	0	Fil	0	100 K	620 K	820	1.6 Meg
V20	OA2	7.8 K	0	Inf.	0	7.8 K	Inf.	0		

REF DES	Transistor Type	MEASURED AT: Emitter	Base	Collector
Q1	2N5950	Located in PTO		
Q2	2N3563	Located in PTO		
Q3	AT5059	0	5.6 K	43 K
Q4	2N3394	0	750	1.1 K
Q5	2N3877	1 K	56 K	6.8 K

NOTE:
All measurements were made with respect to ground with the power supply disconnected from the TR 4C. The BAND switch was on 7.0 MHz, the Mode switch was on CAL and the RCVR GAIN and XMTR GAIN controls were fully clockwise. The VOX, ANTI VOX and SIDETONE controls were fully clockwise and the ZERO control was set at the balance point. The accessory 34 PNB jumper plug was in the noise blanker jack.

Table 5–2. Voltage Chart

REF DES	Tube Type	MEASURED AT PIN								
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
V1	6EA8	122	–2	125	0	6.3*	250 245	2.6	2.6	–1.3
V2	12AV6	0 –1.6	13.0 0	12.6*	0	0 0.9	0 0.9	255 122		
V3	6EA8	155 150	0	98 150	6.3*	0	260 250	3.5 150	17 15.5	17 15.2
V4	6EJ7	155 2.8	0	NC	6.3*	0	0	270 230	175 145	
V5	6BZ6	–42 0	0.9 23	12.6*	6.3*	70 140	58 144	0.9 23		
V6	12BY7A	155 3.3	0	NC	0	0	6.3*	265 240	262 165	0
V7	12BA6	–.14	0	12.6*	0	235 230	98 110	1.25 150		
V8	6JB6	262 250	–60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	–60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V9	6JB6	262 250	–60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	–60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V10	6JB6	262 250	–60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	–60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V11	6BZ6	–.16	1.6 150	0	6.3*	235	125 150	0		
V12	12BA6	–.16	0	12.6*	0	240	105 150	1.1 150		
V13	12AX7	–.1 0	–61 –61	–59 –59	0	0	–.16	–61 –61	–59 –58	6.3*
V14	13DE7	260 250	11.4 11.2	11.4 11.2	12.6*	0	11.4 11.2	–1.0 –1.0	0	64 53
V15	12BA6	0	0	0	12.6*	248 140	155 144	155 1.3		
V16	6GX6	–6.0 –5.6	4.0	0	6.3*	140 140	140	0		
V17	6AQ5	0	7.2 6.8	0	6.3*	240 230	155 150	NC		
V18	12AX7	88 87	–.75	0	0	12.6*	130 125	0	1.23 1.1	NC
V19	6FQ7	240 165	–9.5 0	0	6.3*	0	67 87	0	1.5 1.27	TP
V20	OA2	146	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	0		

Table 5–2. Voltage Chart (continued)

REF DES	Transistor Type	MEASURED AT: Emitter	Base	Collector
Q1	2N5950	Located in PTO		
Q2	2N3563	Located in PTO		
Q3	AT5059	0	0	61
Q4	2N3394	0	11*.2	0
Q5	2N3877	2.3	2.8	48

NOTE:
All measurements were made with an 11 Megohm VTVM and were taken from ground. RF TUNE, PLATE and LOAD controls were set as described in paragraph 3-7. BAND switch was on 7.0 MHz, VFO dial was at 7.250 MHz and SIDEBAND was on X. Receive measurements were made with the Mode switch in the CAL position and the transmit measurements were made with the Mode switch in the X-CW position, with the following exception:

On V14, both receive and transmit measurements were made with the Mode switch in the X-AM position and with PTT line grounded.

The AC–4 Power Supply was used. Where two voltages are shown, the top is for receive and the bottom is for transmit. An "*" indicates AC voltage. The accessory 34--PNB jumper plug was in the noise blanker jack.

5-13. RECEIVER IF.

a. Peak the RF TUNE control on noise at 3.8 MHz.
b. Adjust T11 top and bottom and T12 top and bottom for maximum noise from the speaker.

5-14. BALANCED MODULATOR AND CARRIER BALANCE.

a. Disconnect the power supply and reconnect the screen and plate supply leads to the final amplifier tubes.
b. Reconnect power supply.
c. Connect dummy load to the antenna jack.
d. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum receiver gain.
e. Adjust bias per paragraph 3-6. With XMIT GAIN fully counterclockwise, place the Mode switch in X--CW position and SIDEBAND switch in X position.
f. If the plate current exceeds 0.15 Ampere, adjust the RF TUNE for 0.15 Ampere maximum.
g. If plate current is less than 0.15 Amperes, adjust Carrier Balance pot until plate current reaches 0.15 Amperes.
h. Peak T14 for maximum plate current. Detune the RF TUNE control to prevent plate current from exceeding 0.15 Amperes.
i. Alternately adjust the Carrier Balance control and C127 for minimum plate current. There should be no difference in plate current between the two positions of the SIDEBAND switch.

5-15. FILTER MATCHING TRANSFORMER.

a. Adjust the S meter ZERO pot for zero S meter deflection (S-1).
b. With the SIDEBAND switch in USB, tune in the calibrator signal at 3.8 MHz for maximum S meter reading.
c. Adjust the RF TUNE control until the S meter reads S-9.
d. Turn the VFO control clockwise to increase the audio frequency until the S meter drops to S-5.
e. Adjust T6 and T13 for maximum S meter reading.
f. Repeat Steps b. through e.
g. Center the 9.0 MHz oscillator as described in paragraph 5-9.

5-16. MIXER AND RF ALIGNMENT.

a. Tune up the TR–4C at 3.8 MHz for maximum power output into a dummy load. Set the RF TUNE control on 5. Adjust the XMTR GAIN control for 0.2 Amperes plate current as indicated by the plate meter. Adjust T7 bottom and T9 bottom for maximum plate current.
b. Tune up the TR–4C at 7.3 MHz and repeat a. above, with the RF TUNE control on 6, by adjusting T8 top and T10 top.
c. Set RF TUNE control on 5. Tune up the TR–4C at 14.3 MHz and repeat a. above by adjusting T7 top and T9 top.
d. Tune up the TR–4C at 29.7 MHz (crystal not supplied). With the RF TUNE control at 9¾ repeat a. above by adjusting T8 bottom and T10 bottom.
e. Set RF TUNE control on 5. Tune up the TR–4C at 21.3 MHz and repeat a. above by adjusting L6 and L7.

5-17. PA NEUTRALIZATION.

a. Attach an RF output indicator between the TR–4C and the dummy load. If no external output indicator is available, the TR–4C's own RF output indicator may be used.
b. Tune up the TR–4C on 29.0 MHz for maximum power output into a dummy load.
c. Reduce plate current to 0.2 Amperes with the XMTR GAIN control.
d. While tuning the PLATE control back and forth through resonance, adjust C76, using an insulated screwdriver, until the plate current dip and maximum RF output occur simultaneously. An insulated screwdriver is required because the rotor of C76 is connected to + 250 Volts DC.

5-18. TRANSMITTER IF NEUTRALIZATION.

a. With microphone plugged into TR–4C, turn the VOX gain fully counterclockwise and turn XMTR GAIN fully clockwise. Place the Mode switch in the SSB position.
b. While talking into the microphone, increase the RCVR GAIN control setting until speech can be heard from the speaker.
c. Adjust C168 for minimum output from speaker.
d. If over one turn of adjustment is required, it will be necessary to realign T14, C127 and the Carrier Balance control.

5-19. S METER ADJUSTMENT.

With the RF GAIN control fully counterclockwise adjust R187 for an S meter reading of 60 dB over S-9.

Table 5–3. Tube and Semiconductor Complement

REF DES	Component Type	FUNCTION	
		Transmitter	Receiver
V1	6EA8	Pre-Mixer/Xtal Oscillator	Pre-Mixer/Xtal Oscillator
V2	12AV6	Sidetone Oscillator	Diode Det/1st AF Amplifier
V3	6EA8	Cathode Fol.	Mixer/Cathode Fol.
V4	6EJ7	Mixer	—
V5	6BZ6	—	Crystal Calibrator
V6	12BY7	Driver	—
V7	12BA6	—	RF Amplifier

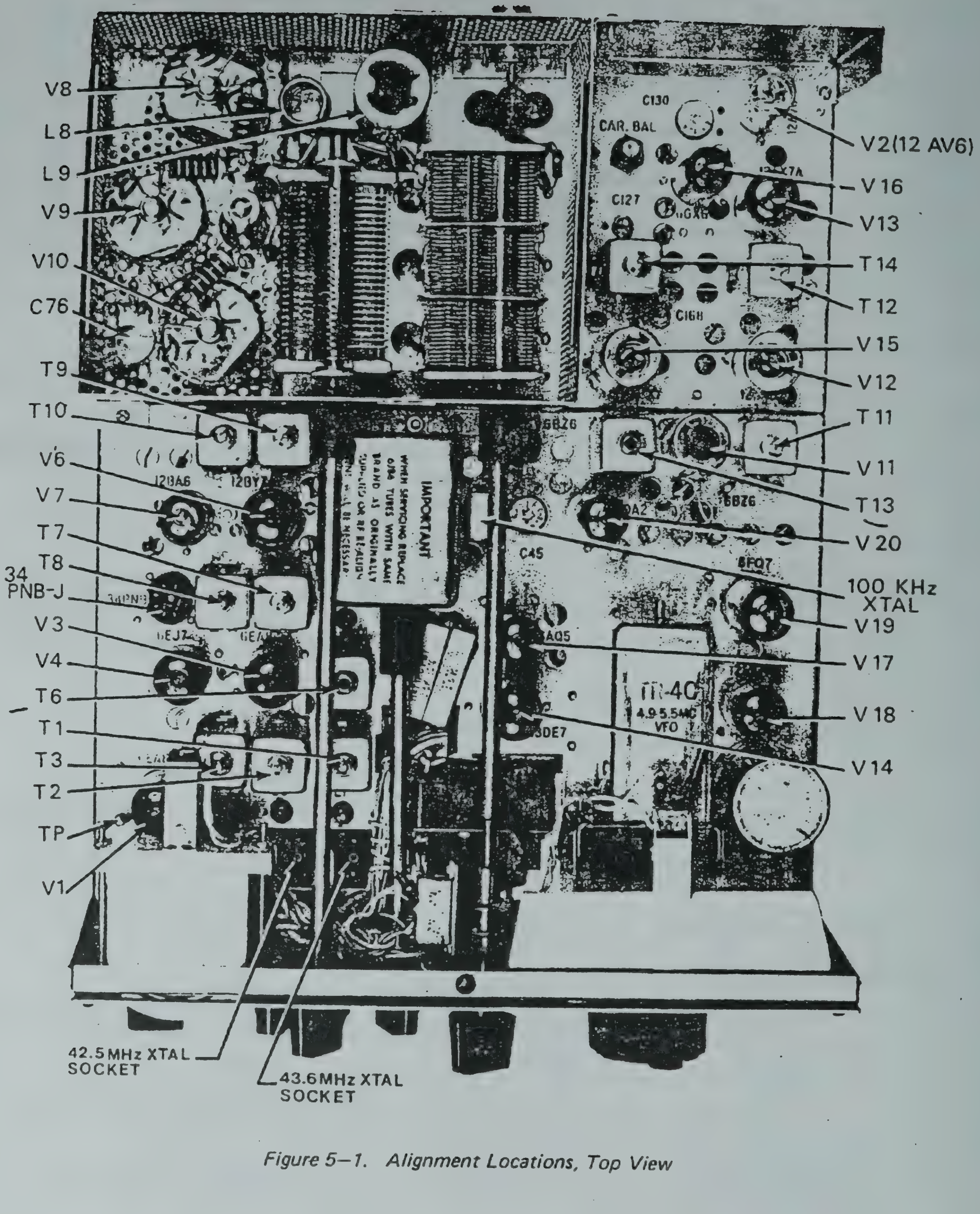

V8
L8
L9
V9
V10
C76
T9
T10
V6
V7
T7
T8
34
PNB-J
V3
V4
T6
T1
T3
T2
TP
V1
42.5MHz XTAL
SOCKET
43.6MHz XTAL
SOCKET
V2(12 AV6)
V 16
V13
T 14
T 12
V 15
V 12
T 11
V 11
T 13
V 20
100 KHz
XTAL
V 19
V 17
V 18
V 14
C130
CAR. BAL
C127
C168
C45
12BA6
12BY7
IMPORTANT
TR-40
4.9-5.5MC
VFO

Figure 5–1. Alignment Locations, Top View

Table 5–3. (Continued)

REF DES	Component Type	FUNCTION Transmitter	Receiver
V8, V9, V10	(3) 6JB6 Matched	Power Amps.	—
V11	6BZ6	—	IF Amplifier
V12	12BA6	—	IF Amplifier
V13	12AX7	AGC	AGC
V14	13DE7	AM Screen Modulator	—
V15	12BA6	IF Amplifier	—
V16	6GX6	9 MHz Xtal Oscillator	BFO/Product Detector
V17	6AQ5A	Anti Vox	Audio Output
V18	12AX7	Mike Amplifier	—
V19	6FQ7	VoxAmp/Relay	—
V20	OA2	Voltage Regulator	Voltage Regulator
Q1	2N5950	VFO	VFO
Q2	2N3563	VFO Buffer	VFO Buffer
Q3	AT5059	Neon Driver	Neon Driver
Q4	2N3394	VFO Shut Off	VFO Shut Off
Q5	2N3877	—	Audio Pre-Amp
D1	1N541	Balanced Modulator	
D2	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D3	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D4	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D5	1N4148	Vox Detector	—
D6	1N4148	Anti Vox Detector	—
D7	1N4148	Vox Relay Speed Up	—
D8	1N714	Voltage Regulator	Voltage Regulator
D9	1N4148	Output Power Detector	—
D10	1N4148	Anti Vox Detector	—
D11	1N4148	Output Power Detector	—
D12	1N4148	Meter Control	—
D13	1N4148	Transient Suppressor	Transient Suppressor
D14	1N4148	AGC Isolation	—

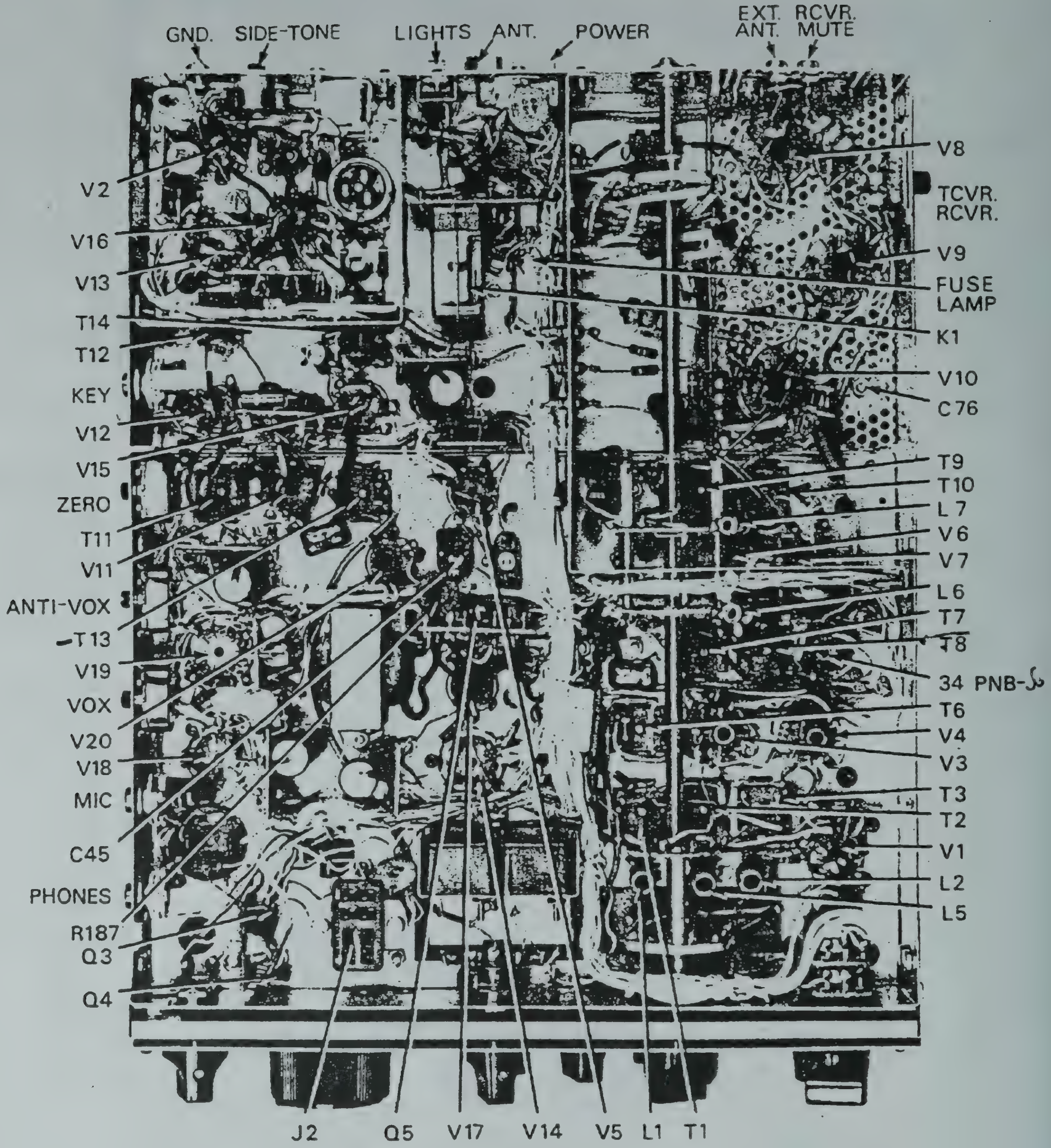

GND.
SIDE-TONE
LIGHTS
ANT.
POWER
EXT. ANT.
RCVR. MUTE
V2
V16
V13
T14
T12
KEY
V12
V15
ZERO
T11
V11
ANTI-VOX
T13
V19
VOX
V20
V18
MIC
C45
PHONES
R187
Q3
Q4
V8
TCVR. RCVR.
V9
FUSE LAMP
K1
V10
C76
T9
T10
L7
V6
V7
L6
T7
T8
34 PNB-
T6
V4
V3
T3
T2
V1
L2
L5
J2
Q5
V17
V14
V5
L1
T1

Figure 5–2. Alignment Locations, Bottom View

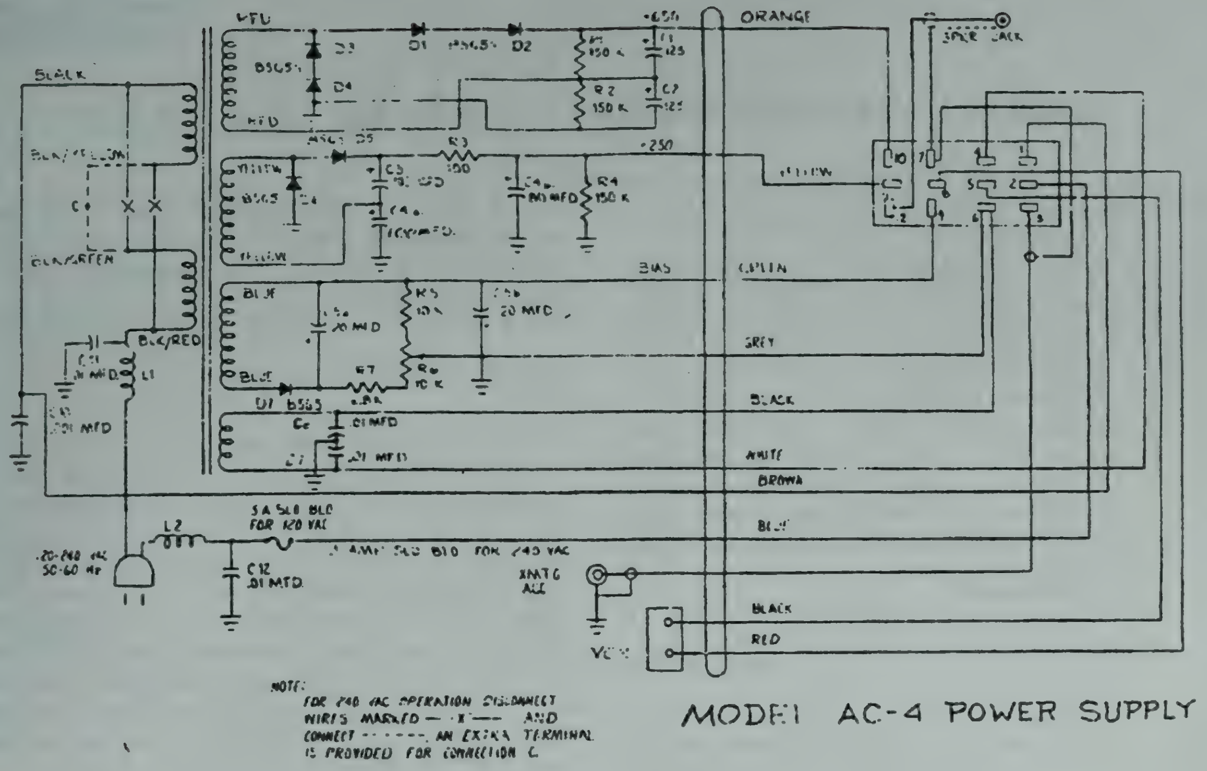

MODEL AC-4 POWER SUPPLY
NOTE: FOR 240 VAC OPERATION DISCONNECT WIRES MARKED —X— AND CONNECT - - - - -. AN EXTRA TERMINAL IS PROVIDED FOR CONNECTION C.
+650
ORANGE
+250
YELLOW
BIAS
GREEN
GREY
BLACK
WHITE
BROWN
BLUE
BLACK
RED
SPKR JACK
XMTG ALC
VOX
BLACK
BLK/YELLOW
BLK/GREEN
BLK/RED
RED
BLUE
D1
D2
D3
D4
D5
D7 B565
R1 150 K
R2 150 K
C1 125
C2 125
R3 100
R4 150 K
C5b 20 MFD
C5a 20 MFD
R5 10 K
R6 10 K
C6 .01 MFD
C7 .01 MFD
C11 .01 MFD
C10 .001 MFD
L1
L2
5 A SLO BLO FOR 120 VAC
3 AMP SLO BLO FOR 240 VAC
C12 .01 MFD
120-240 VAC 50-60 Hz

Figure 5–3. AC–4 Power Supply Schematic

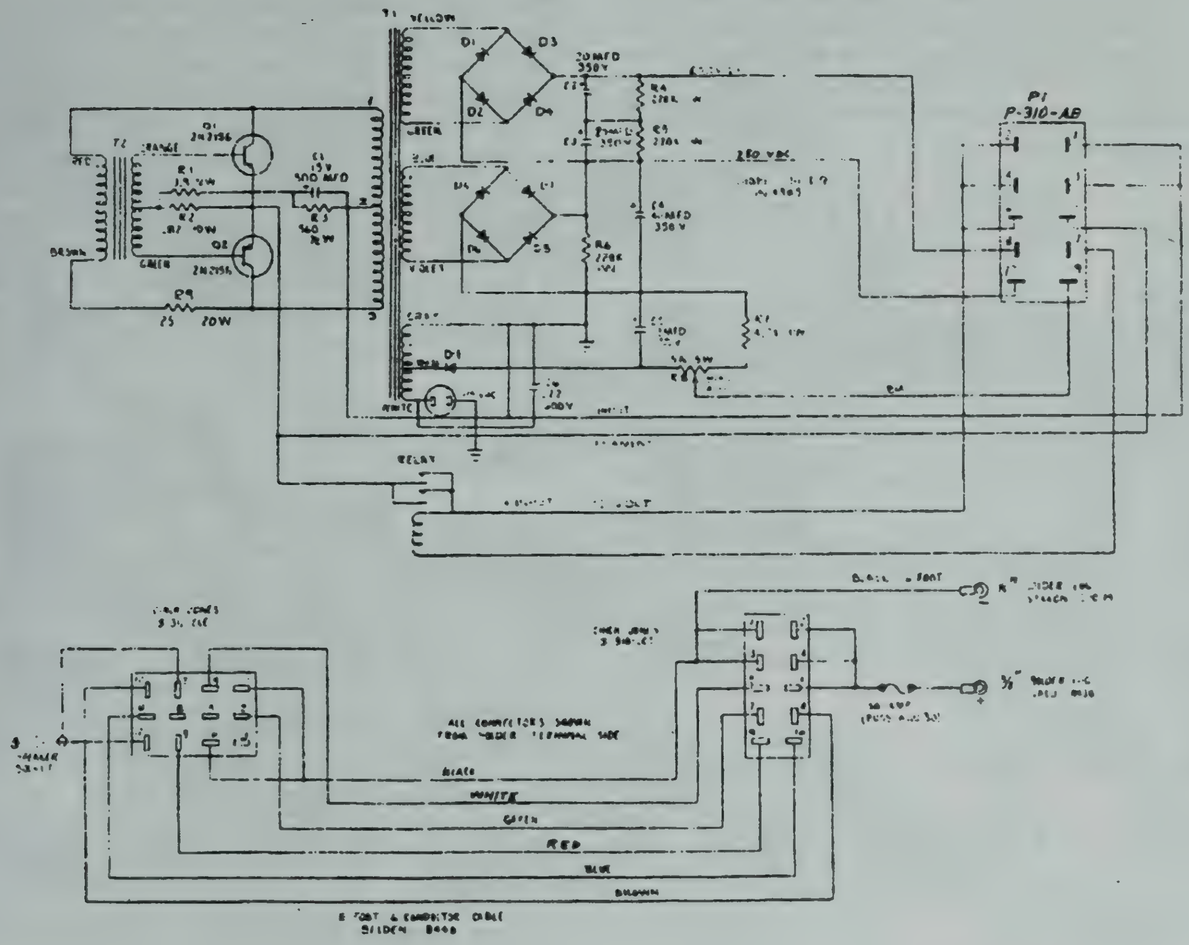

P1
P-310-AB
T1
T2
YELLOW
GREEN
ORANGE
RED
BROWN
VIOLET
WHITE
D1
D2
D3
D4
D5
D6
Q1 2N3156
Q2 2N3156
R1
R2
R3
R4
R5
R6
R7
R8
R9 25 20W
C1 15 V 500 MFD
20 MFD 350 V
250 VAC
RELAY
BLACK
WHITE
GREEN
RED
BLUE
BROWN
ALL CONNECTORS SHOWN FROM SOLDER TERMINAL SIDE
6 FOOT 6 CONDUCTOR CABLE BELDEN 8446

Figure 5–4. DC–4 Power Supply Schematic

MODEL 34–PNB PLUG-IN NOISE BLANKER

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

The 34—PNB Noise Blanker is a solid-state unit designed for use with the TR—4C and TR—4 Transceivers. Unlike noise clippers or limiters commonly found in communications equipment, this is an advanced noise blanker which mutes the receiver for the duration of the noise pulse. Between noise pulses full receiver gain is restored. Receiver AGC is affected only by the desired signal and not by noise. The 34—PNB is most effective on strong, periodic noise impulses such as automobile ignition noise.

INSTALLATION.

Disconnect the power connector from the TR—4C or TR—4. Remove the top half of the transceiver cabinet. Remove the 7 pin jumper plug located in front of the power amplifier cage. With the printed circuit side of the 34—PNB facing the outside of the transceiver chassis, carefully plug in the 34—PNB. After it is correctly seated in the socket, install a number 4 self-tapping screw in each corner of the 34—PNB bracket to secure it to the transceiver chassis. Replace the cabinet top. Some alignment may be necessary at the time of installation. See ALIGNMENT below.

OPERATION.

The BLANKER switch on the transceiver is used to turn the accessory 34—PNB Noise Blanker on and off. The Noise Blanker may be left on except when there is a strong signal within 5 kHz of the received signal. A strong signal which falls within the 10 kHz wide crystal filter in the Noise Blanker, and outside the 2.1 kHz wide crystal filter in the transceiver, will operate the Noise Blanker gate circuit causing distortion products. This limitation in the Noise Blanker is caused by the necessity of having a bandwidth in the blanker wide enough to minimize stretching of noise pulses before blanking. Under normal operating conditions, this limitation is no problem.

CIRCUIT DESCRIPTION.

This noise blanker system is composed of the three major networks described below. Refer to the block diagram and schematic diagram to follow this circuit description.

TRANSMITTING PATH.

The transmitting path consists of a single RC coupled 9 MHz amplifier which passes the transmitter signal through the blanker. The signal then passes through the crystal filter passband and into the transmitter mixer.

RECEIVER PATH.

The signal first passes through a crystal filter with a bandwidth wide enough to pass most of the noise frequency components but narrow enough to keep strong adjacent signals from overloading the noise blanker amplifier. The signal simultaneously enters the noise processor and the delay circuit, a reactive network which compensates for the inherent phase-shift of the noise processing section. The 9 MHz receive amplifier provides an overall system gain for the receive path. The balanced gate is an electronic series switch that opens for noise pulses but closes to allow the signal to pass.

NOISE PROCESSOR.

The signal passes through the tuned 9 MHz amplifier and into the balanced mixer. This mixer converts the 9 MHz noise pulses to 2150 kHz and prevents the high level 6.85 MHz oscillator signal from reaching the amplifier strip. The 2150 kHz noise pulses pass through the two amplifiers, the detector and into the gate driver. The driver reverse-biases the gate at the instant a 9 MHz noise pulse enters on its way to the receiver IF. The gate then is controlled by the same pulse it is blanking, enabling it to respond automatically to pulses of varying width.

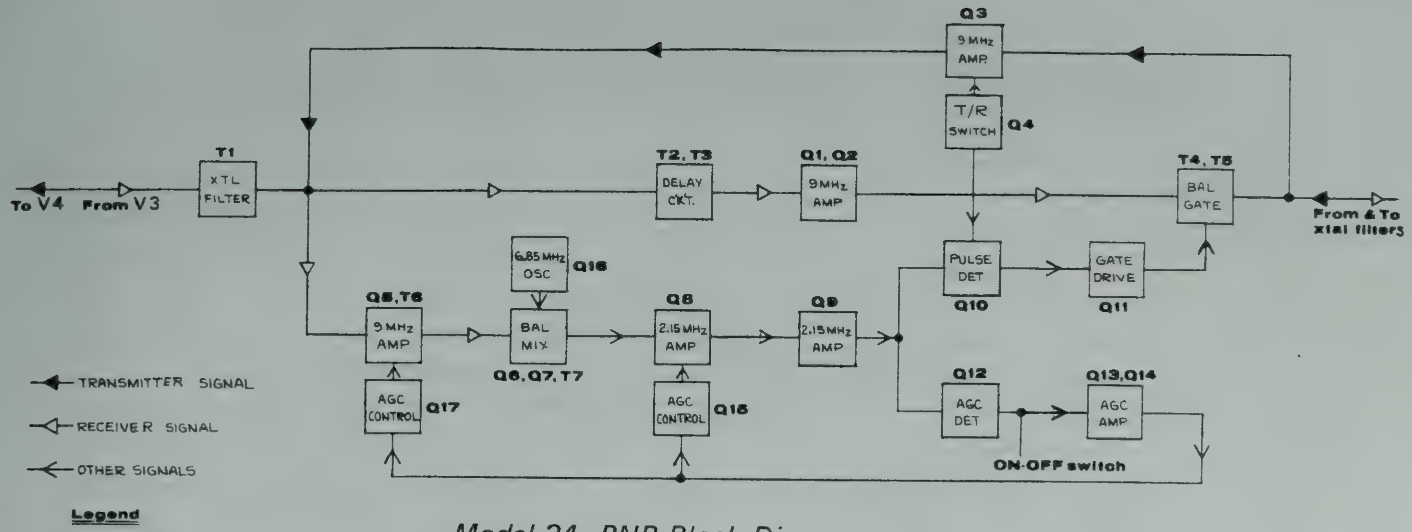
ALIGNMENT.

It is recommended that the TR—4 series transceiver be tuned to 40 meters on receive when the following procedure is performed. Refer to the Model 34—PNB Alignment Locations illustration to locate the alignment points.

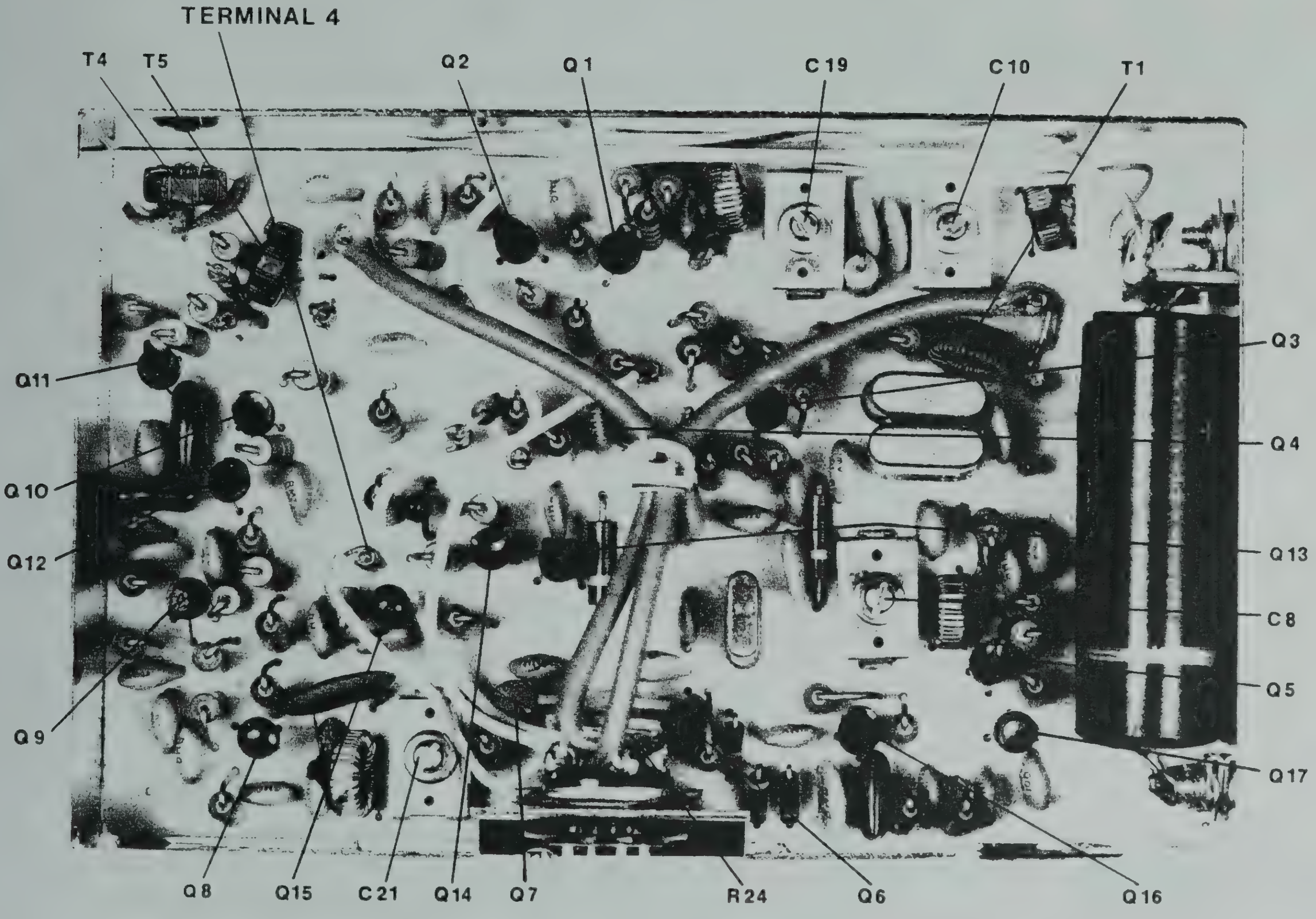
a. With the noise blanker turned on, adjust capacitor trimmers C10 and C19 for maximum S meter reading on calibrator signal.

b. With the calibrator turned off, connect a VTVM (set to measure DC voltage) between terminal 4 of the 34—PNB board and ground (terminal 4 being plus). Adjust R24 for maximum positive voltage.

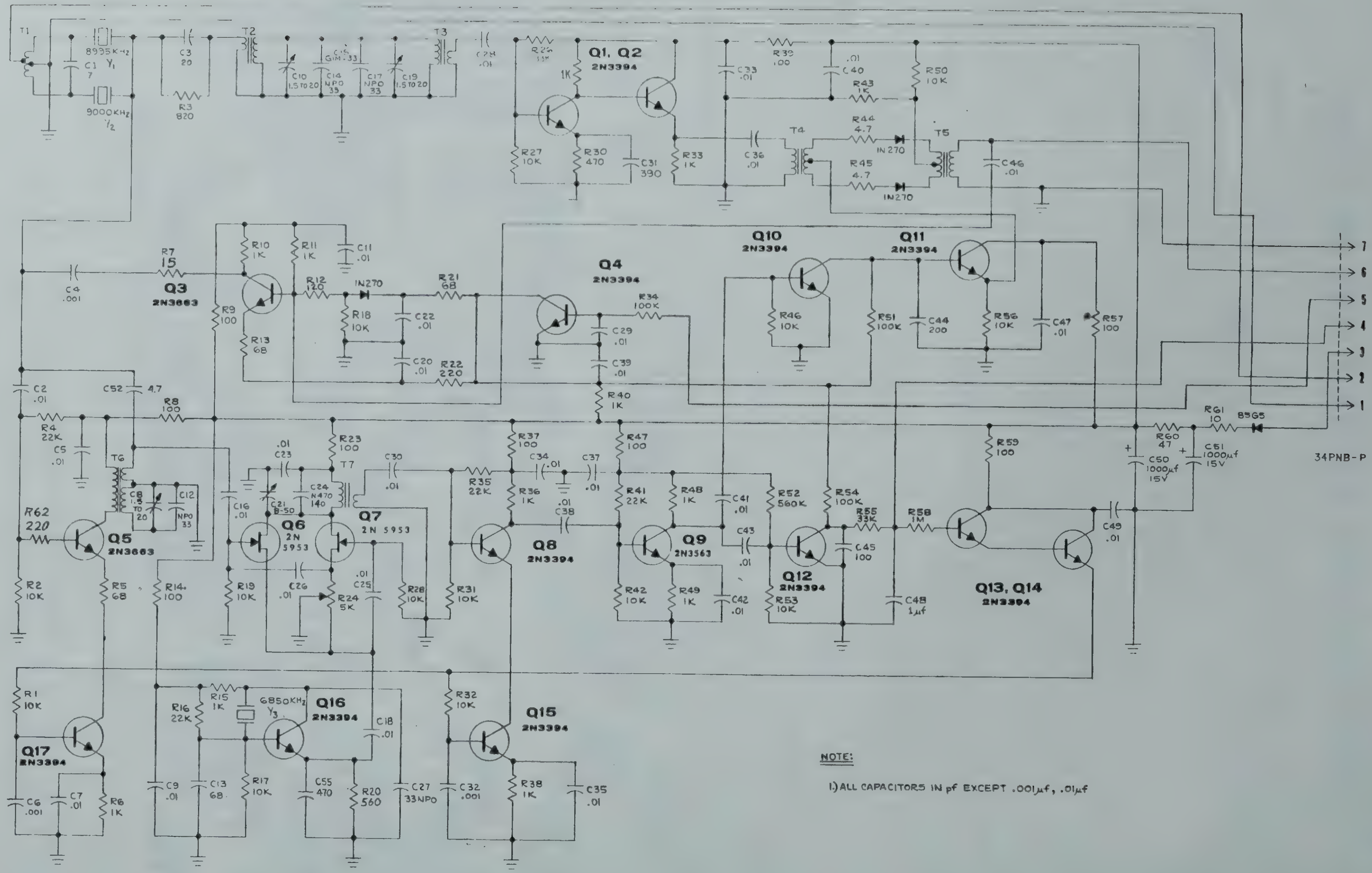
c. Turn the calibrator on and adjust the two remaining trimmers C21 and C8 for minimum positive voltage.


Q3
9 MHz AMP
T/R SWITCH
Q4
T1
XTL FILTER
To V4
From V3
T2, T3
DELAY CKT.
Q1, Q2
9MHz AMP
T4, T5
BAL GATE
From & To xtal filters
6.85 MHz OSC
Q16
PULSE DET
Q10
GATE DRIVE
Q11
Q5, T6
9 MHz AMP
BAL MIX
Q6, Q7, T7
Q8
2.15 MHz AMP
Q9
2.15 MHz AMP
AGC CONTROL
Q17
AGC CONTROL
Q15
Q12
AGC DET
Q13, Q14
AGC AMP
ON-OFF switch
TRANSMITTER SIGNAL
RECEIVER SIGNAL
OTHER SIGNALS
Legend

Model 34–PNB Block Diagram


TERMINAL 4
T4
T5
Q2
Q1
C19
C10
T1
Q3
Q4
Q13
C8
Q5
Q17
Q11
Q10
Q12
Q9
Q8
Q15
C21
Q14
Q7
R24
Q6
Q16

Model 34–PNB Alignment Locations


T1
8995KHz Y1
C1 7
9000KHz Y2
C3 20
R3 820
T2
C10 1.5 TO 20
C15 GIM-33
C14 NPO 33
C17 NPO 33
C19 1.5 TO 20
T3
C28 .01
R26 1M
Q1, Q2 2N3394
1K
R27 10K
R30 470
C31 390
R33 1K
C33 .01
R39 100
C40 .01
R43 1K
R50 10K
C36 .01
T4
R44 4.7
R45 4.7
IN270
T5
C46 .01
R10 1K
R11 1K
C11 .01
R7 15
C4 .001
Q3 2N3663
R9 100
R13 68
R12 120
IN270
R18 10K
C22 .01
C20 .01
R21 68
R22 220
Q4 2N3394
R34 100K
C29 .01
C39 .01
R40 1K
Q10 2N3394
R46 10K
R51 100K
Q11 2N3394
C44 200
R56 10K
C47 .01
R57 100
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
C2 .01
C52 4.7
R4 22K
C5 .01
R8 100
T6
C8 1.5 TO 20
C12 NPO 33
R62 220
Q5 2N3663
R2 10K
R5 68
R14 100
C16 .01
C23 .01
C21 8-50
C24 N470 140
R23 100
T7
Q6 2N 5953
Q7 2N 5953
C26 .01
C25 .01
R24 5K
R19 10K
R28 10K
C30 .01
R35 22K
R31 10K
R37 100
R36 1K
C34 .01
C37 .01
C38 .01
Q8 2N3394
R47 100
R41 22K
R48 1K
Q9 2N3563
R42 10K
R49 1K
C41 .01
C43 .01
C42 .01
R52 560K
R54 100K
R55 33K
C45 100
Q12 2N3394
R53 10K
C48 1µf
R58 1M
R59 100
Q13, Q14 2N3394
C49 .01
R60 47
C50 1000µf 15V
R61 10
85G5
C51 1000µf 15V
34PNB-P
R1 10K
Q17 2N3394
C6 .001
C7 .01
R6 1K
R16 22K
R15 1K
6850KHz Y3
Q16 2N3394
C9 .01
C13 68
R17 10K
C55 470
R20 560
C18 .01
C27 33NPO
R32 10K
Q15 2N3394
C32 .001
R38 1K
C35 .01

NOTE:

1.) ALL CAPACITORS IN pf EXCEPT .001µf, .01µf

Model 34–PNB Schematic Diagram

TR-3/TR-4/TR-4C/TR-4Cw TUNING ALTERATIONS

The tune up procedure for the TR series transceivers must be altered from the instruction manual in order to meet section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concerns the purity of emissions.

Tune up on 80, 40, and 15 meters must be altered by limiting the plate current to 350 milliamperes with the LOAD control. Instead of adjusting the LOAD control for maximum RF output, the LOAD control should be advanced from CCW to the point at which the resonant plate current does not exceed 350 milliamperes. On 80 meters the LOAD control should remain fully CCW.

The tune up procedure in the instruction manual may be followed for operation on 20 and 10 meters.

(CCW -- counterclockwise)

T-4/T-4X/T-4XB/T-4XC TUNING ALTERATIONS

The tune up procedure for the T-4 series transmitters must be altered from the instruction manual in order to meet section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concern the purity of emissions.

Tune up on 160, 80, 40 and 20 meters must be altered by limiting the plate current to 340 milliamperes with the LOAD control. Instead of adjusting the LOAD control for maximum RF output, the LOAD control should be advanced from CCW to the point at which the resonant plate current does not exceed 340 milliamperes.

The tune up procedure in the instruction manual may be followed for operation on 15 and 10 meters.

(CCW -- counterclockwise)

L-4B

The L-4B when tuned in accordance with the instruction manual meets the requirements of section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concern the purity of emissions.

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTION SHEET

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTION SHEET

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.

DRAKE

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

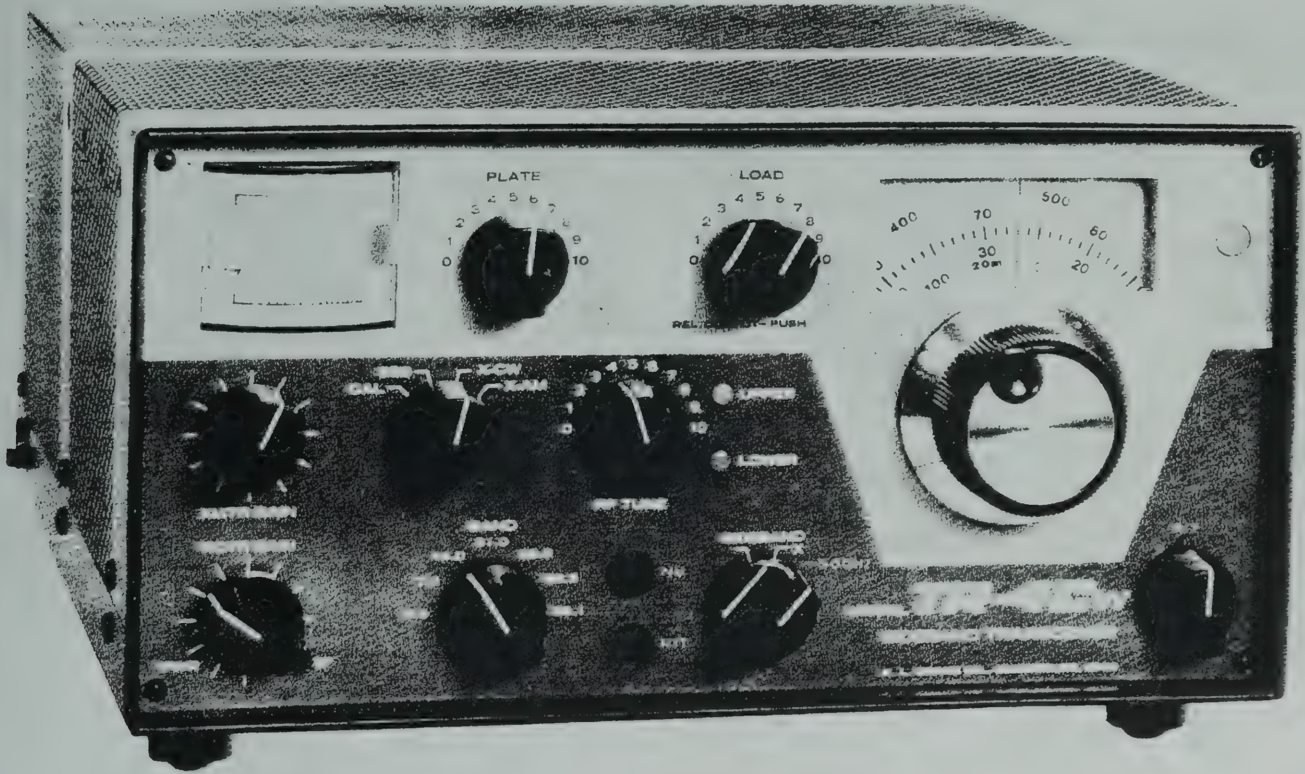


PLATE
LOAD
TR-4C

TR-4Cw

SIDEBAND TRANSCEIVER

R. L. DRAKE COMPANY, MIAMISBURG, OHIO, U.S.A.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Page

CHAPTER I INTRODUCTION 1–1

1–1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION 1–1

1–2. MANUAL COVERAGE 1–1

SPECIFICATIONS 1–3

CHAPTER II INSTALLATION 2–1

2–1. UNPACKING 2–1

2–2. LOCATION 2–1

2–3. MOBILE INSTALLATION 2–1

2–4. POWER REQUIREMENTS 2–1

2–5. MOUNTING 2–1

2–6. ANTENNA 2–1

2–7. SPEAKER 2–1

2–8. MICROPHONE 2–1

2–9. STATIONARY INSTALLATION 2–2

2–10. POWER REQUIREMENTS 2–2

2–11. VIEWING ANGLE 2–2

2–12. ACCESSORIES 2–2

CHAPTER III OPERATION 3–1

3–1. GENERAL 3–1

3–2. MODE SWITCH 3–1

3–3. BLANKER SWITCH 3–1

3–4. VFO DIAL 3–1

3–5. TUNING PROCEDURE 3–1

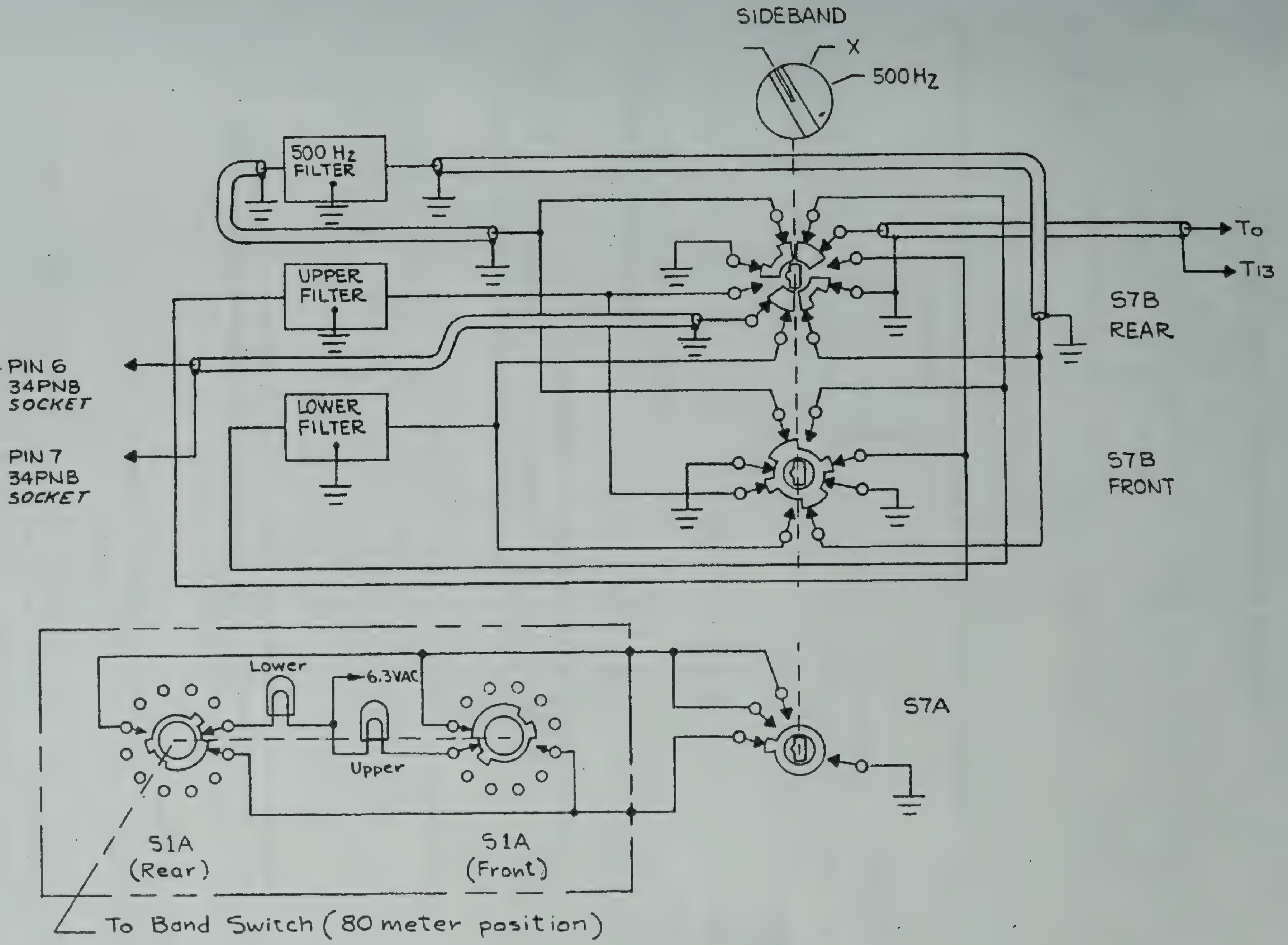
3–6. BIAS ADJUSTMENT 3–1

FRONT PANEL CONTROLS 3–3

OTHER CONTROLS 3–4

3–7. TUNE UP 3–5

3–8. SSB OPERATION 3–5


SIDEBAND
X
500 Hz
500 Hz FILTER
UPPER FILTER
LOWER FILTER
PIN 6 34PNB SOCKET
PIN 7 34PNB SOCKET
To
T13
S7B REAR
S7B FRONT
S7A
Lower
6.3VAC
Upper
S1A (Rear)
S1A (Front)
To Band Switch (80 meter position)

TR-4Cw Schematic Diagram

DRAKE

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

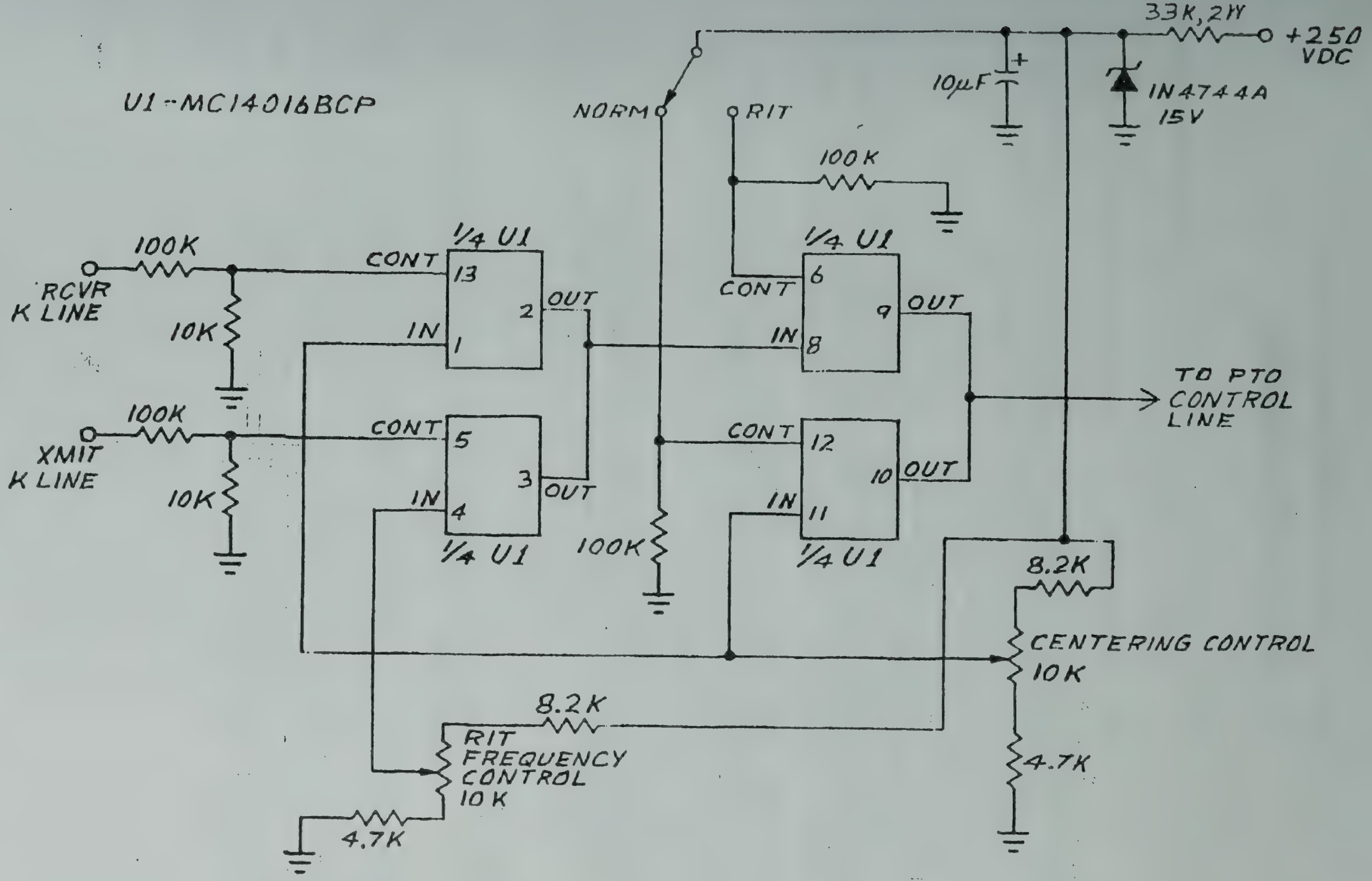
The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.


U1-MC14016BCP
RCVR K LINE
XMIT K LINE
100K
10K
100K
10K
CONT
IN
1/4 U1
13
1
2
OUT
CONT
IN
5
4
3
OUT
1/4 U1
NORM
RIT
100K
100K
1/4 U1
CONT
IN
6
8
9
OUT
CONT
IN
12
11
10
OUT
1/4 U1
10μF
+
IN4744A
15V
33K, 2W
+250 VDC
TO PTO CONTROL LINE
8.2K
CENTERING CONTROL 10K
4.7K
8.2K
RIT FREQUENCY CONTROL 10K
4.7K

RIT Schematic Diagram

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTIONS

COVERING MODELS WITH RIT

The addition of Receiver Incremental Tuning to the TR-4Cw allows the receive frequency to be varied approximately ±3 kHz (2 kHz min., 4 kHz max.) relative to the indicated dial frequency.

OPERATION

The RIT function is activated by depressing the RIT push button switch. When disabled, the RIT frequency control has no effect, and the received frequency is as indicated on the dial. The TR-4Cw transmit frequency is always as indicated on the dial.

If equipped with the accessory 34-PNB Noise Blanker, the Noise Blanker is activated by depressing the NB push button switch. For further information regarding the operation of the Noise Blanker, refer to section 3-3.

Use of RIT can be very useful for both CW and SSB operation. When working a station who is drifting in frequency, the drift can be compensated for without "walking" across the band.

ZERO ADJUSTMENT

The RIT printed circuit board is located on the partition enclosing the PA compartment on the bottom of the transceiver.

The trim pot located on this board is used to "center" the front panel RIT frequency control. With the front panel frequency control set at 12 o'clock, tune in the calibrator signal at any convenient 100 kHz point until a beat note is heard. The trim pot should be adjusted until there is little or no change in the beat note frequency when turning the RIT control on and off via the RIT push button. This adjustment is factory set, and centering should be within 200-300 Hz.

CHAPTER I
INTRODUCTION

1-1. GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

The TR--4C is a 300 Watt HF single sideband transceiver which covers the 80 through 10 meter amateur bands. AM and CW modes are also included. The TR--4C requires either an R. L. Drake AC–4, 120 V AC power supply, or an R. L. Drake DC–4, 12 V DC power supply. The TR--4C features a high-stability linear permeability tuned VFO and two 8 pole crystal lattice filters for sideband selection. Available accessories include an RV--4C Remote VFO, a matching MS--4 Speaker, an FF-1 Fixed Frequency Adapter, a 34--PNB Noise Blanker, an MC–4 Mobile Console, and a TR–4C VHF Modification Kit.

1-2. MANUAL COVERAGE.

This manual provides sufficient information for operation of the TR--4C Transceiver by a licensed operator and for repair and maintenance by an experienced electronics technician. Chapter II provides installation instructions and illustrates interconnection with accessories. Chapter III describes operation procedures. Chapter IV presents theory of operation supported by a block diagram. Chapter V provides maintenance instructions and parts ordering information.

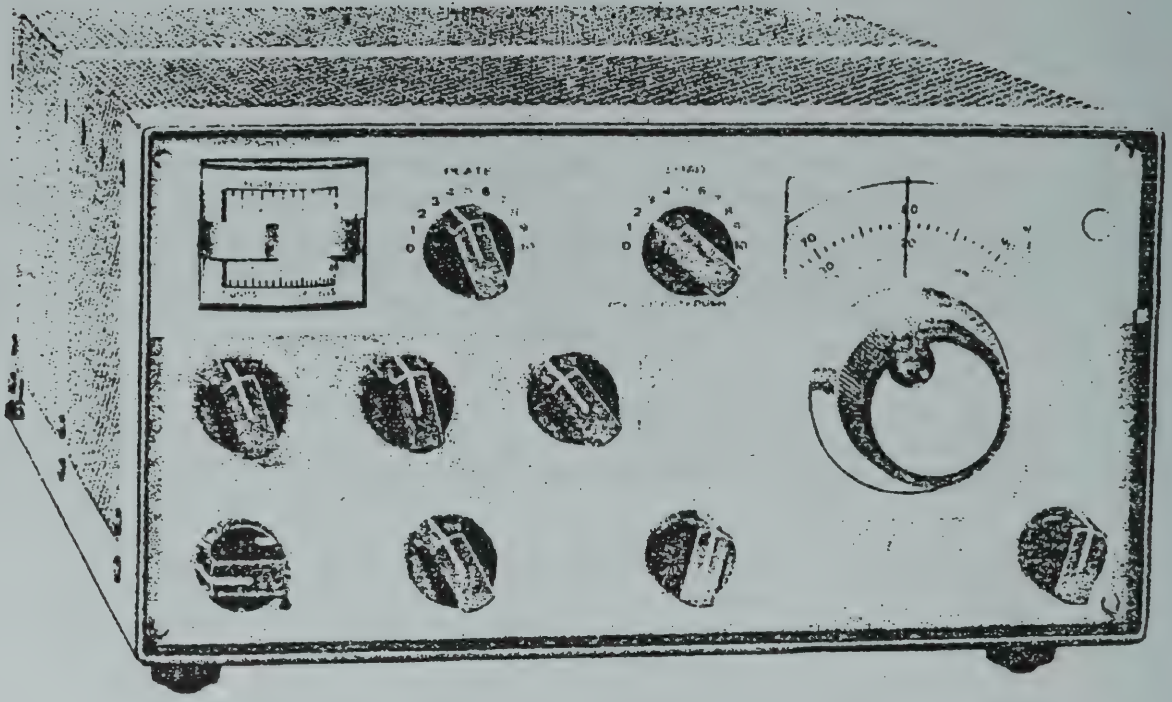


Figure 1–1. TR–4C Sideband Transceiver

SPECIFICATIONS

GENERAL:

Frequency Coverage:	3.5 to 4.1 MHz, 7.0 to 7.6 MHz, 13.9 to 14.5 MHz, 21.0 to 21.6 MHz and 28.5 to 29.1 MHz; accessory crystals are available for the 28.0 to 28.6 MHz and 29.1 to 29.7 MHz segments of the 10 meter band.
Mode of Operation:	Lower Sideband, Upper Sideband, AM and CW.
Frequency Stability:	Total drift is less than 100 Hz after warm up. Total frequency change is less than 100 Hz for a ± 10% line voltage change.
Power Supply Requirements:	+ 650 Volts DC at 300 mA average and 500 mA maximum with 10% regulation from 100 to 500 mA and a maximum ripple 1%. + 250 Volts DC at 200 mA with 10% regulation from 170 mA to 200 mA. This includes the effect of the 650 Volt supply change if both voltages are obtained from the same transformer. Maximum ripple must be less than 1/4%. –45 to –65 Volts DC adjustable filtered bias into 33 K Ohm load. 12.6 Volts AC or DC at 5.5 Amperes.
Antenna Impedance:	Nominal 52 Ohms (VSWR less than 2:1).
Dial Calibration:	Better than ± 1 kHz when calibrated at the nearest 100 kHz calibration point.
Dimensions:	5.5 in. High x 10.75 in. Wide x 14.375 in. Deep. 13.97 cm. High x 27.31 cm. Wide x 36.51 cm. Deep.
Weight:	16 lbs. (7.26 kg.)

RECEIVER:

Sensitivity:	Less than 0.5 uV for 10 dB $\frac{S + N}{N}$
AGC:	Less than 3 dB variation for 60 dB change in input signal.
Selectivity:	2.1 kHz at –6 dB and 3.4 kHz at –60 dB.
IF Frequency:	9 MHz.
Audio Output:	3 Watts with less than 10% distortion.
Output Impedance:	4 Ohms.

TRANSMITTER:

Power Input:	300 Watts PEP SSB, 260 Watts CW and 260 Watts PEP AM.
Output Impedance:	Nominal 52 Ohms.
Average Distortion Products:	The odd order products are down 30 dB below PEP.
Microphone Input:	High Impedance.

CHAPTER II
INSTALLATION

2-1. UNPACKING.

Carefully remove the unit from the shipping carton and examine it for evidence of damage. If any damage is discovered, immediately notify the transportation company that delivered the unit. Be sure to keep the shipping carton and packing material as the transportation company will want to examine them if there is a damage claim. Keep the carton and packing material even if no shipping damage occurs. Having the original carton available makes packing the unit much easier if it should ever be necessary to store it or return it to the factory for service.

NOTE

> Fill out the enclosed registration card and return it to the factory immediately to insure registration and validation of the warranty.

2-2. LOCATION.

The location of the TR–4C is not critical. However, care should be taken to insure that adequate clearance is provided to insure free circulation of air around the unit and to allow access to the side controls and connectors. Do not cover the top of the cabinet with books, papers or other equipment as overheating may result.

2-3. MOBILE INSTALLATION.

2-4. POWER REQUIREMENTS. Refer to figure 2-2 for rear chassis connector identification. The TR–4C may be installed in any vehicle with a 12 volt dc negative ground system. An R. L. Drake Model DC–4 Power Supply is required for a mobile installation. The recommended location for the DC–4 is on the passenger side of the firewall. Refer to figure 2-3 for the electrical connections required.

2-5. MOUNTING. Mount the TR–4C in a convenient location below the dash with an R. L. Drake Model MMK–3 Mobile Mounting Kit. Refer to figure 2-4 for various mounting options. Be sure to allow adequate clearance for air circulation and cable connections. Turn the TR–4C off. Connect the power cable between the TR–4C and the DC–4. Coil up any excess cable and tape it in place out of sight. Connect the black wire from the power supply to a convenient ground. Route the red wire from the power supply through the firewall and connect it to the positive battery terminal or the starter solenoid. The fuse holder should be installed as close to the solenoid as possible. Shorten both of these wires as much as possible.

2-6. ANTENNA. Install a mobile antenna as recommended by the antenna manufacturer. Connect a coaxial cable from the antenna to the SO–239 connector at the rear of the TR–4C.

2-7. SPEAKER. *DO NOT* connect the TR–4C to the speaker of the car radio. Install a separate speaker for use with the TR–4C. The R. L. Drake Model MC–4 Mobile Console is recommended for this type of installation. It includes a speaker and a wattmeter and is designed to mount over or under the TR–4C.

2-8. MICROPHONE. Use a microphone with a flat frequency response. The microphone should have a cardioid pattern to reduce pickup from the back and sides. Connect the microphone as illustrated in figure 2-1 to insure proper performance.

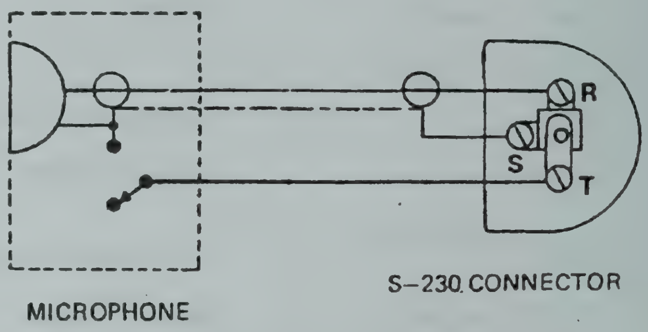


Figure 2–1. Microphone Connections

2-9. STATIONARY INSTALLATION.

2-10. POWER REQUIREMENTS. An R. L. Drake Model AC–4 Power Supply rated at 120 volts ac, 50/60 Hz, is required for stationary installations. The AC–4 is designed to fit inside the MS–4 speaker cabinet.

2-11. VIEWING ANGLE. Refer to figure 2-5 for illustrations of viewing angle options. See Chapter V for bottom cover removal.

2-12. ACCESSORIES. Refer to figures 2-6 through 2-9 for the electrical connections required to operate the TR–4C with the various recommended accessories.

NOTE

If the old RV–3 is to be used it must be modified as follows: Install a 22 K, 2 Watt resistor from pin 1 of the tube (0A2) to the terminal of the FUNCTION switch to which the orange wire is attached.

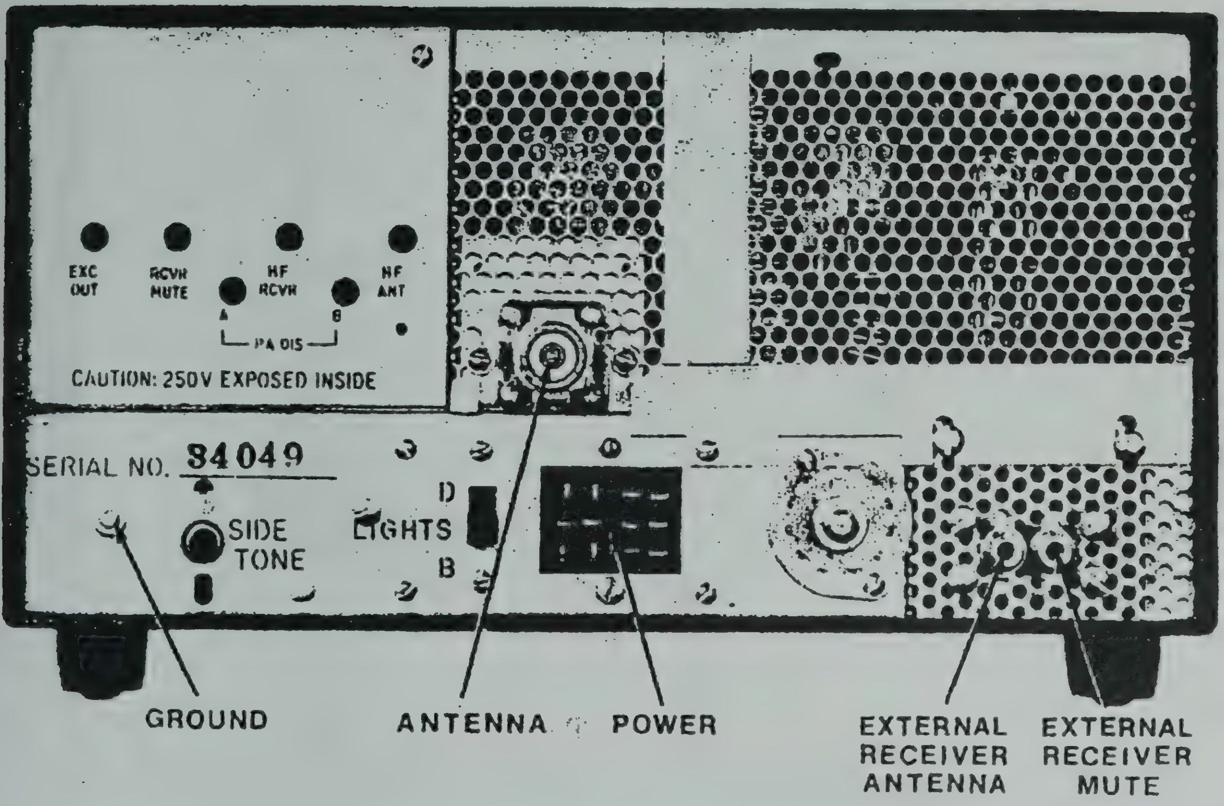

EXC OUT
RCVR MUTE
HF RCVR
HF ANT
A
B
PA DIS
CAUTION: 250V EXPOSED INSIDE
SERIAL NO. 34049
SIDE TONE
D
LIGHTS
B
GROUND
ANTENNA
POWER
EXTERNAL RECEIVER ANTENNA
EXTERNAL RECEIVER MUTE

Figure 2–2. Rear Chassis Connectors

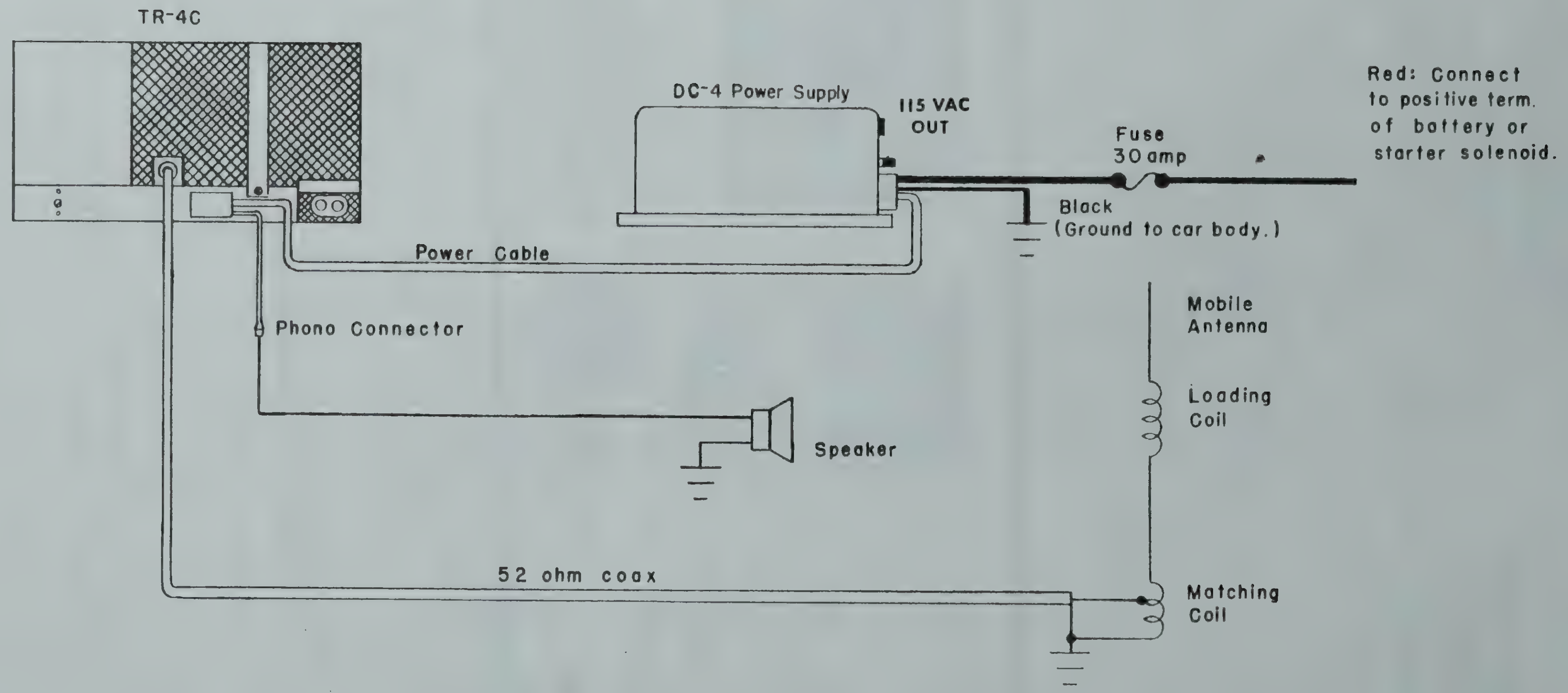
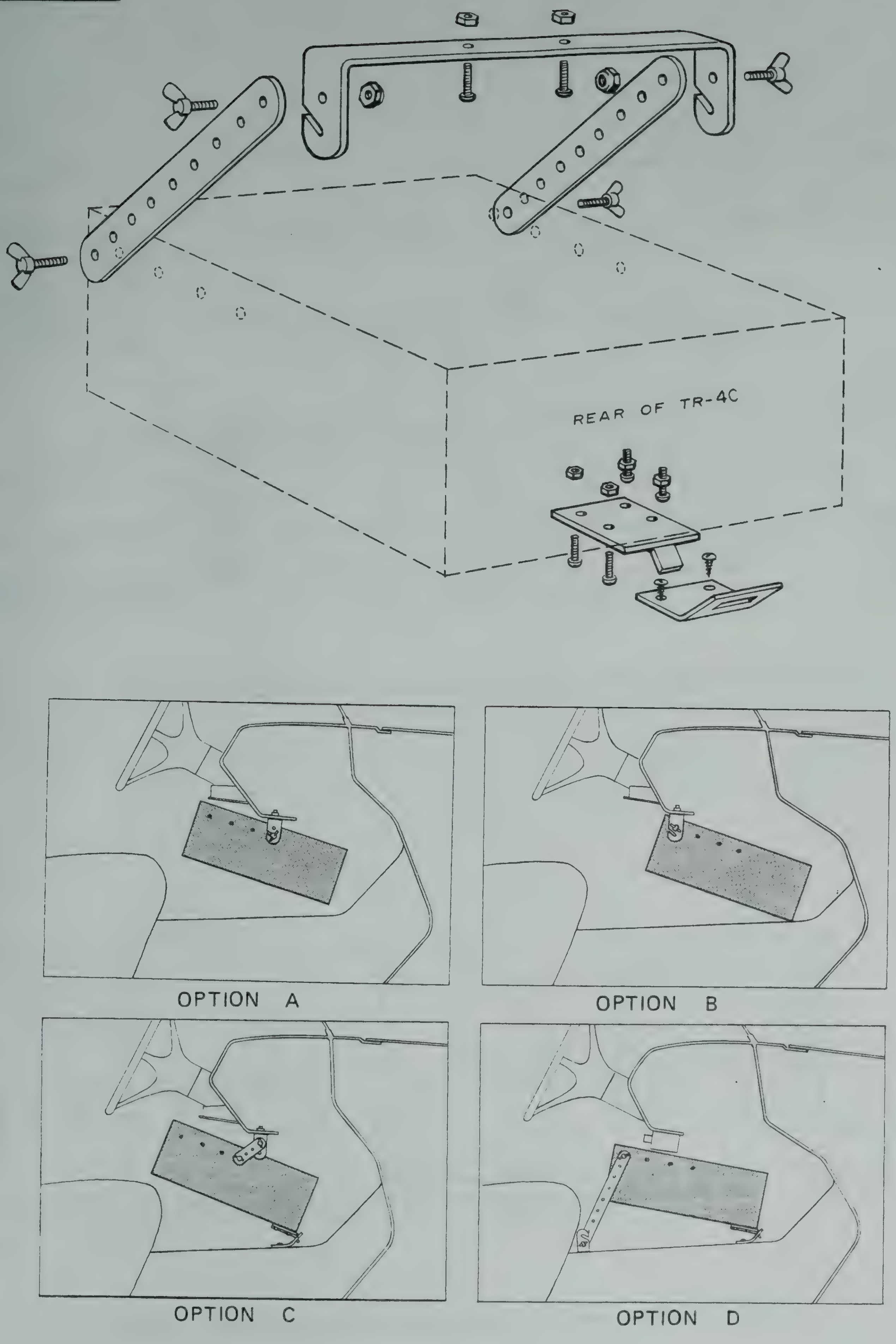

TR-4C
DC-4 Power Supply
115 VAC OUT
Fuse 30 amp
Red: Connect to positive term. of battery or starter solenoid.
Black (Ground to car body.)
Power Cable
Phono Connector
Speaker
Mobile Antenna
Loading Coil
52 ohm coax
Matching Coil

Figure 2–3. Electrical Connections Required for Mobile Installation


REAR OF TR-4C

OPTION A

OPTION B

OPTION C

OPTION D

Figure 2–4. Mobile Installation Mounting Options

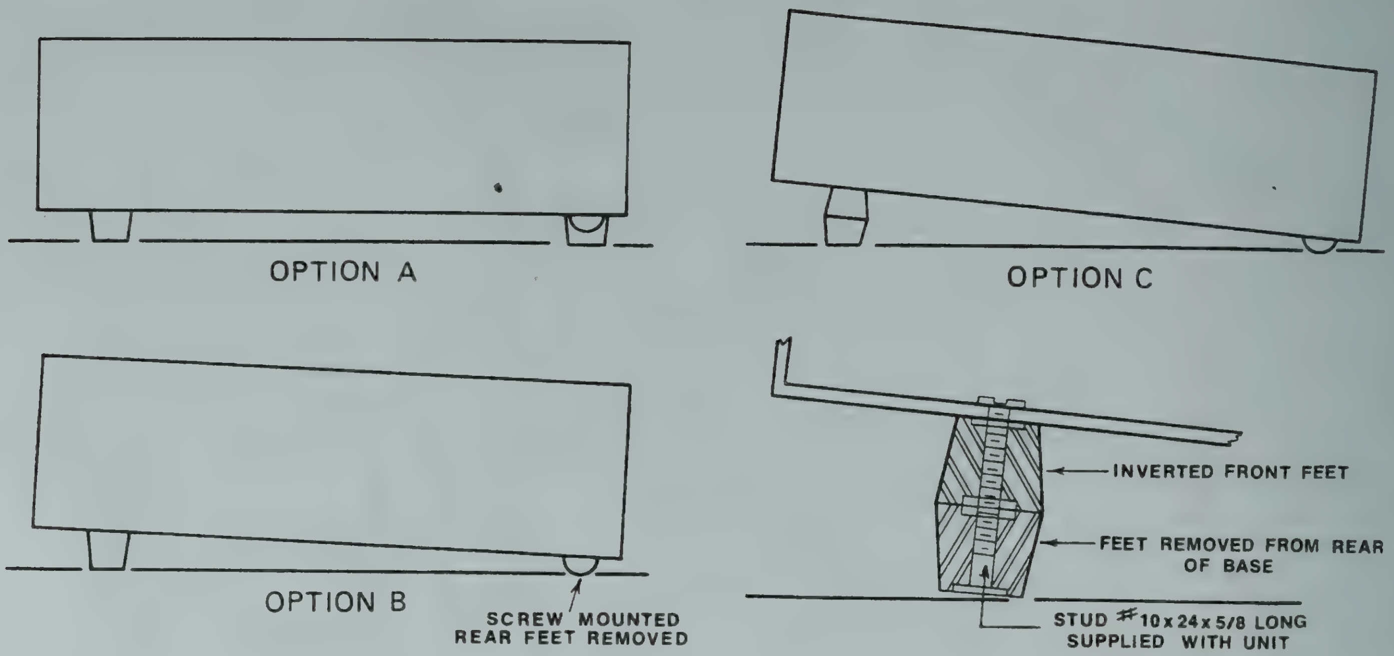

OPTION A
OPTION C
OPTION B
SCREW MOUNTED REAR FEET REMOVED
INVERTED FRONT FEET
FEET REMOVED FROM REAR OF BASE
STUD #10 x 24 x 5/8 LONG SUPPLIED WITH UNIT

Figure 2–5. Viewing Angle Options in a Stationary Installation

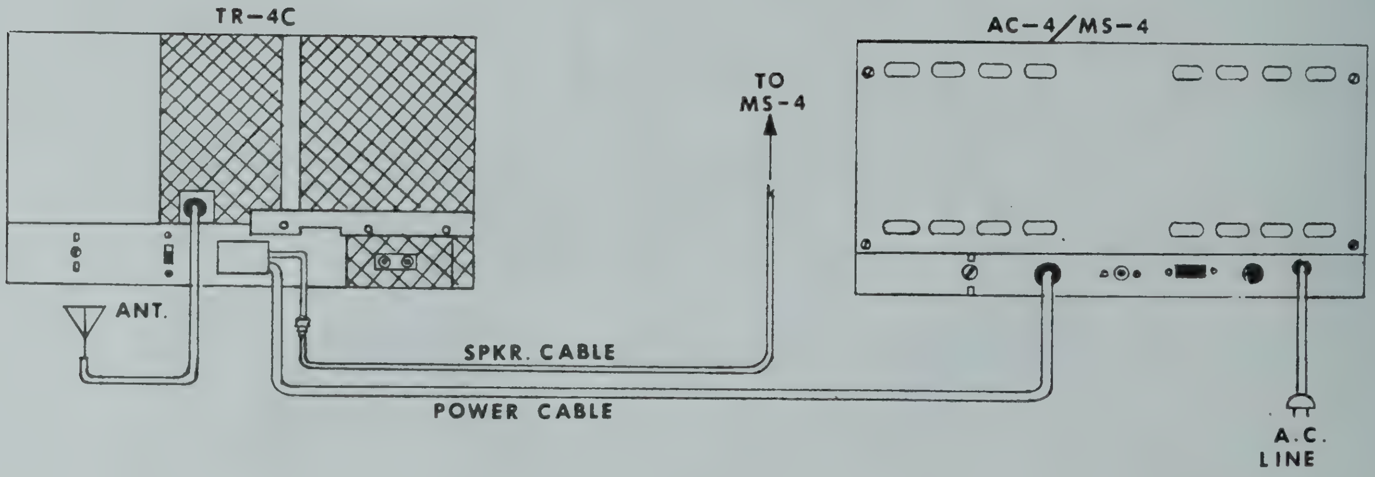

TR–4C
AC–4/MS–4
TO MS-4
ANT.
SPKR. CABLE
POWER CABLE
A.C. LINE

Figure 2–6. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply and MS–4 Speaker

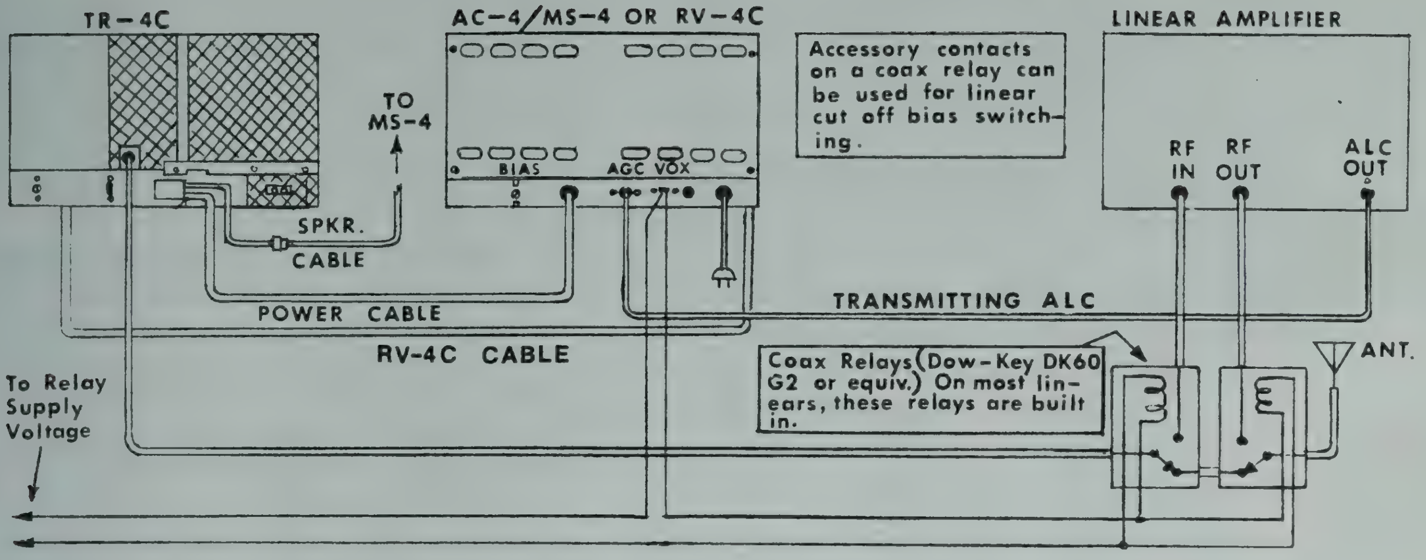

TR-4C
AC-4/MS-4 OR RV-4C
Accessory contacts on a coax relay can be used for linear cut off bias switching.
LINEAR AMPLIFIER
TO MS-4
BIAS
AGC
VOX
RF IN
RF OUT
ALC OUT
SPKR. CABLE
POWER CABLE
TRANSMITTING ALC
RV-4C CABLE
Coax Relays (Dow-Key DK60 G2 or equiv.) On most linears, these relays are built in.
ANT.
To Relay Supply Voltage

Figure 2–7. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply, RV–4C Remote VFO and a Linear Amplifier

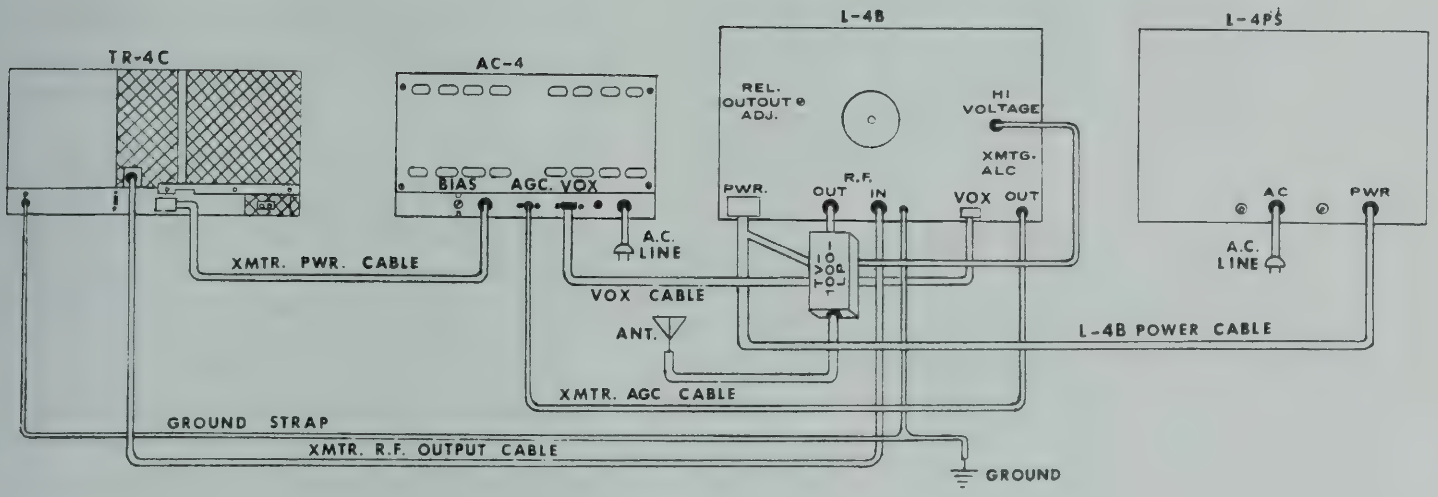
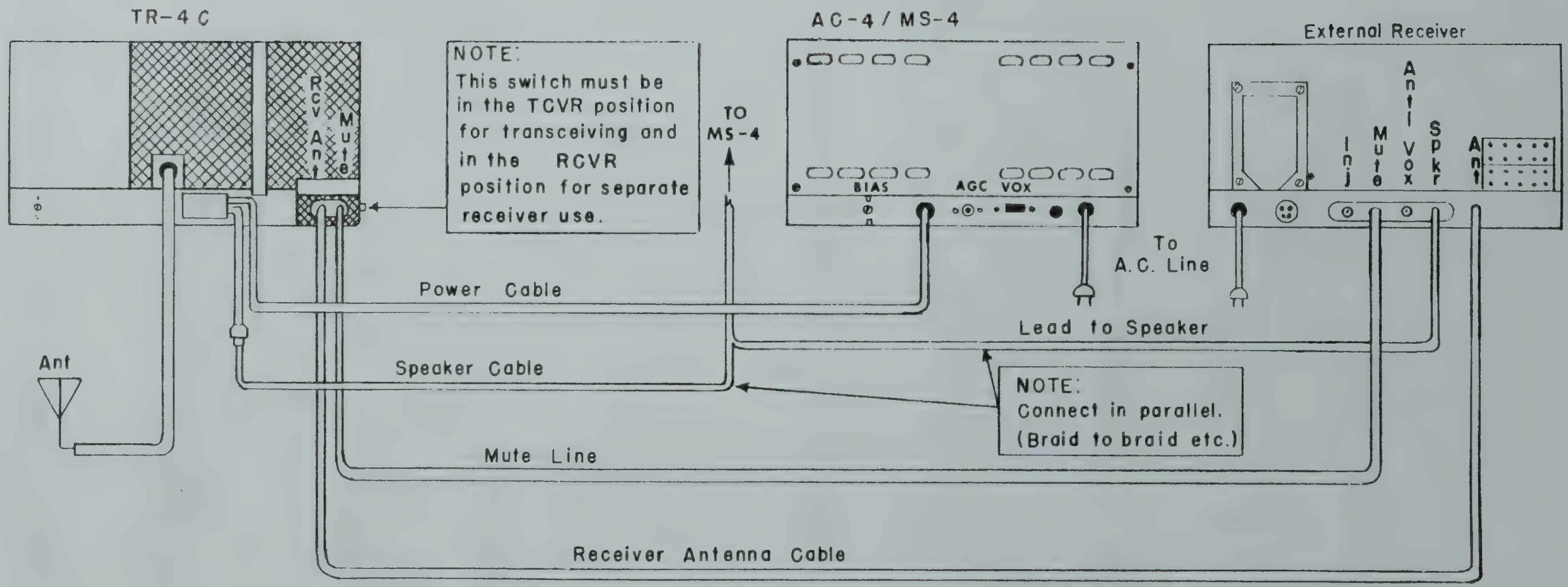

TR-4C
AC-4
L-4B
L-4PS
REL. OUTOUT ADJ.
HI VOLTAGE
XMTG. ALC
PWR.
R.F.
OUT
IN
VOX
OUT
BIAS
AGC.
VOX
A.C. LINE
AC
PWR
A.C. LINE
XMTR. PWR. CABLE
VOX CABLE
ANT.
L-4B POWER CABLE
XMTR. AGC CABLE
GROUND STRAP
XMTR. R.F. OUTPUT CABLE
GROUND

Figure 2–8. Connecting the AC–4 Power Supply and the L–4B Linear Amplifier


TR-4 C
Rcv Ant
Mute
Ant
TO MS-4
AC-4 / MS-4
BIAS
AGC
VOX
To A.C. Line
External Receiver
Inj
Mute
Anti Vox
Spkr
Ant
Power Cable
Lead to Speaker
Speaker Cable
Mute Line
Receiver Antenna Cable

NOTE:
This switch must be in the TCVR position for transceiving and in the RCVR position for separate receiver use.

NOTE:
Connect in parallel.
(Braid to braid etc.)

Figure 2–9. Connecting an External Receiver

CHAPTER III
OPERATION

3-1. GENERAL.

Figure 3-1 illustrates and describes all front panel controls and indicators on the TR–4C Transceiver. Controls and connectors located on the rear and sides of the unit are described under "other controls" below. Rear chassis connectors are identified in figure 2-2.

3-2. MODE SWITCH. In the SSB position, the receiver portion functions until the transmitter is energized either by talking into the microphone or actuating the microphone push-to-talk switch. The transmitter then emits an upper or lower sideband signal depending on the setting of the SIDEBAND switch. In the X-CW position, the receiver portion functions until the key is closed. The TR–4C then goes into the transmit mode, a CW sidetone is energized and the carrier is shifted approximately 1 kHz from the received frequency. The unit will remain in transmit during CW keying and will return to receive when keying is stopped briefly. NOTE: The SIDEBAND switch must be in the X position when the Mode switch is on X-CW or X-AM. It should also be noted that if the relays fail to close occasionally when the key is used, advance the VOX gain (screwdriver adjust on the right side of the chassis) until positive relay action is obtained. In the X-AM position, a controlled carrier screen modulator is incorporated for AM transmission and a diode detector is used for AM reception. Transmit and receive switching is accomplished by VOX or push-to-talk as on SSB.

3-3. BLANKER SWITCH. The noise blanker may be left on except when there is a strong signal within 5 kHz of the received signal. A strong signal which falls within the 10 kHz wide crystal filter in the noise blanker, and outside the 2.1 kHz crystal filter in the TR–4C, will operate the noise blanker gate circuit causing distortion products. This limitation in the noise blanker is caused by the necessity of having a bandwidth in the blanker wide enough to minimize stretching of noise pulses before blanking. Usually this limitation is no problem under normal operating conditions.

3-4. VFO DIAL. This dial consists of 2 transparent discs which display concentric scales and which rotate at different speeds. There are 2 scales on each disc. The upper scale on each disc is used for all bands except 20 meters where the lower scale is used. Zero to 100 kHz is indicated on one disc and hundreds of kHz is indicated on the other. The frequency of the operating signal is the sum of the frequencies indicated by the BAND switch and the VFO dial, for example:

BAND switch frequency	7.000 MHz
100 kHz dial	.200
1 kHz dial	.072
Operating frequency	7.272 MHz

This dial may be calibrated over a short range by the following procedure:

a. Set the Mode switch to CAL.

b. Tune the TR–4C to zero beat with the nearest 100 kHz calibrator signal.

c. Hold the tuning knob stationary and rotate the knob skirt until the dial displays the correct frequency.

3-5. TUNING PROCEDURE.

CAUTION

Under no circumstances should operation of the TR–4C be attempted until it is connected to a proper antenna or a dummy load. Always allow a two minute warm up period after the TR-4C is turned on before transmitting.

3-6. BIAS ADJUSTMENT. Before any type of operation is attempted, it will be necessary to set the PA bias to the correct value. Proceed as follows:

a. Turn on the TR–4C with the RCVR GAIN control.

b. Rotate the XMTR GAIN control fully counterclockwise.

(continued on page 3–5)

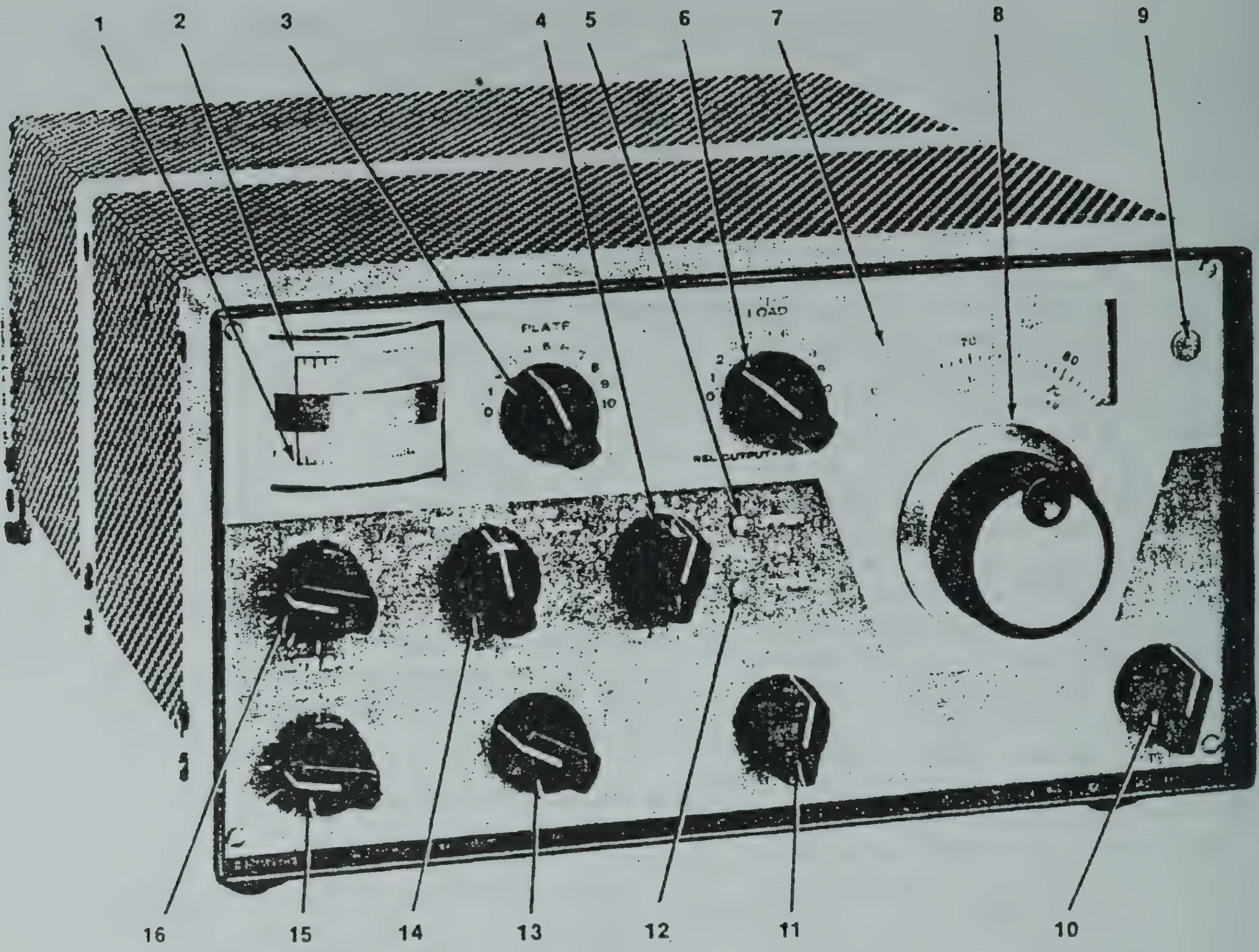

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
PLATE
LOAD
REL OUTPUT
16
15
14
13
12
11
10

Figure 3–1. Front Panel Controls

FRONT PANEL CONTROLS

1. S meter: Indicates relative level of received signals. Indicates transmitter AGC when transmitting.
2. Plate meter: Indicates plate current in the final amplifier. Indicates relative RF power when LOAD control (6) is pushed in.
3. PLATE control: Tunes power amplifier pi-network circuit for resonance.
4. RF TUNE control: Peak tunes the receiver RF amplifier, the transmitter driver grid and plate tuned circuits.
5. UPPER sideband indicator lamp: Glows when upper sideband is selected.
6. LOAD control: Matches the TR–4C to the impedance of the antenna. Push in to display relative RF power on plate meter (2).
7. VFO dial: Displays portion of operating frequency from zero to 600 kHz. Reading must be added to BAND switch frequency setting for complete operating frequency.
8. VFO control: Adjusts frequency setting of dial (7).
9. VFO indicator lamp: Glows only when TR–4C VFO is operating.
10. BLANKER switch: Provides on/off control for R. L. Drake's Model 34–PNB Noise Blanker (an accessory).
11. SIDEBAND switch: Selects upper or lower sideband and lights appropriate indicator lamp (5 or 12).
12. LOWER sideband indicator lamp: Glows when lower sideband is selected.
13. BAND switch: Selects the desired amateur band.
14. Mode switch: Selects the desired mode of operation. In CAL position, it switches on the 100 kHz crystal calibrator (operable in transmit or receiver mode).
15. RCVR GAIN control: Dual control. Knob controls the receiver audio level, and provides a power on/off control at the extreme counterclockwise position. Lever controls the maximum RF gain of the receiver.
16. XMTR GAIN control: Adjusts the microphone gain on AM and SSB. In CW mode it adjusts the RF drive.

OTHER CONTROLS

Right Side (not illustrated).

PHONE jack: Provides a connection for headphones or external speaker.

MIC jack: Provides a connection for microphone. Mates with connector S-230 furnished with the TR—4C.

VOX control: Adjusts the gain of the VOX amplifier and the antenna relay release time on CW.

ANTIVOX control: Adjusts the gain of the ANTIVOX amplifier.

ZERO control: Adjusts the no-signal display of the S meter to S1.

KEY jack: Provides a connection for CW key. With key connected, transmitter is disabled for all modes of operation and receiver is disabled for AM unless the key is closed.

Left Side (not illustrated).

RCVR/TCVR switch: Selects either the TR—4C Receiver or external receiver.

Rear Chassis (Refer to figure 2-2).

Ground terminal: Provides a connection for earth ground.

SIDE TONE control: Adjusts the level of the CW sidetone with respect to the received signal. For no sidetone, rotate fully counterclockwise.

LIGHTS switch: Changes intensity of dial lamps to dim (D) or bright (B).

Antenna connector: Provides a connection for the station antenna (SO-239).

Power connector: Provides a connection for either AC—4 or DC—4 Power Supply.

External Receiver Antenna jack: Provides a connection for an external receiver.

External Receiver Mute jack: Provides a connection for muting an external receiver. It may be used with any receiver which requires a DC path to ground for receiving and an open circuit for muting. All R. L. Drake receivers have this feature.

NOTE

Rear chassis markings *above* the CAUTION notice identify external cable connectors when TR--4C VHF Modification Kit is used.

c. Turn the SIDEBAND switch to its counterclockwise position.
d. Turn the Mode switch to X-CW.
e. Adjust the Power Supply (AC–4 or DC–4) bias control for a reading of 0.1 Amperes on the plate current meter.

3-7. TUNE UP. Do not allow plate current to exceed 0.1 Amperes for more than 6 seconds with the PLATE control not tuned for minimum plate current or maximum RF output.

> CAUTION
>
> Failure to observe the warning above will result in rapid final amplifier tube deterioration due to excessive plate dissipation.

The final amplifier pi-network will match a nominal 50 ohm load. The VSWR may be as high as 2:1 on all bands except 80 meters where a lower VSWR may be required. On 80 meters an external antenna matching network may be required.

Preset the controls as follows:

a. Select the desired band with the BAND switch.
b. Select the desired operating frequency with the VFO tuning knob.
c. Rotate the XMTR GAIN control full counterclockwise.
d. Rotate the LOAD control full counterclockwise.
e. Place the SIDEBAND control in the X position.
f. Place the Mode switch in the SSB position.
g. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum noise or signal as indicated by the S meter.

Rotate the Mode switch to the X-CW position and advance the XMTR GAIN control until the plate current meter moves up scale slightly. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum plate current and quickly tune the PLATE control for a dip in plate current. After the dip is found, rotate the XMTR GAIN control clockwise until plate current no longer increases.

Depress the LOAD control and alternately adjust the PLATE and LOAD controls in small increments for maximum RF output. Release the LOAD control and adjust the PLATE control for minimum plate current. At this point the plate meter should indicate a plate current between 0.380 and 0.500 Amperes. The reading will depend on the line voltage, antenna match, tube condition, etc. Increasing the setting of the LOAD control beyond the point at which maximum RF output occurs will result in excessive plate dissipation. It should not be necessary to advance the LOAD control beyond 4.5 to obtain maximum RF output. Further advancement indicates that the VSWR of the antenna system is too high and leaving the control set beyond this point is likely to result in excessive harmonic radiation. The above procedure should be completed as quickly as possible and the Mode switch should be returned to the SSB position.

When the Mode switch is in the X-CW position, the screen voltage on the final amplifier tubes is reduced to prevent overheating. When the switch is in the SSB position, this voltage is increased so that an input power of 300 watts can be obtained.

3-8. SSB OPERATION.

In the following discussion, it is assumed that the TR–4C has already been tuned up on the desired band as described in paragraph 3-7. Preset the controls as follows:

SIDEBAND	–On desired sideband as shown by indicator lights.
Mode	–On SSB.
XMTR GAIN	--Fully counterclockwise.
RF gain (lever)	–Fully clockwise.
RCVR GAIN (knob)	–Fully counterclockwise (do not turn off power).
VOX gain	–Fully clockwise.
ANTIVOX	–Fully counterclockwise.

While talking into the microphone in a normal voice, increase the XMTR GAIN control until the S meter starts kicking up scale above its resting value. With no modulation, the S meter will rest up scale on transmit. This indicates that the transmitter AGC is starting to operate and the transmitter has maximum output. Continue talking and reduce the VOX gain until a point is reached where further reduction results in a too frequent relay drop out. Increase the AF GAIN until received signals are of the desired level. This may cause the transceiver to cycle back and forth between transmit and receive. Adjust the ANTIVOX control until the cycling stops. If the push-to-talk switch on the microphone is properly connected as described under Installa-

tion, it may be depressed at any time, thus overriding the VOX system. If VOX operation is not desired, turn the VOX gain control fully counterclockwise.

On SSB, the TR–4C transmits on exactly the same frequency on which it receives. Therefore, be sure that you have the signals tuned in so that the voices sound normal before you answer another station's CQ, or break another QSO. Otherwise, you will not be transmitting exactly on frequency. If a key is used, it must either be closed or unplugged from the KEY jack for SSB and AM operation.

3-9. CW OPERATION.

To operate CW, connect a key to the KEY jack. If an electronic keyer is used, connect it for grid block keying. Leave the key in the open condition. The TR–4C uses shifted carrier CW. With this system, it is possible to transmit approximately on the received station's frequency without being zero beat while receiving. The transmitter BFO is shifted from the received signal frequency by approximately 1 kHz. The VFO dial reads the correct frequency of a received signal when the signal is tuned for zero beat.

To receive CW signals, place the Mode switch in the X-CW position and the SIDEBAND switch in the X position. Tune in a CW signal for an audio pitch of about 1 kHz and adjust the audio gain control knob for a normal listening level.

To transmit, depress the key, and adjust the XMTR GAIN control until it is just below the point at which plate current no longer increases. Do not advance it beyond this point. Advance the SIDETONE control on the rear of the chassis until the sidetone reaches the desired volume. Adjusting the RCVR GAIN knob controls both the received signal and sidetone level.

The TR–4C uses automatic transmit/receive switching. This means that it will automatically transmit when the key is depressed and will remain in the transmit condition during keying. It will return to the receive condition when the key is released for a brief period. If this period is too long, decrease the VOX gain. Manual transmit/receive switching can be accomplished by connecting an external switch to the push-to-talk circuit of the MIC jack.

3-10. AM OPERATION.

For AM operation, the Mode switch should be in the X-AM position and the SIDEBAND switch should be in the X position. If a key is used, it should be left closed or unplugged. Tune in AM signals for most pleasing audio. This will not necessarily coincide with maximum S meter reading. The same procedure should be followed in setting the various gain controls on AM as on SSB, except that the XMTR GAIN control should be adjusted for plate current peaks of 0.2 to 0.25 Amperes when talking into the microphone in a normal voice. Care should be taken to stay within these limits since the transmitter AGC does not operate on AM.

3-11. OPERATION NEAR BAND EDGES.

When operating near the edge of a band, be sure to check the dial calibration as described under tuning procedure. When working SSB be sure to use the sideband that will be inside the band. On AM and CW, the transmitted carrier will be 1 kHz higher or lower than the indicated dial frequency.

3-12. OPERATION WITH A LINEAR AMPLIFIER.

Since the TR–4C Transceiver is conservatively rated at 300 watts PEP input, it is doubtful if it would be worthwhile to use a linear amplifier with a power rating of less than 1000 to 2000 watts PEP input. A triode type grounded grid linear amplifier with a 1000 to 2000 watt PEP rating will present a satisfactory load to the TR–4C.

If the linear amplifier is of the grounded cathode type with high impedance input, it will be necessary to install a resistive pad between the TR–4C and the linear amplifier that will present the proper impedance to the TR–4C. Such a pad must be made of non-inductive resistors and must have adequate power handling capacity. Antenna switching should be accomplished as shown in figure 2-7. Most linear amplifiers have these relays built-in.

To properly operate the TR–4C with a linear amplifier proceed as follows:

a. With the TR–4C connected to the linear amplifier tune the RF TUNE control as described in paragraph 3-7 g.
b. Set the LOAD control to the setting indicated on the chart below, for the band desired, when using a linear amplifier with a 50 ohm input.

BAND	50 Ohm LOAD Setting
3.5 MHz	2
7.0 MHz	3
14.0 MHz	2
21.0 MHz	3
28.5 MHz	2

c. Tune the PLATE control for minimum plate current.
d. Switch the Mode switch to the desired mode of operation.
e. Advance the XMTR GAIN control until the desired amount of input to the linear amplifier is obtained.

Note that when the TR–4C is loaded much below maximum RF output the AGC does not function properly and flat topping in the TR–4C may result. Care should be taken to keep the XMTR GAIN below the point where this occurs. This can be accomplished by making sure that the average peak plate current does not exceed one half of the plate current obtained on tune up.

If your linear amplifier has AGC output, connect it to the TR–4C as shown in figure 2-7. If the TR–4C is properly tuned, this should prevent flat topping on SSB regardless of the XMTR GAIN control setting. However, it will not prevent overdrive on AM since the AGC does not function in this mode.

3-13. NOVICE OPERATION.

If used on the novice bands, maximum legal input power is 250 Watts which occurs when the Plate Meter reads .385 Ampere. To realize the most useful output under these conditions, readjustment of the Bias control on the Power Supply is suggested. Follow the Bias Adjustment procedure in paragraph 3-6, except set bias control on AC–4 for .025 Ampere plate current (one fourth of the normal setting). If the transceiver is used on both novice band and by another operator on SSB or AM, the bias must be readjusted to .1 Ampere before voice operation is attempted.

To load the transmitter for novice operation, preset controls as described in paragraph 3-6. Turn the MODE switch to X–CW and advance XMTR GAIN for a very slight increase in plate current. Tune RF TUNE for a peak in plate current, being careful not to exceed .385 Ampere, and quickly tune PLATE control for a dip in plate current. Turn XMTR GAIN control fully clockwise. Adjust LOAD control clockwise and then redip the PLATE control. This procedure should be done repeatedly in small increments. Stop advancing LOAD control when plate current reaches .385 Ampere with the PLATE dipped, or when output power no longer increases, whichever occurs first. Reduce XMTR GAIN until plate current just starts to drop. The transmitter is now ready for operation.

CHAPTER IV
THEORY OF OPERATION

4-1. GENERAL.

The TR–4C is a 300 Watt HF single sideband transceiver which covers the 80 through 10 meter amateur bands. AM and CW modes are also included. The TR–4C requires either an R. L. Drake AC–4, 120 V AC power supply, or an R. L. Drake DC–4, 12 V DC power supply. The TR–4C features a high-stability linear permeability tuned VFO and two 8 pole crystal lattice filters for sideband selection. Some of the circuits are common to both the transmit and receive functions. Refer to the block diagram figure 4-1 and the schematic diagram figure 5-5 as required to supplement the following discussion.

4-2. RECEIVER CIRCUITRY.

A signal entering the antenna terminal passes through the antenna switching contacts of the relay and is applied to the grid of the RF amplifier V7 through the selectivity of the L/C network formed by T9, T10 and a section of the RF TUNE capacitor C37. After being amplified, it is passed through an additional L/C network consisting of T7, T8 and the remaining section of C37, to the grid of the mixer V3B. At this point it is combined with a signal from the premixer system of the required frequency to yield a 9.0 MHz IF. The premixer system consists of a 4.9-5.5 MHz solid state permeability tuned VFO, a buffer Q2, a switchable overtone crystal oscillator V1A, the premixer pentode V1B and a cathode follower V3A.

The VFO signal output is applied to the grid of the premixer pentode through the buffer Q2 and its associated circuitry. For 80 and 20 meter operation, the VFO signal bypasses the premixer and is connected through the cathode follower to the mixer. On 40, 15 and 10 meters a signal from the crystal oscillator heterodynes with the VFO in the premixer, V1B, to produce the desired injection frequency. On 40 meters, for example, a 21.5 MHz overtone crystal and the appropriate coil L1 are switched into the crystal oscillator circuit. The output from the oscillator is coupled into the premixer pentode where it heterodynes with the 4.9-5.5 MHz VFO to produce an output frequency of 16.0-16.6 MHz. This output is coupled through the 16.0-16.6 MHz bandpass coupler, T3, and to the cathode follower, V3A. On 15 meters, a 35.5 MHz crystal is used with a 30.0-30.6 MHz coupler, T2, and on the three 10 meter ranges, 42.5, 43.0 and 43.6 MHz crystals are used with a 37.0-38.7 MHz coupler, T1.

The 9.0 MHz output of the mixer, V3B, passes through the impedance matching transformer T6 into the upper or lower sideband crystal filter. The setting of the SIDEBAND knob determines which crystal filter is used. From the crystal filter the signal passes through the impedance matching transformer, T13, and is amplified by the 9 MHz receiver IF amplifier system, V11 and V12 and the IF transformers T11 and T12. The output of T12 is applied to the AGC amplifier, V13A, to the product detector, V16, and to the diode detector, V2.

The AGC amplifier V13A is biased beyond cutoff to provide an AGC delay. When sufficient RF voltage from T12 is applied to its grid, plate current flows during part of the cycle. This causes amplified negative voltage to appear across its plate load resistor R63, thus charging C115. This negative control voltage is applied to the grids of V7, V11 and V12. C115 discharges through R63 with a time constant of approximately one second. Rotating the RF Gain control counterclockwise applies increasingly more negative bias to the AGC controlled grids, thus limiting their maximum gain.

The product detector tube, V16, consists of a 9 MHz crystal oscillator formed by the cathode, grid 1 and grid 2. A product detector is formed by the cathode, grid 3, and the plate. The IF signal is applied to grid 3 where it heterodynes with the BFO voltage in the tube. The resulting audio signal is of sufficient amplitude to drive the audio preamplifier transistor, Q5, which drives the audio output tube, V17.

The IF signal from T12 is also applied to V2 which functions as a diode detector and an audio amplifier in the AM receive mode. The output of this stage is also fed to the Mode switch and is connected to V17 through the Audio Gain control when the Mode switch is in the X-AM position. The output of V17 is applied through the audio output transformer to the phone jack, J5, and to pin 12 of the power connector. Also, output from the plate of V17 is applied to the anti vox rectifier, D6, through the ANTIVOX control.

A 100 kHz crystal calibrator, V5, is switched on when the Mode switch is in the CAL position. Its output is coupled to the grid of the RF amplifier V7.

The S meter in the TR–4C operates in a bridge circuit with the plates of a receiver IF amplifier, V11, and the transmitter IF amplifier, V15 in one leg of the bridge and plate of the audio output tube V17 in the other leg. Receiver AGC voltage applied to V11 on receive and transmit causes these tubes to draw less current, thus unbalancing the bridge, which causes the S meter to read up scale. The bridge is balanced on receive by the ZERO control. On transmit, the meter may rest up scale with no modulation.

4-3. TRANSMITTER CIRCUITRY.

Audio input from the microphone is applied to one section of the microphone amplifier V18 where it is amplified and applied to the remaining section of this tube through one section of the XMTR GAIN control. Output from the cathode of the second triode of V18 is applied to the balanced modulator through the Mode switch for SSB operation. Output from the plate is applied to the grid of the AM screen modulator, V14, and to the grid of the first VOX amplifier triode, V19A, through the VOX control. The output from V19A is rectified by the VOX rectifier, D5, and the resulting positive DC voltage is applied to the grid of the relay control triode, V19B, causing it to conduct and to close the transmit/receive relay.

Audio voltage from V17 is rectified by the anti vox rectifier, D6, which supplies negative voltage to the grid of V19B, and preventing it from conducting and closing the relay when the microphone picks up audio from the speaker.

Cut off bias for the relay tube is obtained from a voltage divider. When the microphone push-to-talk switch is activated the cut off bias is grounded, causing V19B to conduct and close the relay.

RF from the 9.0 MHz crystal oscillator portion of the product detector tube V16 is applied to the balanced diode modulator through the carrier balance control. On SSB the audio from V18 is also applied to the balanced modulator and the result is a double sideband suppressed carrier signal which is applied to the transmitter IF amplifier. The amplified output is coupled through T13 to the upper or lower crystal filter where the undesired sideband is filtered out. The resulting SSB signal is coupled through T6 to the transmitter mixer, V4, where it is combined with a premixer signal of the proper frequency to give output on the desired amateur band.

Output from V4 passes through the L/C circuit, T7, T8 and C37, and is applied to the grid of the driver tube, V6. Here it is amplified and applied to the grids of V8, V9, and V10 through the L/C network, T9, T10 and the other half of C37.

Three parellel power amplifier tubes boost the signal to a power level suitable for transmission. The output impedance of the power amplifier tubes is matched to a 52 ohm load by means of the pi network circuit composed of L8, L9, C94 and C95.

At the first trace of flat topping in the final amplifier tubes, a small amount of grid current will be drawn. This produces a voltage drop across R47. The small negative going voltage thus obtained is applied through R46 to the cathode of V13B where it is amplified. The amplified negative voltage is applied to the grid of V15, thus reducing the level of the driving signal.

When the Mode switch is placed in the X-CW position, V2 becomes an audio phase shift oscillator which is grid-block keyed along with the transmitter mixer, V4, and the driver, V6. The audio output from V2 is applied to the grid of the

product detector tube V16, through the SIDETONE control, to provide audio output from the speaker for CW monitoring. Audio output from V2 is also applied to the grid of the VOX amplifier tube, V19A, which causes relays K1 and K2 to close. The relays turn on the transmitter, cause the 9.0 MHz oscillator to be shifted to 9.001 MHz and apply a variable source of DC, controlled by half of the XMTR GAIN control, to the balanced modulator. The DC voltage which unbalances the modulator increases the carrier to a suitable level. The resulting 9.001 MHz signal from the balanced modulator is amplified by V15 and coupled into the crystal filter. The SIDEBAND control must be in the "X" position to allow the signal to pass. A screen resistor is switched into the final amplifier screen circuit to prevent excessive screen current in the X-CW position of the Mode switch.

When the Mode switch is placed in the X-AM position the AM screen modulator V14 is inserted in series with the final amplifier screen supply and a constant voltage is applied to the balanced modulator. Relay K2 shifts the 9 MHz oscillator to 9.001 on transmit just as it does on X-CW. Vox and PTT functions are the same on AM as on SSB.

When relay K1 is closed, either by the VOX circuit or the push-to-talk switch, the cathode of V3B, V7, V11 and V12 are isolated from ground which disables the receiver. The cathodes of V4, V6, V8, V9, V10 and V15 are connected to ground which actuates the transmitter. Also, the antenna is switched from the receiver input to the final amplifier tank circuit. If the TCVR/RCVR switch is in the RCVR position, the RCVR MUTE jack is grounded through RFC 11 and RFC 7 and the antenna is connected to the RCVR ANT jack instead of T9 in the receive condition of the relays.

Pushing in the LOAD control disconnects the plate current meter from the final amplifier cathode circuit and connects it to the diode D9 and its associated circuitry. This network samples the RF output voltage at the antenna connection, rectifies it, and applies it across the meter.

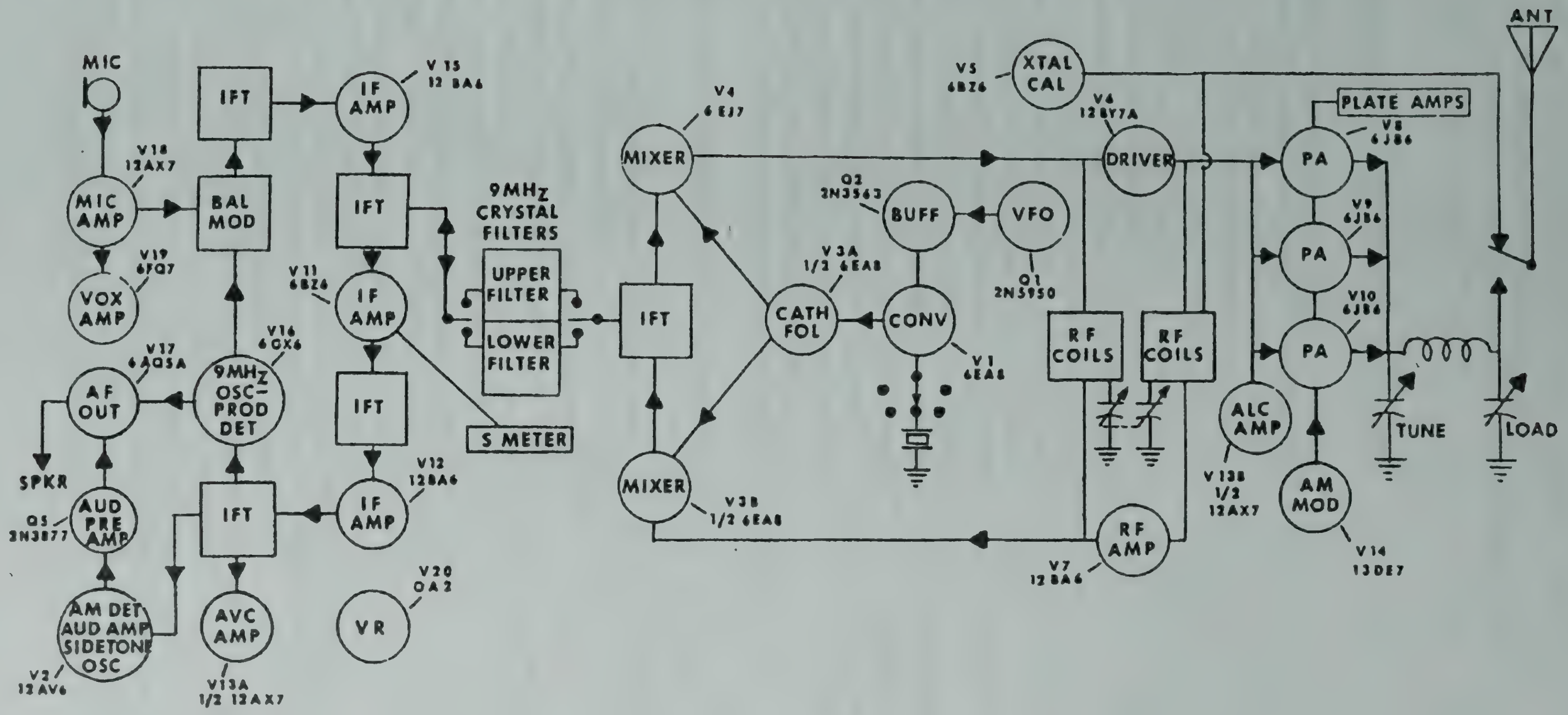

MIC
MIC AMP
V18 12AX7
VOX AMP
V19 6FQ7
IFT
BAL MOD
IF AMP
V15 12BA6
IFT
IF AMP
V11 6BZ6
IFT
IF AMP
V12 12BA6
9MHz CRYSTAL FILTERS
UPPER FILTER
LOWER FILTER
S METER
AF OUT
V17 6AQ5A
SPKR
9MHz OSC-PROD DET
V16 6GX6
AUD PRE AMP
Q5 2N3877
IFT
AM DET AUD AMP SIDETONE OSC
V2 12AV6
AVC AMP
V13A 1/2 12AX7
VR
V20 OA2
MIXER
V4 6EJ7
IFT
MIXER
V3B 1/2 6EA8
CATH FOL
V3A 1/2 6EA8
BUFF
Q2 2N3563
VFO
Q1 2N5950
CONV
V1 6EA8
XTAL CAL
V5 6BZ6
DRIVER
V6 12BY7A
RF COILS
RF COILS
RF AMP
V7 12BA6
PLATE AMPS
PA
V8 6JB6
PA
V9 6JB6
PA
V10 6JB6
ALC AMP
V13B 1/2 12AX7
AM MOD
V14 13DE7
TUNE
LOAD
ANT

Figure 4–1. Block Diagram

CHAPTER V
MAINTENANCE

5-1. SERVICE DATA.

We will check and align your transceiver at the factory for a nominal fee if it has not been tampered with. Transportation charges are extra. Any necessary repairs will be made on a time and material basis. Please write or call the factory for authorization before returning your unit for alignment or service. Address your request for authorization to:

R. L. Drake Company
540 Richard Street
Miamisburg, Ohio 45342
ATTN: Customer Service Department

Telephone: (Area Code 513) 866-3211
(Code-A-Phone Service after
1630 Hours E.S.T.)

WARNING
Extreme caution should be exercised when the top and bottom covers are removed. High voltage which is present at several points can cause a lethal electrical shock. Repairs and adjustments should be made only by a qualified electronics technician. Disconnect the Power Supply from the TR--4C before removing covers.

5-2. TOP COVER REMOVAL.

Remove the three top screws on each side of the TR--4C and remove the cover by first pulling up on the rear and then the front of the cabinet.

5-3. BOTTOM COVER REMOVAL.

Remove the three bottom screws on each side of the TR–4C and lift the chassis out of the bottom cover.

5-4. TUBE REPLACEMENT.

In general, most trouble in electronic equipment of good design is due to tube failure. The best method of finding defective tubes is by direct substitution. It is best not to rely too heavily on tube checkers. The TR--4C has been designed so that, with the exception of V8, V9 and V10, tubes can be replaced without need for realignment. These tubes are to be replaced with a matched set of the same brand as originally supplied. If a different brand is used, alignment of T7, T8, T9 and final amplifier neutralization is recommended. Matched sets of Sylvania 6JB6's are available directly from the factory. To replace the 6JB6 tubes, it is necessary to remove only the top of the final amplifier cage. To do this, remove the sheet metal screws holding the PA cover to the cage. A disc-handle is provided on the cover to facilitate removal. To replace the PA cover, simply reverse the process. Be sure the parasitic suppressors do not short to the cage.

5-5. TROUBLE SHOOTING.

Careful consideration has been given in the design of the TR–4C to keep maintenance problems to a minimum. However, it is quite possible that some problem will arise which cannot be cured by tube substitution. If this occurs, it is suggested that the TR–4C be returned to the dealer or you may write to the Customer Service Department at the address given in paragraph 5-1. Be sure to describe the problem in detail. Include full information concerning external connections, control settings, tubes substituted, serial number, etc. Always include the serial number when requesting service information. Before returning equipment to the factory, it is necessary to get prior authorization. In case of malfunction, first check the power supply fuse, the filament fuse in the TR--4C and the number 12 fuse lamp near the relay assembly for continuity. The voltage and resistance charts in this chapter should be valuable in isolating minor problems.

However, no attempt should be made to service the TR–4C unless you are thoroughly familiar with electronic circuitry and servicing technique. Care should be taken not to disturb the lead dress in the TR–4C since several circuits are quite critical in this regard.

5-6. TEST EQUIPMENT.

Alignment of TR–4C will require the following equipment:

a. A general coverage receiver capable of receiving WWV.
b. An 11 Megohm VTVM.
c. An alignment load consisting of a 1000 Ohm non-inductive resistor in series with a .005 uF disc ceramic capacitor.
d. A 52 Ohm dummy load.

> WARNING
>
> Before receiver alignment is attempted, the plate and screen power leads of the amplifier tubes should be disconnected where they pass through the partition under the chassis. Be sure the power is disconnected before this is attempted. or serious electrical shock may result.

5-7. ALIGNMENT PROCEDURES.

5-8. CRYSTAL CALIBRATOR. To align the crystal calibrator perform the following steps:

a. Let the TR–4C warm up for 30 minutes.
b. Preset the XMTR GAIN control fully counterclockwise.
c. Set the Mode switch to CAL.
d. Tune in WWV on the general coverage receiver with the BFO off.
e. Connect a wire from the receiver antenna terminal to V5 of the TR–4C. Wrap the wire around the tube a turn or two.
f. Adjust C45, located on top of the TR–4C chassis, until the calibrator signal is zero beat with the unmodulated WWV carrier.

5-9. 9.0 MHz OSCILLATOR.

a. Let the TR–4C warm up for 30 minutes.
b. Set the Mode switch in the SSB position.
c. Turn up the Audio Gain control until noise is audible in the speaker.
d. While switching the SIDEBAND knob back and forth, adjust C130, located on top of the chassis near the rear edge, until the pitch of the noise is the same on both positions.

5-10. INJECTION CRYSTAL OSCILLATOR.

a. Set the VTVM to its lowest DC negative volt scale and set the pointer to about center scale with VTVM zero adjust control.
b. Connect the common lead of the VTVM to the TR–4C chassis and the DC lead to the test point which is connected to pin 9 of V1.
c. Set BAND switch to 7.0 MHz and adjust L1 for maximum negative DC voltage.
d. Switch to 21.0 MHz and adjust L5 for maximum as in Step c.
e. Switch to 29.1 MHz and adjust L2 for maximum as in Step c.
f. The 28.0, the 28.5 and the 29.1 MHz positions should have about the same negative voltage.

5-11. VFO ADJUSTMENT.

The permeability tuned VFO was carefully adjusted at the factory and should require no further alignment. If it does not appear to track from one end of its range to the other, it should be returned to the factory for realignment. Maximum calibration error is 1 kHz when calibrated to the nearest 100 kHz point.

5-12. INJECTION COUPLER.

a. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 7.3 MHz.
b. Connect the alignment load between pin 6 of V1B and ground and adjust T3 (top) for maximum S meter reading.
c. Connect the load from pin 9 of V3A and ground and adjust T3 (bottom) for maximum S meter reading.
d. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 21.300 MHz and repeat the procedure for T2. .
e. Tune in a crystal calibrator signal at 29.000 MHz and repeat the above procedure for T1. *Note:* On T1, adjust the bottom slug when the load is on pin 6 of V1B and the top slug when the load is on pin 9 on V3A.

Table 5–1. Resistance Chart

REF DES	Tube Type	MEASURED AT PIN								
		1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
V1	6EA8	9.5 K	2.5 Meg	20 K	0	Fil	9.6 K	220	220	150 K
V2	12AV6	3.3 Meg	Inf.	Fil	0	150 K	150 K	350 K	—	—
V3	6EA8	8.0 K	150 K	250 K	Fil	0	11 K	2.2 K	1 K	34 K
V4	6EJ7	25 K	660 K	23 K	Fil	0	0	11 K	9.5 K	0
V5	6BZ6	1 Meg	1 K	Fil	0	350 K	125 K	1 K	—	—
V6	12BY7A	25 K	67 K	0	0	0	Fil	8.5 K	25 K	0
V7	12BA6	2.8 Meg	0	Fil	0	11 K	10K	100	—	—
V8	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V9	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V10	6JB6	8.2 K	40 K	23 K	Fil	Fil	40 K	8.2 K	0	23 K
V11	6BZ6	2.5 Meg	150	0	Fil	10 K	13 K	0		
V12	12BA6	2.5 Meg	0	Fil	0	10 K	13 K	68	—	—
V13	12AX7	1 Meg	22 K	45 K	0	0	2.2 Meg	55 K	48 K	Fil
V14	13DE7	8 K	2.5 Meg	2.5 Meg	Fil	0	2.2 Meg	22 Meg	0	Inf.
V15	12BA6	2 Meg	0	0	Fil	10 K	13 K	25 K	—	—
V16	6GX6	2.2 Meg	1 K	0	Fil	250 K	9.2 K	22 K	—	
V17	6AQ5	500 K	270	0	Fil	8.7 K	8 K	500 K		
V18	12AX7	350 K	6.8 Meg	0	0	Fil	350 K	500 K	3.3 K	N. C.
V19	6FQ7	12 K	4.5 Meg	0	Fil	0	100 K	620 K	820	1.6 Meg
V20	OA2	7.8 K	0	Inf.	0	7.8 K	Inf.	0		

REF DES	Transistor Type	MEASURED AT:		
		Emitter	Base	Collector
Q1	2N5950	Located in PTO		
Q2	2N3563	Located in PTO		
Q3	AT5059	0	5.6 K	43 K
Q4	2N3394	0	750	1.1 K
Q5	2N3877	1 K	56 K	6.8 K

NOTE:
All measurements were made with respect to ground with the power supply disconnected from the TR 4C. The BAND switch was on 7.0 MHz. the Mode switch was on CAL and the RCVR GAIN and XMTR GAIN controls were fully clockwise. The VOX. ANTI VOX and SIDETONE controls were fully clockwise and the ZERO control was set at the balance point. The accessory 34 PNB jumper plug was in the noise blanker jack.

Table 5–2. Voltage Chart

REF	Tube	MEASURED AT PIN								
DES	Type	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
V1	6EA8	122	−2	125	0	6.3*	250 245	2.6	2.6	−1.3
V2	12AV6	0 −1.6	13.0 0	12.6*	0	0 0.9	0 0.9	255 122		
V3	6EA8	155 150	0	98 150	6.3*	0	260 250	3.5 150	17 15.5	17 15.2
V4	6EJ7	155 2.8	0	NC	6.3*	0	0	270 230	175 145	
V5	6BZ6	−42 0	0.9 23	12.6*	6.3*	70 140	58 144	0.9 23		
V6	12BY7A	155 3.3	0	NC	0	0	6.3*	265 240	262 165	0
V7	12BA6	−.14	0	12.6*	0	235 230	98 110	1.25 150		
V8	6JB6	262 250	−60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	−60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V9	6JB6	262 250	−60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	−60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V10	6JB6	262 250	−60	155 1.0	6.3*	12.6*	−60	262 250	0	155 0.4
V11	6BZ6	−.16	1.6 150	0	6.3*	235	125 150	0		
V12	12BA6	−.16	0	12.6*	0	240	105 150	1.1 150		
V13	12AX7	−.1 0	−61 −61	−59 −59	0	0	−.16	−61 −61	−59 −58	6.3*
V14	13DE7	260 250	11.4 11.2	11.4 11.2	12.6*	0	11.4 11.2	−1.0 −1.0	0	64 53
V15	12BA6	0	0	0	12.6*	248 140	155 144	155 1.3		
V16	6GX6	−6.0 −5.6	4.0	0	6.3*	140 140	140	0		
V17	6AQ5	0	7.2 6.8	0	6.3*	240 230	155 150	NC		
V18	12AX7	88 87	−.75	0	0	12.6*	130 125	0	1.23 1.1	NC
V19	6FQ7	240 165	−9.5 0	0	6.3*	0	67 87	0	1.5 1.27	TP
V20	OA2	146	NC	NC	NC	NC	NC	0		

Table 5–2. Voltage Chart (continued)

REF DES	Transistor Type	MEASURED AT: Emitter	 Base	 Collector
Q1	2N5950	Located in PTO		
Q2	2N3563	Located in PTO		
Q3	AT5059	0	0	61
Q4	2N3394	0	11.2	0
Q5	2N3877	2.3	2.8	48

NOTE:
All measurements were made with an 11 Megohm VTVM and were taken from ground. RF TUNE, PLATE and LOAD controls were set as described in paragraph 3-7. BAND switch was on 7.0 MHz. VFO dial was at 7.250 MHz and SIDEBAND was on X. Receive measurements were made with the Mode switch in the CAL position and the transmit measurements were made with the Mode switch in the X-CW position, with the following exception:

On V14, both receive and transmit measurements were made with the Mode switch in the X-AM position and with PTT line grounded.

The AC–4 Power Supply was used. Where two voltages are shown, the top is for receive and the bottom is for transmit. An "*" indicates AC voltage. The accessory 34--PNB jumper plug was in the noise blanker jack.

5-13. RECEIVER IF.

a. Peak the RF TUNE control on noise at 3.8 MHz.
b. Adjust T11 top and bottom and T12 top and bottom for maximum noise from the speaker.

5-14. BALANCED MODULATOR AND CARRIER BALANCE.

a. Disconnect the power supply and reconnect the screen and plate supply leads to the final amplifier tubes.
b. Reconnect power supply.
c. Connect dummy load to the antenna jack.
d. Peak the RF TUNE control for maximum receiver gain.
e. Adjust bias per paragraph 3-6. With XMIT GAIN fully counterclockwise, place the Mode switch in X--CW position and SIDEBAND switch in X position.
f. If the plate current exceeds 0.15 Ampere, adjust the RF TUNE for 0.15 Ampere maximum.
g. If plate current is less than 0.15 Amperes, adjust Carrier Balance pot until plate current reaches 0.15 Amperes.
h. Peak T14 for maximum plate current. Detune the RF TUNE control to prevent plate current from exceeding 0.15 Amperes.
i. Alternately adjust the Carrier Balance control and C127 for minimum plate current. There should be no difference in plate current between the two positions of the SIDEBAND switch.

5-15. FILTER MATCHING TRANSFORMER.

a. Adjust the S meter ZERO pot for zero S meter deflection (S-1).
b. With the SIDEBAND switch in USB, tune in the calibrator signal at 3.8 MHz for maximum S meter reading.
c. Adjust the RF TUNE control until the S meter reads S-9.
d. Turn the VFO control clockwise to increase the audio frequency until the S meter drops to S-5.
e. Adjust T6 and T13 for maximum S meter reading.
f. Repeat Steps b. through e.
g. Center the 9.0 MHz oscillator as described in paragraph 5-9.

5-16. MIXER AND RF ALIGNMENT.

a. Tune up the TR–4C at 3.8 MHz for maximum power output into a dummy load. Set the RF TUNE control on 5. Adjust the XMTR GAIN control for 0.2 Amperes plate current as indicated by the plate meter. Adjust T7 bottom and T9 bottom for maximum plate current.
b. Tune up the TR–4C at 7.3 MHz and repeat a. above, with the RF TUNE control on 6, by adjusting T8 top and T10 top.
c. Set RF TUNE control on 5. Tune up the TR–4C at 14.3 MHz and repeat a. above by adjusting T7 top and T9 top.
d. Tune up the TR–4C at 29.7 MHz (crystal not supplied). With the RF TUNE control at 9¾ repeat a. above by adjusting T8 bottom and T10 bottom.
e. Set RF TUNE control on 5. Tune up the TR–4C at 21.3 MHz and repeat a. above by adjusting L6 and L7.

5-17. PA NEUTRALIZATION.

a. Attach an RF output indicator between the TR–4C and the dummy load. If no external output indicator is available, the TR–4C's own RF output indicator may be used.
b. Tune up the TR–4C on 29.0 MHz for maximum power output into a dummy load.
c. Reduce plate current to 0.2 Amperes with the XMTR GAIN control.
d. While tuning the PLATE control back and forth through resonance, adjust C76, using an insulated screwdriver, until the plate current dip and maximum RF output occur simultaneously. An insulated screwdriver is required because the rotor of C76 is connected to + 250 Volts DC.

5-18. TRANSMITTER IF NEUTRALIZATION.

a. With microphone plugged into TR–4C, turn the VOX gain fully counterclockwise and turn XMTR GAIN fully clockwise. Place the Mode switch in the SSB position.
b. While talking into the microphone, increase the RCVR GAIN control setting until speech can be heard from the speaker.
c. Adjust C168 for minimum output from speaker.
d. If over one turn of adjustment is required, it will be necessary to realign T14, C127 and the Carrier Balance control.

5-19. S METER ADJUSTMENT.

With the RF GAIN control fully counterclockwise adjust R187 for an S meter reading of 60 dB over S-9.

Table 5–3. Tube and Semiconductor Complement

REF DES	Component Type	FUNCTION	
		Transmitter	Receiver
V1	6EA8	Pre-Mixer/Xtal Oscillator	Pre-Mixer/Xtal Oscillator
V2	12AV6	Sidetone Oscillator	Diode Det/1st AF Amplifier
V3	6EA8	Cathode Fol.	Mixer/Cathode Fol.
V4	6EJ7	Mixer	—
V5	6BZ6	—	Crystal Calibrator
V6	12BY7	Driver	—
V7	12BA6	—	RF Amplifier

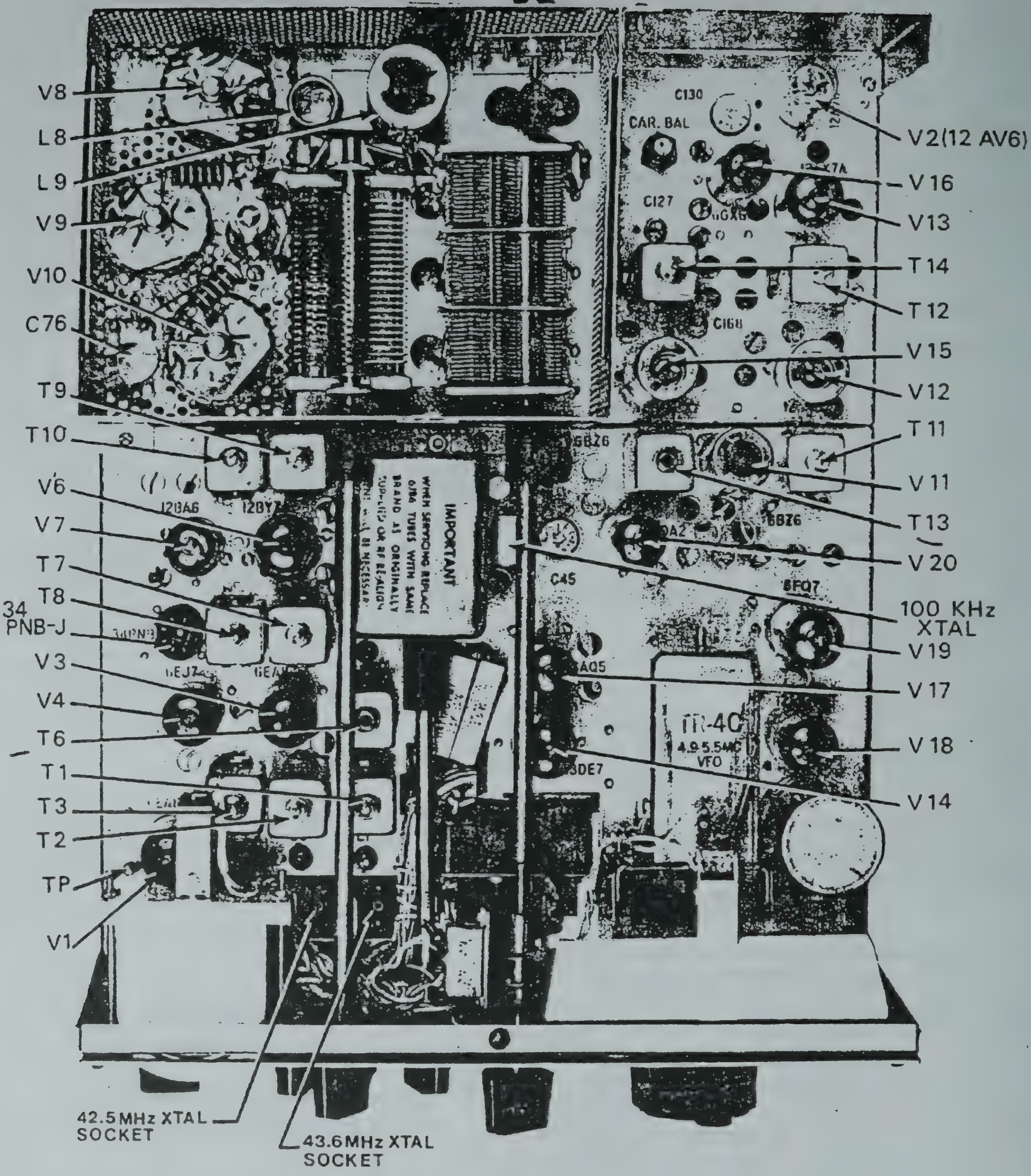

V8
L8
L9
V9
V10
C76
T9
T10
V6
V7
T7
T8
34 PNB-J
V3
V4
T6
T1
T3
T2
TP
V1
42.5MHz XTAL SOCKET
43.6MHz XTAL SOCKET
V2(12 AV6)
V16
V13
T14
T12
V15
V12
T11
V11
T13
V20
100 KHz XTAL
V19
V17
V18
V14
C130
CAR. BAL
C127
C168
C45
12BA6
12BY7
6BZ6
6FQ7
TR-40
4.9-5.5MC
VFO
IMPORTANT

Figure 5—1. Alignment Locations, Top View

Table 5–3. (Continued)

REF DES	Component Type	FUNCTION	
		Transmitter	Receiver
V8, V9, V10	(3) 6JB6 Matched	Power Amps.	—
V11	6BZ6	—	IF Amplifier
V12	12BA6	—	IF Amplifier
V13	12AX7	AGC	AGC
V14	13DE7	AM Screen Modulator	—
V15	12BA6	IF Amplifier	—
V16	6GX6	9 MHz Xtal Oscillator	BFO/Product Detector
V17	6AQ5A	Anti Vox	Audio Output
V18	12AX7	Mike Amplifier	—
V19	6FQ7	VoxAmp/Relay	—
V20	OA2	Voltage Regulator	Voltage Regulator
Q1	2N5950	VFO	VFO
Q2	2N3563	VFO Buffer	VFO Buffer
Q3	AT5059	Neon Driver	Neon Driver
Q4	2N3394	VFO Shut Off	VFO Shut Off
Q5	2N3877	—	Audio Pre-Amp
D1	1N541	Balanced Modulator	
D2	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D3	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D4	1N541	Balanced Modulator	—
D5	1N4148	Vox Detector	—
D6	1N4148	Anti Vox Detector	—
D7	1N4148	Vox Relay Speed Up	—
D8	1N714	Voltage Regulator	Voltage Regulator
D9	1N4148	Output Power Detector	—
D10	1N4148	Anti Vox Detector	—
D11	1N4148	Output Power Detector	—
D12	1N4148	Meter Control	—
D13	1N4148	Transient Suppressor	Transient Suppressor
D14	1N4148	AGC Isolation	—

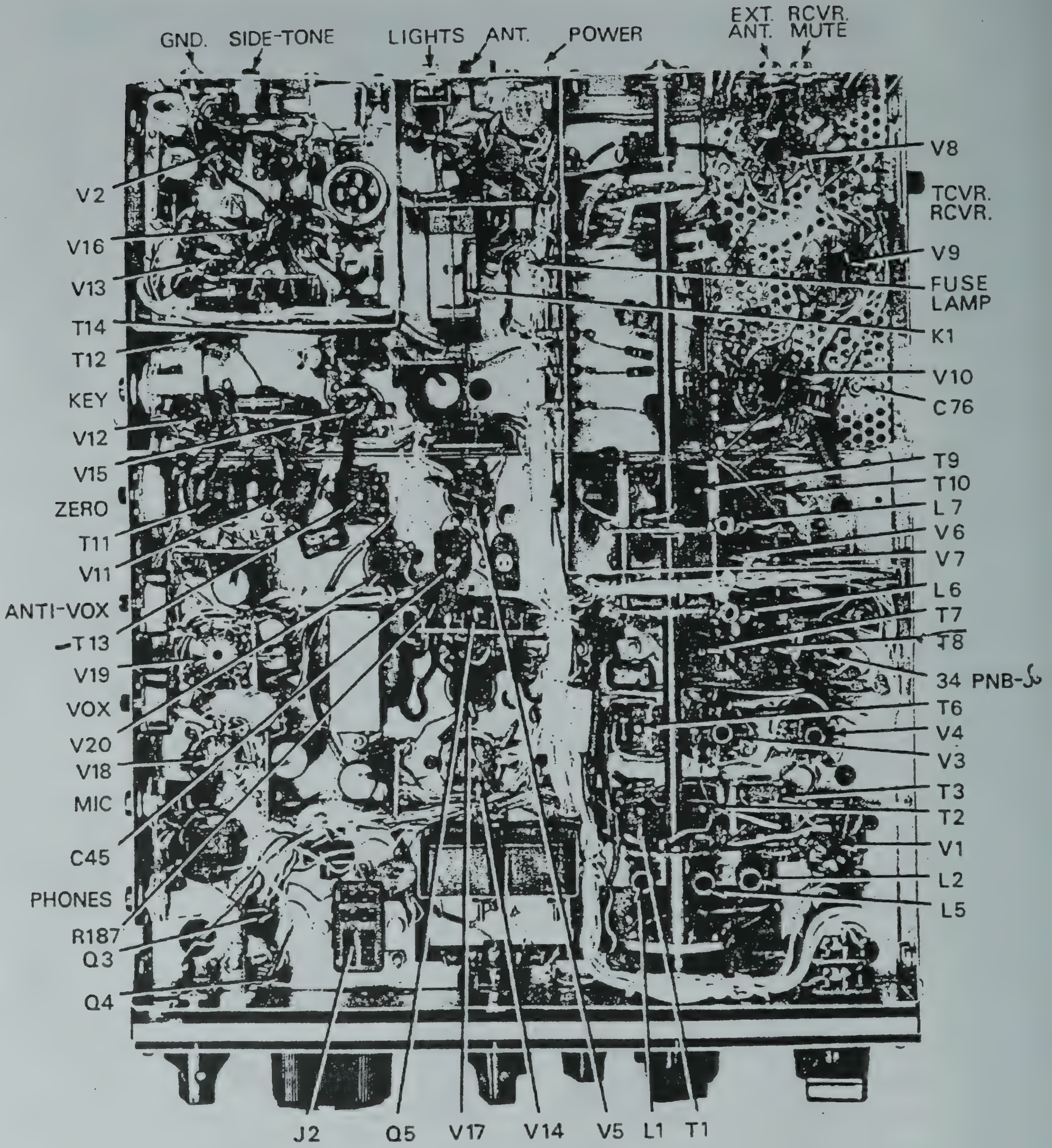

GND.
SIDE-TONE
LIGHTS
ANT.
POWER
EXT. ANT.
RCVR. MUTE
V2
V16
V13
T14
T12
KEY
V12
V15
ZERO
T11
V11
ANTI-VOX
T13
V19
VOX
V20
V18
MIC
C45
PHONES
R187
Q3
Q4
V8
TCVR. RCVR.
V9
FUSE LAMP
K1
V10
C76
T9
T10
L 7
V6
V7
L6
T7
T8
34 PNB-
T6
V4
V3
T3
T2
V1
L2
L5
J2
Q5
V17
V14
V5
L1
T1

Figure 5–2. Alignment Locations, Bottom View

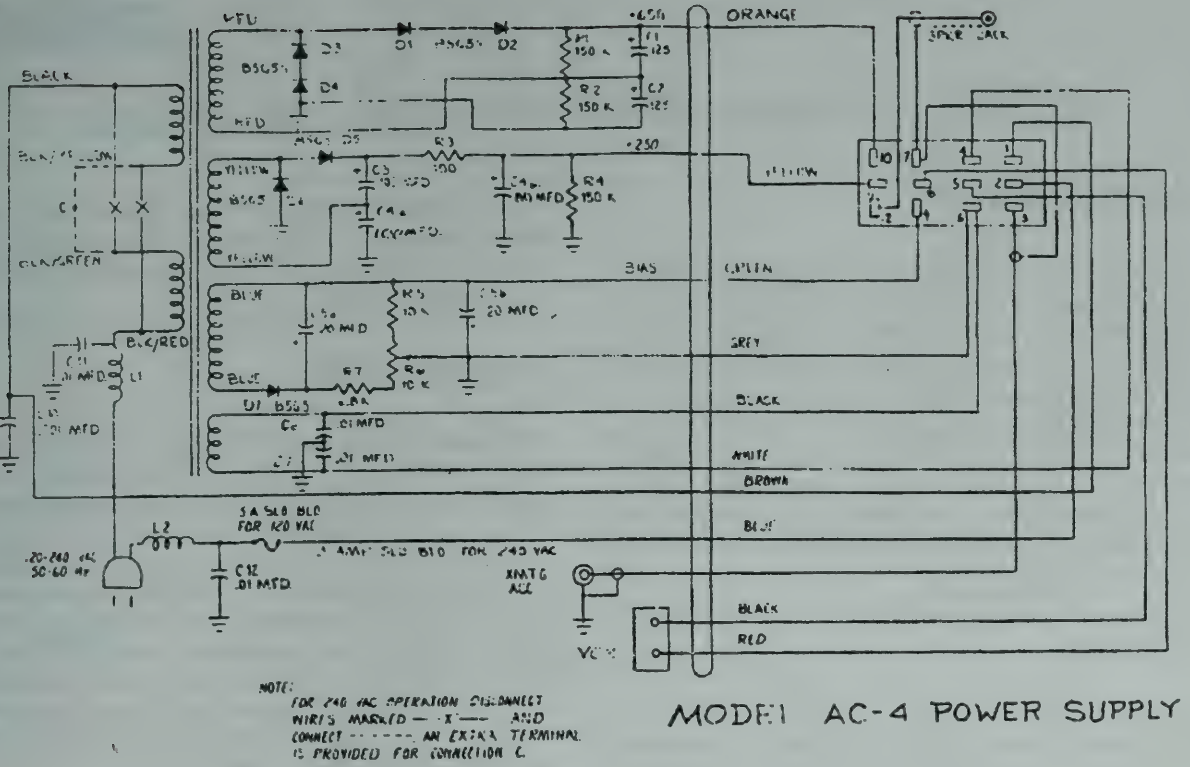

MODEL AC-4 POWER SUPPLY
ORANGE
+650
+250
BIAS
GREEN
GREY
BLACK
WHITE
BROWN
BLUE
RED
YELLOW
BLACK
BLK/YELLOW
BLK/GREEN
BLK/RED
SPKR JACK
XMTG ACC
VOX
D1
D2
D3
D4
D5
R1 150 K
R2 150 K
R3 100
R4 150 K
C1 125
C2 125
C12 .01 MFD
L1
L2
5 A SLO BLO FOR 120 VAC
3 AMP SLO BLO FOR 240 VAC
120-240 VAC 50-60 Hz
NOTE:
FOR 240 VAC OPERATION DISCONNECT WIRES MARKED —X— AND CONNECT - - - - -. AN EXTRA TERMINAL IS PROVIDED FOR CONNECTION C.

Figure 5–3. AC–4 Power Supply Schematic

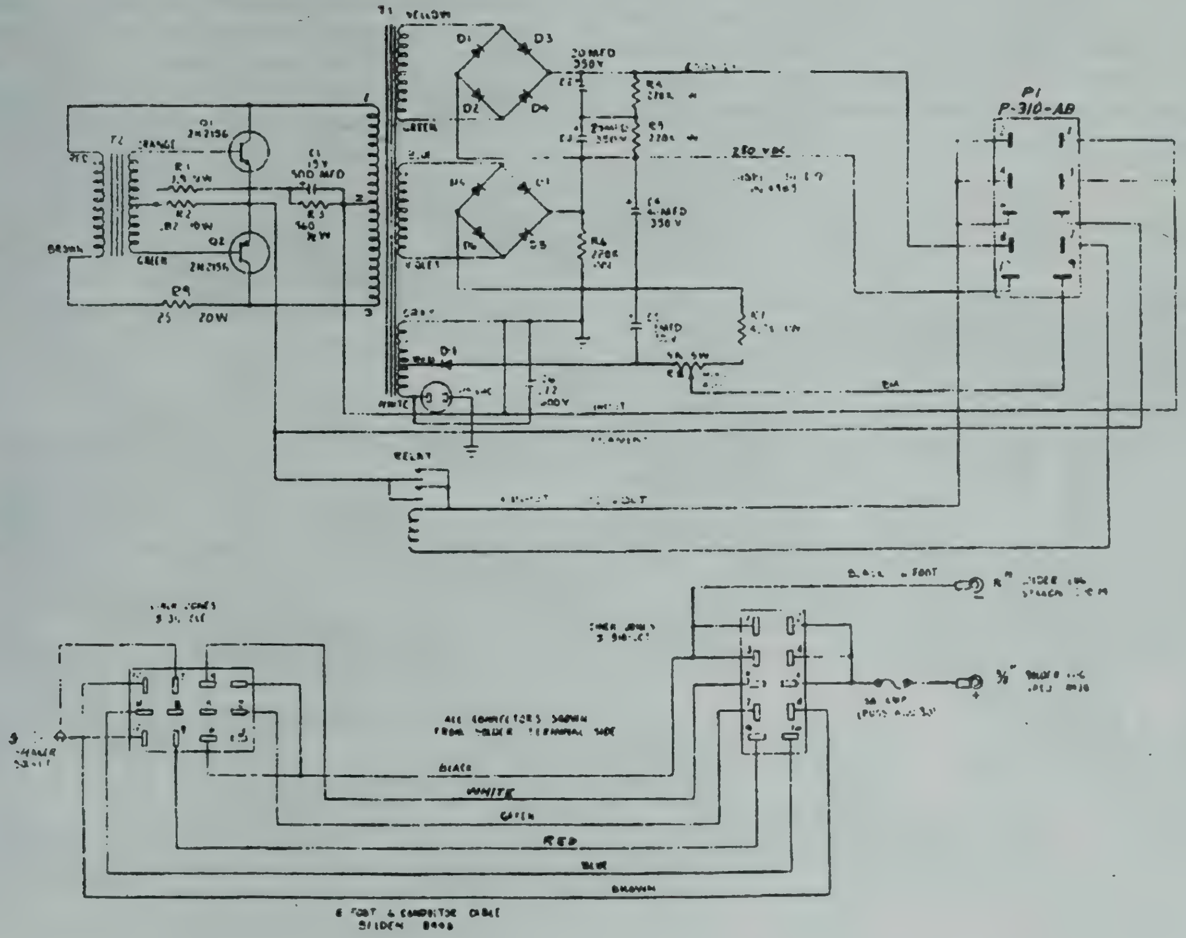

T1
T2
YELLOW
GREEN
ORANGE
BROWN
WHITE
Q1 2N2156
Q2 2N2156
R1
R2
R3
R9 25 20W
D1
D2
D3
D4
D5
250 VDC
P1
P-310-AB
RELAY
BLACK
WHITE
GREEN
RED
BLUE
BROWN
ALL CONNECTORS SHOWN FROM SOLDER TERMINAL SIDE

Figure 5–4. DC–4 Power Supply Schematic

MODEL 34-PNB PLUG-IN NOISE BLANKER

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

The 34–PNB Noise Blanker is a solid-state unit designed for use with the TR–4C and TR–4 Transceivers. Unlike noise clippers or limiters commonly found in communications equipment, this is an advanced noise blanker which mutes the receiver for the duration of the noise pulse. Between noise pulses full receiver gain is restored. Receiver AGC is affected only by the desired signal and not by noise. The 34–PNB is most effective on strong, periodic noise impulses such as automobile ignition noise.

INSTALLATION.

Disconnect the power connector from the TR–4C or TR–4. Remove the top half of the transceiver cabinet. Remove the 7 pin jumper plug located in front of the power amplifier cage. With the printed circuit side of the 34–PNB facing the outside of the transceiver chassis, carefully plug in the 34–PNB. After it is correctly seated in the socket, install a number 4 self-tapping screw in each corner of the 34–PNB bracket to secure it to the transceiver chassis. Replace the cabinet top. Some alignment may be necessary at the time of installation. See ALIGNMENT below.

OPERATION.

The BLANKER switch on the transceiver is used to turn the accessory 34–PNB Noise Blanker on and off. The Noise Blanker may be left on except when there is a strong signal within 5 kHz of the received signal. A strong signal which falls within the 10 kHz wide crystal filter in the Noise Blanker, and outside the 2.1 kHz wide crystal filter in the transceiver, will operate the Noise Blanker gate circuit causing distortion products. This limitation in the Noise Blanker is caused by the necessity of having a bandwidth in the blanker wide enough to minimize stretching of noise pulses before blanking. Under normal operating conditions, this limitation is no problem.

CIRCUIT DESCRIPTION.

This noise blanker system is composed of the three major networks described below. Refer to the block diagram and schematic diagram to follow this circuit description.

TRANSMITTING PATH.

The transmitting path consists of a single RC coupled 9 MHz amplifier which passes the transmitter signal through the blanker. The signal then passes through the crystal filter passband and into the transmitter mixer.

RECEIVER PATH.

The signal first passes through a crystal filter with a bandwidth wide enough to pass most of the noise frequency components but narrow enough to keep strong adjacent signals from overloading the noise blanker amplifier. The signal simultaneously enters the noise processor and the delay circuit, a reactive network which compensates for the inherent phaseshift of the noise processing section. The 9 MHz receive amplifier provides an overall system gain for the receive path. The balanced gate is an electronic series switch that opens for noise pulses but closes to allow the signal to pass.

NOISE PROCESSOR.

The signal passes through the tuned 9 MHz amplifier and into the balanced mixer. This mixer converts the 9 MHz noise pulses to 2150 kHz and prevents the high level 6.85 MHz oscillator signal from reaching the amplifier strip. The 2150 kHz noise pulses pass through the two amplifiers, the detector and into the gate driver. The driver reverse-biases the gate at the instant a 9 MHz noise pulse enters on its way to the receiver IF. The gate then is controlled by the same pulse it is blanking, enabling it to respond automatically to pulses of varying width.

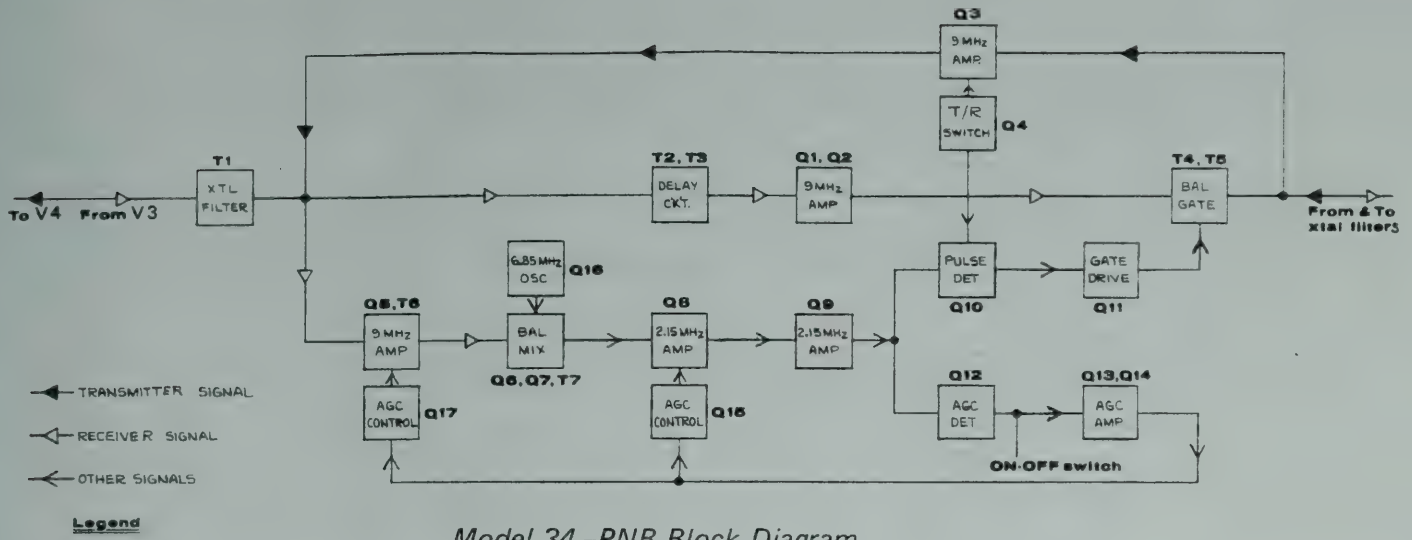
ALIGNMENT.

It is recommended that the TR–4 series transceiver be tuned to 40 meters on receive when the following procedure is performed. Refer to the Model 34–PNB Alignment Locations illustration to locate the alignment points.

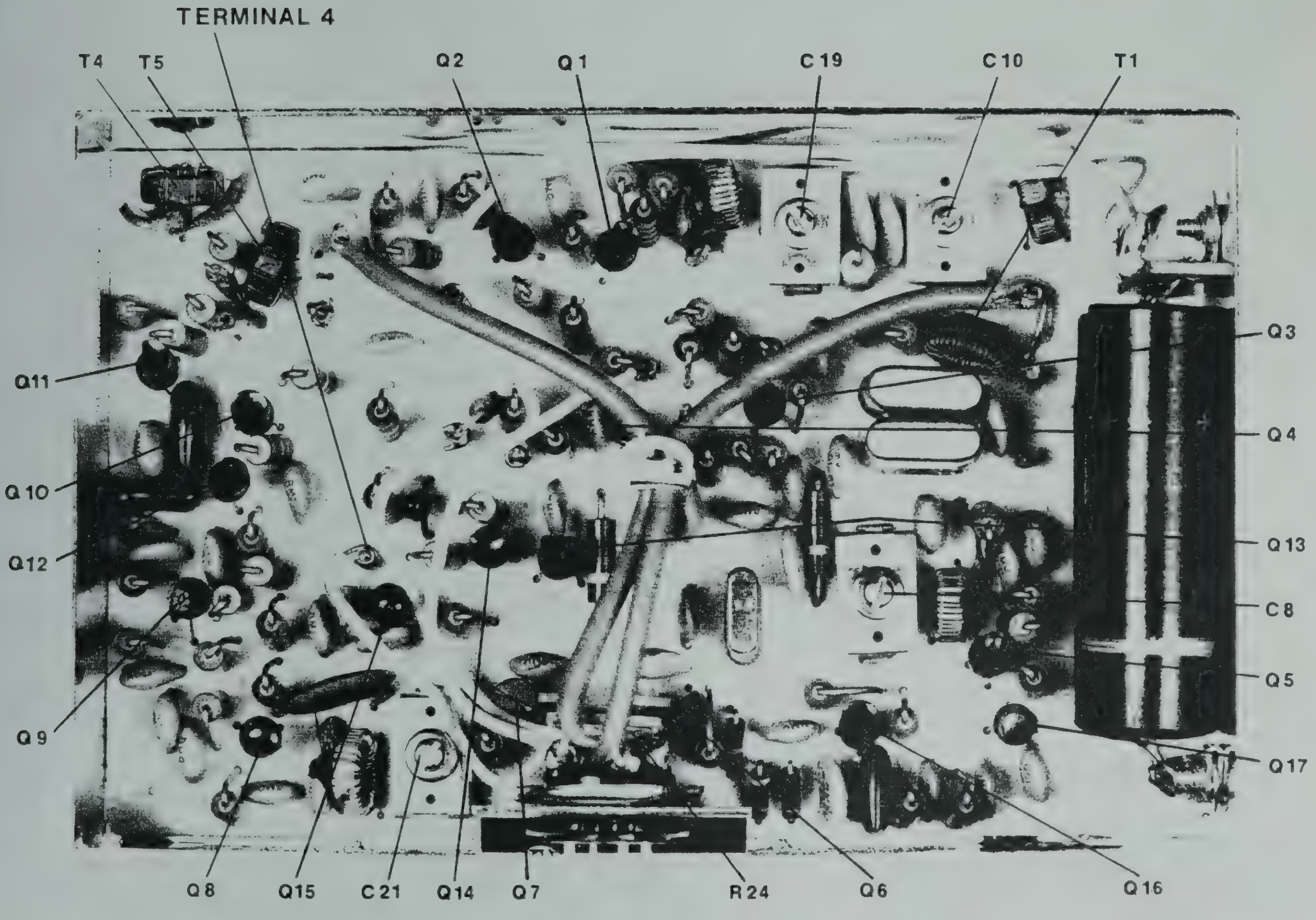
a. With the noise blanker turned on, adjust capacitor trimmers C10 and C19 for maximum S meter reading on calibrator signal.

b. With the calibrator turned off, connect a VTVM (set to measure DC voltage) between terminal 4 of the 34–PNB board and ground (terminal 4 being plus). Adjust R24 for maximum positive voltage.

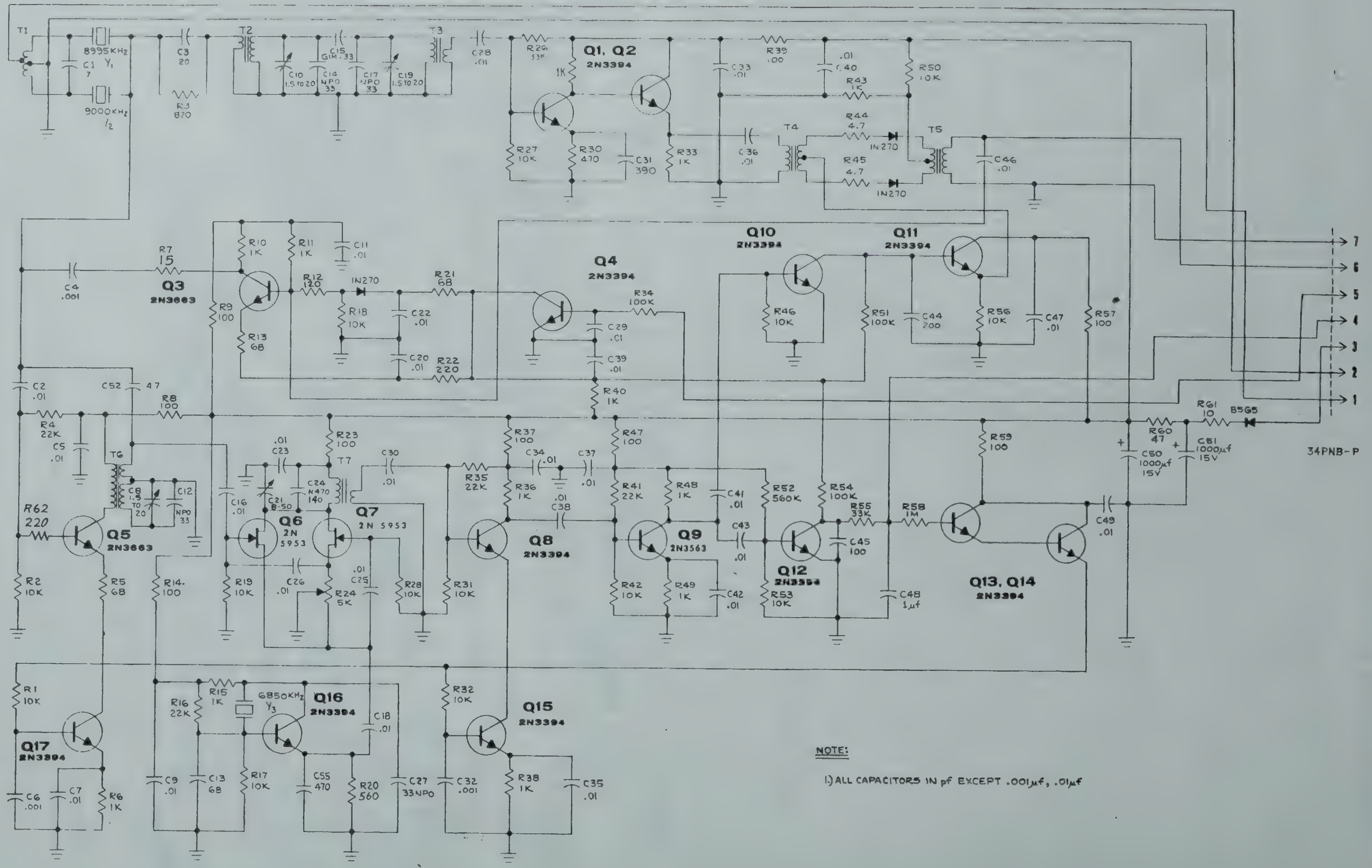
c. Turn the calibrator on and adjust the two remaining trimmers C21 and C8 for minimum positive voltage.


Q3
9 MHz AMP
T/R SWITCH
Q4
T1
XTL FILTER
To V4
From V3
T2, T3
DELAY CKT.
Q1, Q2
9MHz AMP
T4, T5
BAL GATE
From & To xtal filters
6.85 MHz OSC
Q16
Q5, T6
9 MHz AMP
BAL MIX
Q6, Q7, T7
Q8
2.15 MHz AMP
Q9
2.15 MHz AMP
PULSE DET
Q10
GATE DRIVE
Q11
AGC CONTROL
Q17
AGC CONTROL
Q15
Q12
AGC DET
Q13, Q14
AGC AMP
ON-OFF switch
TRANSMITTER SIGNAL
RECEIVER SIGNAL
OTHER SIGNALS
Legend

Model 34—PNB Block Diagram


TERMINAL 4
T4
T5
Q2
Q1
C19
C10
T1
Q11
Q10
Q12
Q9
Q3
Q4
Q13
C8
Q5
Q17
Q8
Q15
C21
Q14
Q7
R24
Q6
Q16

Model 34—PNB Alignment Locations


T1
C1 7
8995KHz Y1
9000KHz Y2
C3 20
R3 820
T2
C10 1.5 TO 20
C14 NPO 33
C15 GIM .33
C17 NPO 33
C19 1.5 TO 20
T3
C28 .01
R26 33K
1K
Q1, Q2 2N3394
R27 10K
R30 470
C31 390
R33 1K
C33 .01
R39 100
C40 .01
R43 1K
R50 10K
C36 .01
T4
R44 4.7
R45 4.7
1N270
1N270
T5
C46 .01
C4 .001
R7 15
Q3 2N3663
R9 100
R10 1K
R11 1K
C11 .01
R13 68
R12 120
1N270
R18 10K
C22 .01
C20 .01
R21 68
R22 220
Q4 2N3394
R34 100K
C29 .01
C39 .01
R40 1K
Q10 2N3394
R46 10K
R51 100K
Q11 2N3394
C44 200
R56 10K
C47 .01
R57 100
7
6
5
4
3
2
1
34PNB-P
R61 10
B5G5
R60 47
C50 1000µf 15V
C51 1000µf 15V
C2 .01
C52 47
R4 22K
C5 .01
R8 100
T6
C8 1.5 TO 20
C12 NPO 33
R62 220
Q5 2N3663
R2 10K
R5 68
R14 100
C16 .01
C23 .01
C21 8-50
C24 N470 140
R23 100
T7
Q6 2N 5953
Q7 2N 5953
R19 10K
C26 .01
R24 5K
C25 .01
R28 10K
C30 .01
R35 22K
R31 10K
R37 100
R36 1K
C34 .01
C37 .01
C38 .01
Q8 2N3394
R47 100
R41 22K
R42 10K
R48 1K
R49 1K
Q9 2N3563
C41 .01
C43 .01
C42 .01
R52 560K
R53 10K
Q12 2N3394
R54 100K
R55 33K
C45 100
C48 1µf
R58 1M
R59 100
C49 .01
Q13, Q14 2N3394
R1 10K
Q17 2N3394
C6 .001
C7 .01
R6 1K
R16 22K
R15 1K
6850KHz Y3
Q16 2N3394
C9 .01
C13 68
R17 10K
C55 470
R20 560
C18 .01
C27 33NPO
R32 10K
Q15 2N3394
C32 .001
R38 1K
C35 .01

NOTE:

1.) ALL CAPACITORS IN pf EXCEPT .001µf, .01µf

Model 34–PNB Schematic Diagram

TR-3/TR-4/TR-4C/TR-4Cw TUNING ALTERATIONS

The tune up procedure for the TR series transceivers must be altered from the instruction manual in order to meet section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concerns the purity of emissions.

Tune up on 80, 40, and 15 meters must be altered by limiting the plate current to 350 milliamperes with the LOAD control. Instead of adjusting the LOAD control for maximum RF output, the LOAD control should be advanced from CCW to the point at which the resonant plate current does not exceed 350 milliamperes. On 80 meters the LOAD control should remain fully CCW.

The tune up procedure in the instruction manual may be followed for operation on 20 and 10 meters.

(CCW -- counterclockwise)

T-4/T-4X/T-4XB/T-4XC TUNING ALTERATIONS

The tune up procedure for the T-4 series transmitters must be altered from the instruction manual in order to meet section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concern the purity of emissions.

Tune up on 160, 80, 40 and 20 meters must be altered by limiting the plate current to 340 milliamperes with the LOAD control. Instead of adjusting the LOAD control for maximum RF output, the LOAD control should be advanced from CCW to the point at which the resonant plate current does not exceed 340 milliamperes.

The tune up procedure in the instruction manual may be followed for operation on 15 and 10 meters.

(CCW -- counterclockwise)

L-4B

The L-4B when tuned in accordance with the instruction manual meets the requirements of section 97.73 of the F.C.C. regulations which concern the purity of emissions.

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTION SHEET

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.

TR-4Cw SUPPLEMENTARY INSTRUCTION SHEET

The TR-4Cw incorporates all of the features contained in the TR-4C plus a 500 Hz bandwidth crystal filter to improve CW selectivity.

This instruction sheet deals only in differences and additions that this feature will add to the instruction manual supplied.

SPECIFICATIONS

Receiver Selectivity: 6 dB=500 Hz, 60 dB=2.0 kHz with Sideband Switch in 500 Hz position.

OPERATION

The Sideband Switch selects between upper, lower, and 500 Hz filters. The sideband being utilized is indicated by the upper/lower lights. When the sideband switch is in the 500 Hz position, the same light will light as when the switch is in the "X" position.

Tune Up is identical to that of the TR-4C.

Operation on CW is accomplished in the same manner as the TR-4C except that the sideband switch can be placed on the 500 Hz position to more easily separate stations under crowded band conditions.

It will be noted that when transmitting with the 500 Hz filter switched in, the XMTR Gain Control will have to be advanced slightly further clockwise to obtain the same plate current as obtained when either upper or lower filters are used.

The center frequency of the CW filter is such that when a signal is tuned for maximum S-meter reading, an audio beat note of approximately 800 Hz will be produced. Therefore, when tuning in CW signals with the filter switch in the "X" position, signals should be tuned for this audio frequency so they will still be tuned in when switching to the 500 Hz filter.

SSB Operation is not recommended with the 500 Hz filter switched in since it will narrow the bandwidth of both transmitted and received audio sufficiently to make it virtually unintelligible.

MAINTENANCE

Alignment is accomplished in exactly the same manner as the TR-4C. No special tuning of T6 or T13 is required.

Access to circuitry hidden by the 500 Hz filter is obtained by loosening the two nuts holding the 500 Hz filter bracket to the upper/lower filter bracket and lifting the filter and bracket as a unit off the transceiver.